

# **STANDARD CHINESE**

## **A Modular Approach**

### **MODULE 8:**

### **TRAVELING IN CHINA**

### **STUDENT TEXT AND WORKBOOK**

**SPONSORED BY**  
**AGENCIES OF THE UNITED STATES AND CANADIAN GOVERNMENTS**

This publication is to be used primarily in support of training military personnel as part of the Defense Language Program (resident and non-resident). Inquiries concerning the use of materials, including requests for copies, should be addressed to:

Defense Language Institute  
Foreign Language Center  
Nonresident Instruction Division  
Presidio of Monterey, CA 93940

Topics in the areas of politics, international relations, mores, etc., which may be considered as controversial from some points of view are sometimes included in language training for DLIFLC students, since military personnel may find themselves in positions where clear understanding of conversations or written material of this nature will be essential to their mission. The presence of controversial statements—whether real or apparent—in DLIFLC materials should not be construed as representing the opinions of the writers, of the Defense Language Institute, or of the Department of Defense.

In DLIFLC publications, the words “he,” “him,” and “his” denote both masculine and feminine genders. This statement does not apply to translations of foreign language texts.

# **STANDARD CHINESE**

## **A MODULAR APPROACH**

**STUDENT TEXT AND WORKBOOK**

### **MODULE 8: TRAVELING IN CHINA**

**DRAFT EDITION**

**JULY 1982**

## Table of Contents

Objectives for the Travel Module . . . . .	
About Module Eight . . . . .	
Unit 1     Travel Plans with Lǔxíngshè	
Reference List . . . . .	
Vocabulary List . . . . .	
Reference Notes . . . . .	
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	
Exercise Dialogues . . . . .	
Unit 2     Education in Běijīng	
Reference List . . . . .	
Vocabulary List . . . . .	
Reference Notes . . . . .	
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	
Exercise Dialogues . . . . .	
Unit 3     Sījīqīng People's Commune	
Reference List . . . . .	
Vocabulary List . . . . .	
Reference Notes . . . . .	
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	
Exercise Dialogues . . . . .	
Unit 4     Ancient Architectural Art	
Reference List . . . . .	
Vocabulary List . . . . .	
Reference Notes . . . . .	
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	
Exercise Dialogues . . . . .	
Unit 5     Economic Construction and Natural Resources	
Reference List . . . . .	
Vocabulary List . . . . .	
Reference Notes . . . . .	
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	
Exercise Dialogues . . . . .	



Unit 6      National Minorities

Reference List . . . . .	
Vocabulary List . . . . .	
Reference Notes . . . . .	
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	
Exercise Dialogues . . . . .	

Unit 7

Reference List . . . . .	
Vocabulary List . . . . .	
Reference Notes . . . . .	
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	
Exercise Dialogues . . . . .	

Unit 8

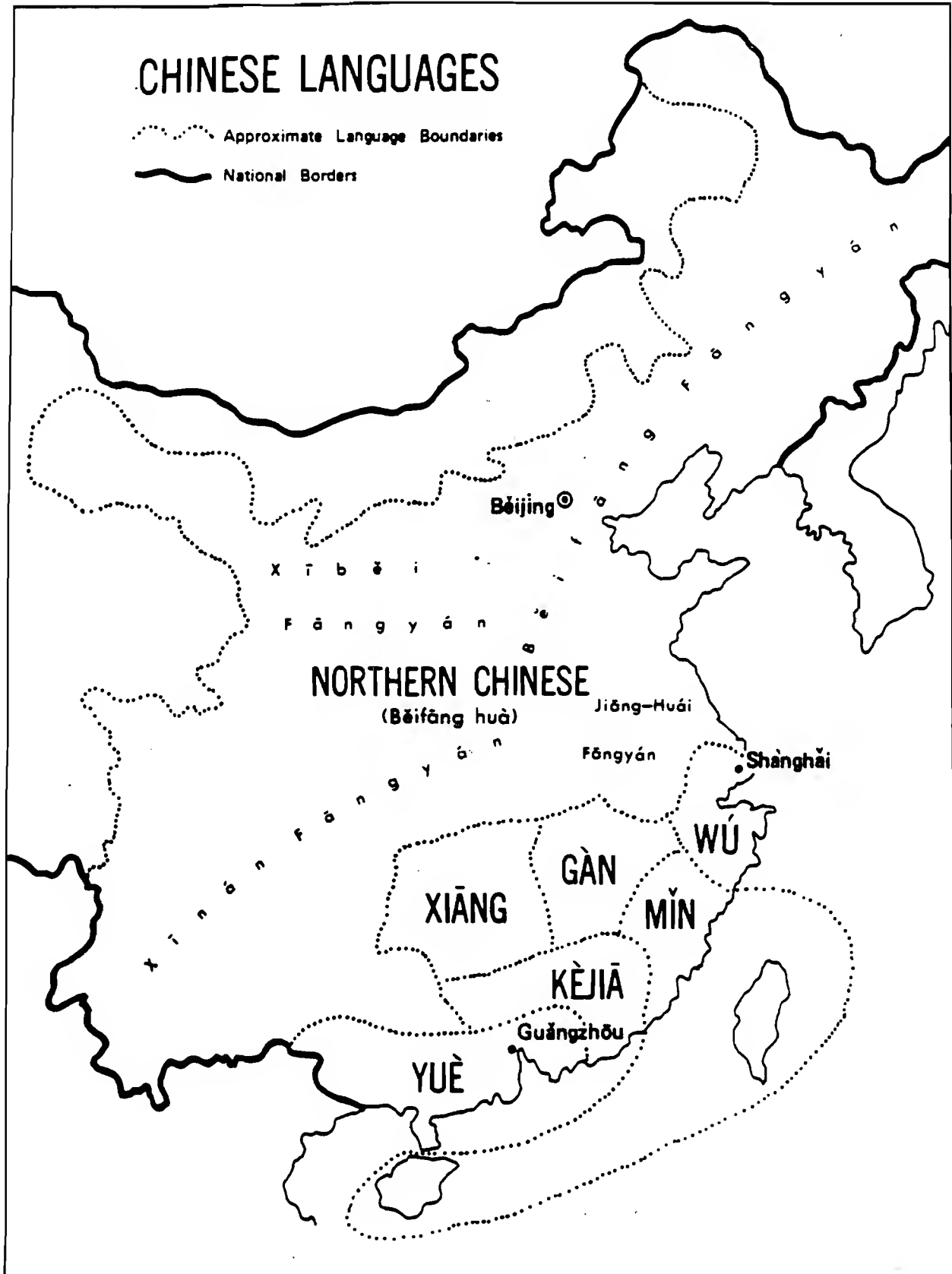
Reference List . . . . .	
Vocabulary List . . . . .	
Reference Notes . . . . .	
Tape 1 Review Dialogue . . . . .	
Tape 2 Workbook . . . . .	
Exercise Dialogues . . . . .	

Vocabulary List for the Module . . . . .	
--	--

List of Tapes in this Module . . . . .	
--	--

# CHINESE LANGUAGES

- ..... Approximate Language Boundaries  
—— National Borders



# CHINESE LANGUAGES

..... Approximate Language Boundaries

———— National Borders

Běijīng

Xī b ě i

F ā n g y á n

NORTHERN CHINESE

(Běifāng huà)

Jiāng-Huái

Fāngyán

Shànghǎi

XIĀNG

GÀN

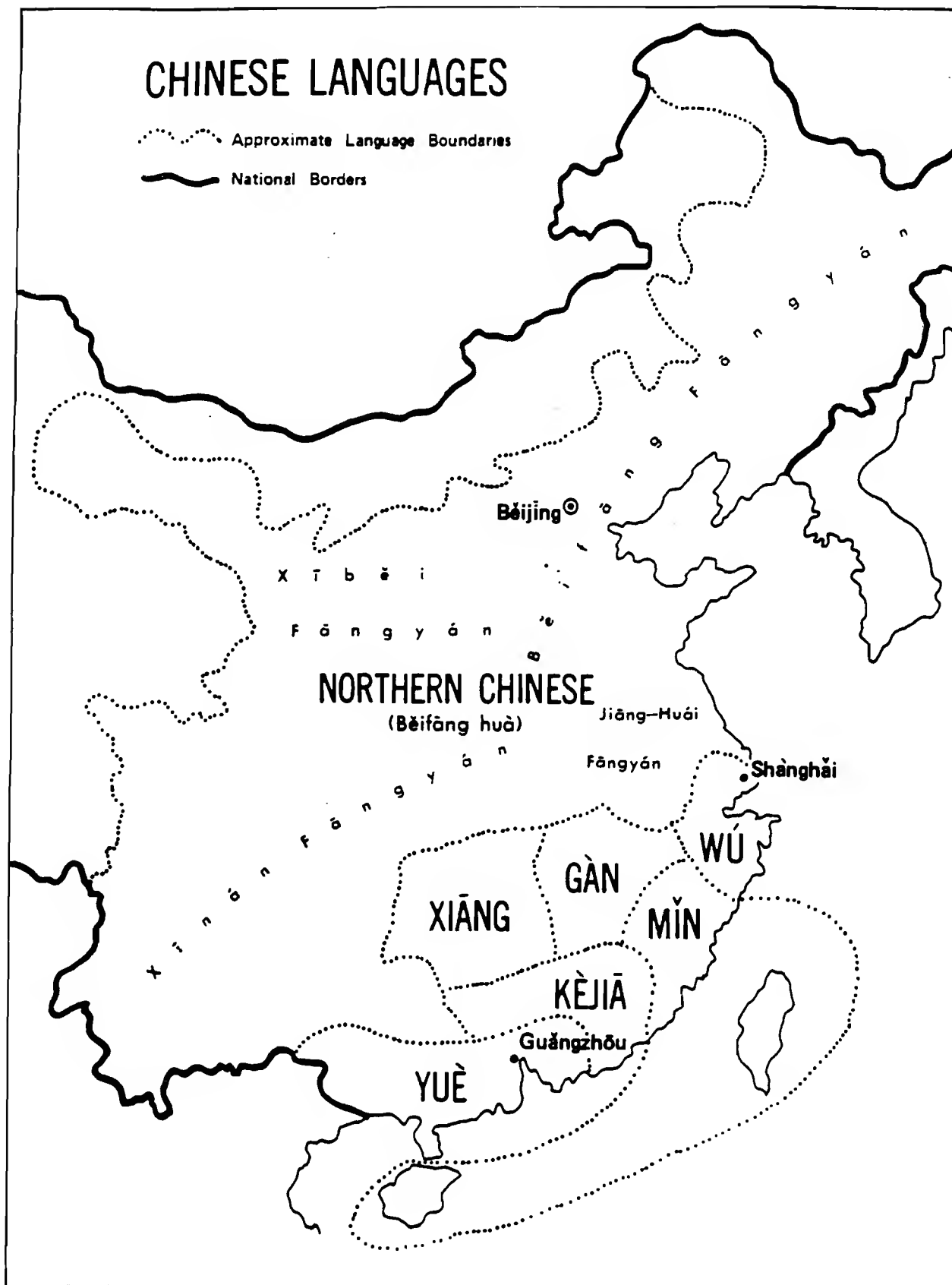
WÚ

MǐN

KÈJIĀ

Guǎngzhōu

YUÈ



Unit 1, Reference List

1. A: Wǒmen zěnmē chēnghu nín hǎo ne? How should we address you?  
 B: Lái zhèlǐ cānguān fǎngwènde rén dōu jiào wǒ Lǎo Wáng. People who come here to visit all call me Lǎo Wáng.
2. A: Nín xiǎng zhèijiàn shì zěnmē ānpái bǐjiǎo hǎo? What do you think would be the best way to arrange this?  
 B: Wǒ xiǎng zuì hǎo děng wǒ hé Shànghǎi fāngmiàn liánxì yíxià zài shuō. I think it would be best to wait until I've contacted Shànghǎi and then we'll see about it.
3. A: Tīngshuō nín duì zhèi yídài-de fāngyán hěn yǒu yánjiū. I've heard that you're an expert on the dialect of this area.  
 B: Nàli! Wǒ zhǐ shì liǎojiě yídiǎnr, tánbúdào yǒu yánjiū. Oh no! I just know a little about it; I couldn't say I'm an expert.
4. A: Xiànzài Zhōngguó yòngde shíyóu dàbùfēn shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde, duì ba? China now produces most of the oil that it uses, isn't that right?  
 B: Bù, quánbù shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde. No, they produce all of it.
5. A: Dàbùfēn běifāng rén dōu huì shuō pǔtōnghuà, duì bu duì? Most northerners can speak the standard language, can't they?  
 B: Òu, bù zhǐ shì běifāng rén, hěn duō nánfāng rénde pǔtōnghuà yě bú cuò. Oh, not just northerners. A lot of southerners speak standard Chinese pretty well, too.
6. A: Míngtiān wǒ jiù cóng Shēnzhèn lǐ jǐng le. Tomorrow I'm going to leave the country from Shēnzhèn.  
 B: Ó, zhème kuài! Wǒ hái yǐwéi nǐ néng gēn wǒmen dào Sūzhōu qù wánr jítīān ne! Oh, so soon! I thought you could go with us to Sūzhōu for a few days.
7. A: Dōngběi, Xībēi nǐ dōu qùguo le ba? You've been to Manchuria and the Northwest, haven't you?  
 B: Zài Dōngběi wǒ zhǐ cānguānle Dàqīng, Xībēi hái méi qù ne. In Manchuria I've only visited Dàqīng, and I haven't been to the Northwest yet.

TVL, Unit 1

8. A: Nǐ xiǎn zǒu hǎo le, wǒ jiù lái.  
B: Hǎo. Huí tóu jiàn.  
You go ahead and leave. I'll be right there.  
Okay. See you in a while.
9. A: Zhèiwèi xuézhě yánjiūde shì nǐ fāngmiànde wèntí?  
B: Tā yánjiūde zhǔyào shì yǔyán hé yǔyánxué.  
What subject does this scholar study?  
She mainly studies languages and linguistics.
10. A: Zài Xīnjiāng Nèiměng yí dài méiyǒu hěn duō rén shuō pǔtōnghuà ba?  
B: Duì, zài nèixiē dìfāng, shǎoshù mínzú yǔyán zhàn zhǔyàode dīwèi.  
In the region of Xīnjiāng and Inner Mongolia not many people speak standard Chinese, do they?  
Right. In those places the minority nationality languages occupy the major position.
11. A: Nǐmen xiǎng qùde dìqū quán dōu qù le ba? Hái yǒu shénme wèntí meiyǒu?  
B: Méiyǒu shénme wèntí le, Lǚxíngshè de gōngzuò gǎo de hěn hǎo, wǒmen hěn mǎnyì.  
Have you been to all the regions you wanted to go to? Do you have any more questions?  
We don't have any more questions. The China Travel Service did a very good job and we're very pleased.
12. Lǚxíngtuán  
tour group
13. Guǎngxī  
(an autonomous region, formerly spelled Kwangsi)
14. Guìlín  
(a famous scenic city in Guǎngxī)
15. Yúnnán  
(a province in southern China)
16. Guìzhōu  
(a province, formerly spelled Kweichow)
17. Huáběi  
north China
18. Huánán  
south China
19. Huángshān  
(a famous scenic mountain in Anhui province)

Unit 1, Vocabulary List

ānpái	to arrange
běifāng	the north
bǐjiào	comparatively
cānguān	to visit and observe
chēnghu	to call
dàbùfen	mostly
dài	zone, area, belt
Dàqīng	(a city in Hēilóngjiāng province)
dìqū	area, district, region
Dōngběi	Manchuria
fāngwèn	to visit and meet with
fāngyán	dialect
gǎo	to do
Guǎngxī	(a province in south China)
Guǎnlín	(a city in Guǎngxī province)
Guǎzhōu	(a province of China)
Huáběi	north of China
Huánán	south of China
Huángshān	(a mountain in Ānhuī province)
huítóu jiàn	See you later!
liánxì	to contact
liǎojiě	to understand
lǐ jǐng	to leave a country or place
lǚxíngshè	travel service, travel agency
lǚxíngtuán	tour group
mínzú	ethnic group, nation
nánfāng	the south
Nèiměng	Inner Mongolia
pǔtōnghuà	the common (standard) language
quán	entirely
quánbù	entire, whole
shǎoshù	small number, few, minority
shǎoshù mínzú	minority nationality
Shēnzhèn	(a city in Guǎngdōng province)
shíyóu	petroleum, oil

TVL, Unit 1

Xīběi  
Xīnjiāng  
xuézhě

yǐwéi  
Yúnnán  
yǔyán  
yǔyánxué

...zài shuō  
zhàn  
zhǔyào

northwest  
(an autonomous region of China)  
scholar

to think (mistakenly), to assume  
(a province of China)  
language  
linguistics

...and then we'll see about it  
to occupy, to take up  
main, mainly

Unit 1, Reference Notes

1. A: Wǒmen zěnmē chēnghu nín  
hǎo ne?

How should we address you?

B: Lái zhèlǐ cānguān fǎngwèn  
rén dōu jiào wǒ Lǎo Wáng.

People who come here to visit all  
call me Lǎo Wáng.

Notes on No. 1

Asking how to address someone: If you are not sure how to address someone, it is usually acceptable to ask the person himself. Most Chinese recognize that they have a complicated system of terms of address, and are happy to answer such questions.

chēnghu: "to address" or "form of address"

Kuài gào su wǒ, wǒ gāi zěnmē  
chēnghu nǐde fùmǔ ne?

Quick tell me: how should I  
address your parents?

Xiàng "Xiǎo Wáng," "Lǎo Zhāng"  
zhèizhǒng chēnghu xiànzài  
hěn liúxíng le.

Forms of address like "Xiǎo Wáng"  
and "Lǎo Zhāng" are now very  
common.

. . . hǎo ne?: "Would it be best to . . . ?" Wǒmen zěnmē chēnghu nín  
acts as the subject of the verb hǎo. Here is a diagram:

Wǒmen zěnmē chēnghu nín	hǎo ne?
([For] us to address you how	[would] be good?)

"How would it be best for us to address you?"

For sentences with a similar structure, compare 2A and 8A below. Here are three further examples:

Zěnmē zuò hǎo?

What should I do?

Zěnmē chí hǎo ne?

How should it be cooked (lit.,  
"eaten")?

Wǒ zhēn bù zhīdào gào su tā hǎo  
ne, háishì bù gào su tā hǎo?

I really don't know whether I should  
tell him or not.

Cānguān, literally, "enter-look," and fǎngwèn, literally, "visit-interview," are both sometimes translated as "to visit," but there an important difference in their meaning: you cānguān a place (like a museum), but you fǎngwèn people. Thus, cānguān is translated as "visit and observe," and fǎngwèn as "visit and talk with." By extension, you can also fǎngwèn a place, but this implies a formal visit to a country or visits to factories or offices where the visitors have a chance to talk with the responsible people and workers. In addition, fǎngwèn also sometimes translates the English verb



"to interview." Examples:

Wǒ bù xǐhuan cānguān zhèiyangde  
dìfang, wǒ xiǎng cānguān  
gōngchǎng.

I don't like to visit this kind of  
place. I want to visit a factory.

Duìbuqǐ xiānsheng, zhèlǐ shì  
jūnshì dìqū, bù kéyǐ cānguān.

I'm sorry, sir. This is a military  
zone; sightseeing is not permitted.

Qùnián wǒ zài Zhōngguó fǎngwènle  
liǎngge gānbu jiātíng.

Last year in China I visited two  
cadres' families.

Zài liǎngge xīngqīlǐ, tāmen  
fǎngwènle liùge chéngshì.

They visited six cities in two weeks.  
(Implies that they talked with  
city officials.)

Zhè zhēn shì yíci yǒu yìside  
fǎngwèn.

This was really an interesting visit.

Zuótiān tāmen qù fǎngwènle  
yíwèi yǒu míngde Zhōngguó  
xuézhě.

Yesterday they went to interview  
a famous Chinese scholar.

2. A: Nín xiǎng zhèijiàn shì  
zěnmē ānpái bǐjiǎo hǎo?

What do you think would be the best  
way to arrange this?

B: Wǒ xiǎng zuì hǎo děng wǒ  
hé Shànghǎi fāngmian  
liánxì yíxià zài shuō.

I think it would be best to wait  
until I've contacted Shànghǎi  
and then we'll see about it.

## Notes on No. 2

The structure of sentence 2A, which is similar to that of 1A, can be diagrammed this way:

Zhèijiàn shì		zěnmē ānpái	bǐjiǎo hǎo?
([As for] this matter	,	how arrange	[would be] compara- tively better?

ānpái: "to arrange," "to set up"

Tā zǒngshì bǎ shíjiān ānpáide  
hěn hǎo.

He always arranges his time well.

Nǐ xiān bǎ zhuōzi ānpaihǎo,  
kèrén kuài lái le.

First arrange the tables; the guests  
will be here soon.

Tā sānyuè yǐqián jiù bú zài  
zhèr, bèi ānpái dào biéde  
dìfang qu le.

He had left here even before March,  
having been assigned to another  
location.

bǐjiào or bǐjiào: (1) "Comparatively," "relatively," "more" is the meaning in sentence 2A. Bǐjiào also has the following meanings:

(2) "to compare":

Yàoshì bǐjiào zhè liǎngge chéng-      If you compare these two cities,  
shì, wǒ háishì xǐhuan Hángzhōu.      I prefer Hángzhōu.

Wǒmen kěyǐ bǐjiào yíxià shéi      We can compare who did it better.  
zuòde hǎo.

(3) "fairly," "rather"

Jīntiān bǐjiào lěng, duō chuān      It's rather cold today, put on some  
diǎnr yīfú.      clothing.

Context will often tell you whether bǐjiào as an adverb implies a comparison (in which case it should be translated as "comparatively," "relatively," or "more") or does not imply a comparison (in which case it should be translated as "rather" or "fairly").

Tā shì bǐjiào ài jiǎng huàde rén.      He is a rather talkative person.

Zhèi liǎngge bànfǎ, nǎige bǐjiào      Of these two methods, which is  
yǒu xiào?      more effective?

Dìèrge bànfǎ bǐjiào yǒu xiào.      The second is more effective.

Cóng zhèr dào chénglǐ qù, zuò      To go into the city from here, it's  
dìtiě bǐjiào kuài yídiǎnr.      somewhat faster by subway.

Shànghǎi fāngmian: Literally, "the Shànghǎi side," meaning the concerned party in Shànghǎi. In this sentence, the best English translation is simply "Shànghǎi." For more examples of this use of fāngmian, see the Society module, Unit 1, Notes on No. 8.

liánxì: "to contact," "to get in touch with," or as a noun, "connection," "ties." Liánxì can be between individual people, groups, or phenomena:

Wǒmen yǐjīng yǒu liǎngsānnián      We haven't been in touch for two or  
méiyǒu liánxì le, bù zhī-      three years. I wonder how he has  
dào tā zuìjìn zěnmeyàng.      been lately.

Zhèi liǎngge wèntí méiyǒu      There's no connection between these  
shénme liánxì.      two questions.

Zhèixiē nián lái, Zhōng-Měi      In the past few years, ties  
liǎngguóde liánxì yuè lái      between China and the U.S. have  
yuè guǎng le.      been getting broader and broader.

liánxì yíxià: Yíxià here is used the same way as in a sentence you learned in the Meeting module, Unit 8: Wǒ tǐ nǐ zhuǎngāo yíxià, "I will pass on the message for you." Yíxià means "one time," and simply adds a casual feeling, similar to the effect of reduplicating a verb. (Yíxià here is not translated as "a while" or "a little bit.") Reduplicating the verb

has about the same meaning: liánxi lianxi.

Děng . . . zài shuō literally means "Wait until . . . and then talk about it." Zài shuō is often better translated as "see about it" or "deal with it." Děng can sometimes be translated simply as "when."

Míngtiān zài shuō.

We'll see about that tomorrow.

Děng tā lái le zài shuō.

We'll see about that when he gets here.

Wǒmen xiān shìshí kàn zài shuō.

Let's try it out first and then see about it.

3. A: Tīngshuō nín duì zhèi yídài-  
de fāngyán hěn yǒu yánjiū.

I've heard that you're an expert on the dialect of this area.

B: Nálì! Wǒ zhǐ shì liǎojiě  
yìdiǎnr, tánbudào yǒu  
yánjiū.

Oh no! I just know a little about it; I couldn't say I'm an expert.

### Notes on No. 3

-dài: "zone," "area," "belt" The original meaning of dài is a belt or band, as in pídài, "leather belt," lùyīndài, "recording tape," and xíēdài, "shoelaces." It is easy to see why it has also come to mean "belt" in a geographical sense, and by extension, "zone" or "area." -Dài is used in such words as rēdài (literally "hot-zone") "the tropics," and dìdài, "zone," "region." It is also used in the common phrases zhèi yídài, "this area," and yánhǎi yídài, "coastal region" (you will learn yánhǎi in Unit 5 of this module).

Zhèi yídài wǎnshang hěn wēixiǎn.  
Nǐ yíge rén chūqu děi xiǎoxīn  
diǎnr.

This area is dangerous at night.  
You'd better be careful if you  
go out alone.

You can use names of regions in the pattern . . . yídài:

Tīng nǐ shuō huà, nǐ dàgài shì  
Shānběi yídài rén.

From the way you speak, I'd guess  
you're from the area of northern  
Shānxī.

fāngyán: "dialect" (Fāng-, as in dìfāng, "place," here means "local." -Yán forms part of the word yǔyán, "language," which is presented in sentence 9B.) In linguistics, the word fāngyán is used as we use the word "dialect." In common Chinese usage, fāngyán also refers to the various Chinese languages (such as Cantonese) which are not intelligible to a speaker of Standard Chinese. See also the note on pǔtōnghuà under Number 5.

liǎojiě: As a state verb, "to understand," "to grasp," "to comprehend," and as an action verb, "to find out," "to acquaint oneself with." As a state verb, it can be used in the pattern duì . . . liǎojiě (see the fourth and fifth examples below).

As a state verb

Nǐ bù liǎojiě qíngkuàng.	You don't understand the situation.
Tā hěn liǎojiě nàlǐde qíngkuàng.	He understands the situation there quite well.
Tāde guòqù, wǒ liǎojiěde fēi-cháng qīngchǔ.	I am very familiar with his past history.
Nǐ duì tā hái bù liǎojiě.	You still don't understand him.
Duì Zhōngguó lìshǐ wǒ liǎojiěde bú gòu.	I don't know enough about Chinese history.

As an action verb

Nǐ dào nàr qù yǐqián zuì hǎo liǎojiě yíxià nàrde fēngsù.	Before you go there, you would do well to acquaint yourself with the (local) customs.
Wǒ xiǎng liǎojiě liǎojiě rén-mín shēnghuóde qíngkuàng.	I would like to find out about the (daily) life of the people.

When the word "know" means to understand a person, it must be translated into Chinese as liǎojiě:

Tā àiren zuì liǎojiě ta.	His wife knows him best. (or "Her husband . . . .")
--------------------------	---

(Rènshi tā simply means "to be acquainted with him," and zhīdao tā means "to know of him.")

tánbudào: "cannot speak of . . ." A polite response to flattering comments. After tánbudào, you usually repeat the words of the first speaker, e.g.,

A: Nǐ duì Měiguó wénhuà hěn liǎojiě.	You understand American culture very well.
B: Tánbudào liǎojiě, wǒ zhǐ shí duì zhèifāngmiàn hěn yǒu xìngqù.	It's kind of you to say so ("One cannot speak of understanding it"), but I'm just very interested in it.

4. A: Xiànzài Zhōngguó yòngde shíyóu dàbùfen shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde, duì ba? China now produces most of the oil that it uses, isn't that right?
- B: Bù, quánbù shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde. No, they produce all of it.

Notes on No. 4

shíyóu: "petroleum," "oil" (literally, "rock-oil," which, incidentally,

is also the meaning of the English word "petroleum") Examples: shíyóu gōngyè, "the oil industry"; shíyóu huàxué, "petrochemistry."

dàbùfen: "the most part," "for the most part," "mostly" The stress in this word is on the syllable dà-, and in conversation, the middle syllable, -bù-, is often neutral tone (you may even hear what sounds like dàbfen, with the u sound missing).

Use dàbùfen to modify a verb or a noun:

Měiguó rén dàbùfen dōu yǒu  
zìjǐde chē.  
Dàbùfen Měiguó rén dōu yǒu  
zìjǐde chē.

Most Americans have their own car.

duì ba?: "isn't that correct?" "isn't that so?" You have already learned to ask for the listener's confirmation by using shǐ bu shǐ? or shǐ ma? and duì bu duì? or duì ma? at the end of a sentence. Shǐ ba? and duì ba? are also used in the same sentence position to ask for confirmation, but because of the marker ba, they imply that the speaker is fairly sure that his information is correct.

quánbù: "entire," "whole," "all"

Zhèixiē shū wǒ quánbù dōu kànguo  
le.

I've read all of these books.

Tāde qián quánbù yòng zài lǚ-  
xíngshàng le.

His money was all used up by the trip.  
("used on the trip")

Tā gěi wǒde gōngzuò, wǒ hái méi  
quánbù zuòwán ne.

I haven't finished all of the work  
he gave me yet.

Tā shuōde huà quánbù méi yòng.

Everything he said is nonsense  
(worthless, useless).

Nǐ bù zhīdào tāde quánbù qíng-  
kuàng zěnméi néng hé ta jiēhūn?

How can you marry him without knowing  
his whole situation?

5. A: Dàbùfen běifāng rén dōu  
huì shuō pǔtōnghuà, duì  
bu duì?

Most northerners can speak the  
standard language, can't they?

B: Ōu, bù zhǐ shì běifāng rén,  
hěn duō nánfāng rénde  
pǔtōnghuà yě bú cuò.

Oh, not just northerners. A lot  
of southerners speak standard  
Chinese pretty well, too.

### Notes on No. 5

Běifāng, "the north" of a country, and nánfāng, "the south" of a country: When used with reference to China, these terms usually mean the area north of the Huáng Hé (Yellow River) and the area south of the Chángjiāng (Yangtze River), respectively. The area between the rivers is usually considered central China.

Běifāng rén xǐhuan chī miànshí,  
nánfāng rén xǐhuan chī mǐfàn.

Northerners like to eat foods made  
from wheat, and southerners like  
to eat rice.

Tāde Zhōngguó huà yǒu nánfāng  
kǒuyīn.

His Chinese has a southern accent.

pǔtōnghuà: "the common speech," the usual designation in the PRC for what we have called in this course "Standard Chinese." Pǔtōnghuà is officially defined as consisting of the sound system of Běijīng speech, the vocabulary and idiom of northern speech, and the grammar of exemplary modern vernacular writings. It would be inaccurate to equate pǔtōnghuà with either běifāng huà ("northern speech") or Běijīng huà ("Běijīng speech"), because pǔtōnghuà has absorbed many elements from other dialects, contributing to its richness. Conversely, such things as purely regional expressions (including those of Běijīng itself) and non-standard pronunciations are not considered pǔtōnghuà. Before the PRC, the term pǔtōnghuà already existed, but referred to the approximations of Mandarin spoken by the common people of northern China. (In Taiwan, the term guóyǔ, "the national language," is used for the officially promoted standard language.)

bù zhǐ shì běifāng rén: "not just northerners" Bù zhǐ shì, "not only," can be followed by a noun, verb, or clause. Sometimes you may hear bú jiù shì, bú dān shì, bù guāng shì, or bù jǐn shì (which you will learn in the Life in China module), with the same meaning. The shì is necessary before a noun but may be omitted before a verb:

Wǒmen bàngōngshì bù zhǐ (shì)  
yǒu Měiguó rén, hái yǒu jǐge  
Zhōngguó rén bāng wǒmen gōngzuò.

In our office, there are not only  
Americans, but also some Chinese  
who help us.

6. A: Míngtiān wǒ jiù cóng Shēnzhèn  
lǐ jǐng le.

Tomorrow I'm going to leave the  
country from Shēnzhèn.

B: Ó, zhème kuài! Wǒ hái yǐwéi  
nǐ néng gēn wǒmen dào  
Sūzhōu qǔ wǎn jítīān ne!

Oh, so soon! I thought you could go  
with us to Sūzhōu for a few days.

### Notes on No. 6

Shēnzhèn, formerly known by its Cantonese pronunciation, Shumchun, is the border stop on the railroad from Hong Kong to Guǎngzhōu (Canton).

lǐ jǐng: "leave a country," literally, "leave-boundary" You can also say chū jǐng.

yǐwéi: "to mistakenly think" Xiǎng and rènwéi, which you will learn in the next unit, both mean "to think that . . . ." Yǐwéi adds the meaning that the subject's impression was wrong.

Nǐ yǐwéi wǒ bù zhīdào?! Wǒ  
zǎo jiù tīngshuō le!

You thought I didn't know?! I heard  
about it a long time ago!

Wǒ yǐwéi wǒ yíge rén kěyǐ nǎ-  
dedòng, shéi zhīdào nàme  
zhòng.

I thought I could carry it by my-  
self; who would have thought it  
was so heavy?

Wǒ hái yǐwéi: "I thought (mistakenly)" You have learned hái as "still" and as "also, additionally." This hái has a different meaning and is not translated. It emphasizes that the subject was under a wrong impression. This meaning of hái is most clearly seen with the verb xiǎng: Wǒ hái xiǎng means "I mistakenly thought," whereas Wǒ xiǎng does not specify whether the judgment was right or wrong.

Òu, shì nǐ ya! Wǒ hái xiǎng  
(OR yǐwéi) shì biérén ne!

Oh, it's you! I thought it was  
someone else.

A: Nǐ tīngshuōle ma? Tā shēng-  
le ge érzi.

Have you heard? She had a baby  
boy.

B: Òu, wǒ hái bù zhīdào ne!

Oh, I didn't know! (Here, it is  
not a mistaken impression but  
the previous lack of any infor-  
mation on the subject which hái  
emphasizes)

7. A: Dōngběi, Xīběi nǐ dōu qù-  
guo le ba?

You've been to Manchuria and the  
Northwest, haven't you?

B: Zài Dōngběi wǒ zhǐ cānguānle  
Dàqīng, Xīběi hái méi qù  
ne.

In Manchuria I've only visited  
Dàqīng, and I haven't been to  
the Northwest yet.

### Notes on No. 7

Dōngběi, Xīběi: Although you learned this is in the Directions module, it bears repeating that combined direction names ("northwest," "southeast," etc.) are said in the reverse order from English:

xīběi (west-north) northwest	dōngběi (east-north) northeast
xīnán (west-south) southwest	dōngnán (east-south) southeast

Dōngběi: "the Northeast," "Manchuria" The northeastern region of China, consisting of the three provinces of Liáoníng, Jílín, and Hēilóngjiāng, is sometimes called Manchuria because the largest indigenous minority is the Manchu, or Mǎn, nationality. Of China's 2.6 million Mǎn, most live scattered throughout these three provinces and Héiběi; there are also smaller Mǎn populations in the cities of Běijīng, Chéngdū, Xī'ān, and Hohhot. The Mǎn, and before them their ancestors the Nǚzhēn (Nuchen or Juchen, an ancient nationality of the same region), were a major force in Chinese history from the

Jīn Dynasty, in which the Mǎzhēn ruled northern China for over a century (1115-1234), to the Manchu-run Qīng Dynasty (1644-1911). After the Qīng dynasty established its capital in Běijīng, great numbers of Mǎn filtered south through Shānhǎi Pass in Héběi and intermixed with the Hànn Chinese. In this century, large-scale Hànn migration to the Northeast (hundreds of thousands every year) has caused the region's population to swell to 99.4 million (1976 estimate), of which only 2.4 million are of the Mǎn nationality. Although their ethnic origins are distinct from the Hànn Chinese, the Mǎn today are virtually assimilated with the Hànn racially, culturally, and linguistically. Most, for example, speak only Chinese; the Mǎn language, which in the last dynasty was still used alongside Chinese in official court documents, is well on its way to extinction (some Mǎn speakers remain in Àihuī and Fùyù counties in Hēilóngjiāng).



The three provinces of the Northeast

Xībēi: "the Northwest," a region which includes Níngxià, Xīnjiāng, Qīnghǎi, Shānxī, and Gānsù.

qùguo le: "have gone to" Notice that new-situation le may follow a verb phrase with the ending -guo. Here are some other examples:

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| A: Nǐ chīguo fàn le ma?                   | Have you eaten yet?                 |
| B: Chīguo le.                             | Yes.                                |
| A: Tā zuì xīnde diànyǐng nǐ kànguo le ma? | Have you seen his latest movie yet? |
| B: Kànguo le.                             | Yes.                                |



- ### Notes on No. 8

... hǎo le: The ending hǎo le, literally "and then it will be okay," has a special meaning; the translation varies with the context. It is used when the speaker (1) agrees to something, permits someone to do something, or suggests that someone do something, or (2) gives in to something, doesn't care if something happens.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (1) Wǒ qù hǎo le.                       | I'll go. (AGREEING TO DO SOMETHING)                      |
| Zhào nǐ shuōde bàn hǎo le.              | We'll do it your way, then. (AGREEING TO DO SOMETHING)   |
| Nǐ shuō Zhōngwén hǎo le, wǒ tīngdedǒng. | Go ahead and speak Chinese. I understand. (SUGGESTING)   |
| Nǐ náqu hǎo le, wǒ yòngwán le.          | Go ahead and take it. I'm finished with it. (PERMITTING) |
| (2) Nǐ bú qù hǎo le, wǒ bù gāoxìng.     | So don't go, then. But I'm not happy about it.           |
| Ràng tā shuō hǎo le, wǒ bù guān!        | Let him say what he wants to; I don't care!              |

Huí tóu jiàn: "See you later" This is a Běijīng expression. Huí tóu, literally, "turn one's head," is used colloquially to mean "later," as in

- Huì tóu wǒmen zài tán.                      We'll talk it over later.
- Wǒ huì tóu jiù lái.                          I'll be there in a minute.

Use Huì tóu jiàn when you expect to see the other person shortly.

9. A: Zhàiwèi xuézhě yánjiūde shì  
nǎifāngmiànde wèntí? What subject does this scholar study?
- B: Tā yánjiūde zhǔyào shì  
yǔyán hé yǔyánxué. She mainly studies languages and linguistics.

Notes on No. 9

xuézhě: "scholar" You will find the ending -zhě in a number of words where it means -de rén, "a person who...." In Unit 4, you will learn gōngzuò-zhě, "worker (in a certain field)." Other examples:

dúzhě reader (dú, "read," will be presented in the next module)  
jìzhě reporter, journalist (lit., "one who records things")  
huòdézhe recipient of a prize, etc. (huòdé means "to obtain")

zhǔyào: As an adjective, "major/main/essential," and as an adverb, "mainly," "essentially":

Qù Xīběi, zhǔyàode mùdì shì The main reason for going to the  
xiǎng liǎojiě yìdiǎnr guānyú Northwest is to find out about  
nàrde nóngyè shēngchǎn qíngkuàng. agricultural production there.

Wǒmen zhèr zhǔyàode wèntí shì Our main problem here is that  
méi qián. we have no money.

Nàr zhǔyào zhǎnlǎn xiē shénme? What are the main things they  
exhibit there? ("What mainly do  
they exhibit there?")

Néng bu néng qù, zhǔyào kàn Whether or not we can go depends  
shíjiān. mainly on time.

Tā zhǔyào jiǎngde shì Zhōngguo- He spoke mainly about China's  
de shíyóu shēngchǎn qíngkuàng. oil production.

There are times when zhǔyào must be translated as "essentially" rather than as "mainly," for example:

Wǒ jīntiān lái, zhǔyào shì I came today essentially because  
yīnwèi wǒde péngyou dōu lái le. all my friends came.

This sentence does not imply that there are any other reasons of lesser importance.

yǔyán: "language" The counter for a language is usually -zhǒng, "kind":

Xué yìzhǒng yǔyán bú shì yìtiān Learning a language isn't something  
liǎngtiānde shì. you can do overnight ("in a day  
or two").

Zhōngwén shì yìzhǒng bǐjiǎo  
nán xuéde yǔyán.

Chinese is a rather difficult language  
to learn.

Tā chángcháng jiāo tamen yìxiē  
bù yīnggāi jiāode yǔyán.

He often teaches them language (words  
and phrases) that shouldn't be taught.

-Yǔ can be used as the ending for the names of languages:

Yīngyǔ	English	Xībānyáyǔ	Spanish
Hànyǔ	Chinese	Déyǔ	German
Rìyǔ	Japanese	Fǎyǔ	French
Ālābóyǔ	Arabic	Éyǔ	Russian
Mǎnyǔ	Manchurian	Yīndìyǔ	Hindi
		wàiyǔ	foreign language

The ending -huà (as in Zhōngguó huà) refers to just the spoken language.

-Wén can refer to (1) the written, or (2) the written plus the spoken. -Yǔ does not differentiate spoken and written.

10. A: Zài Xīnjiāng Nèiměng yí dài  
méiyǒu hěn duō rén shuō  
pǔtōnghuà ba?

In the region of Xīnjiāng and Inner  
Mongolia not many people speak  
standard Chinese, do they?

B: Duì, zài nàixiē dìfāng,  
shǎoshù mínzú yǔyán zhàn  
zhǔyàode dīwei.

Right. In those places the minority  
nationality languages occupy the  
major position.

#### Notes on No. 10

Xīnjiāng: Formerly spelled Sinkiang in English. Xīnjiāng, an autonomous region (not a province) in northwest China, has the largest area of all China's provinces and autonomous regions. Population: 12 million (1981 est.), of which about 6 million are of the Uygur nationality. For a description of the region and its people, see Unit 6 Reference Notes.

Nèiměng: Also Nèi Měnggǔ. Inner Mongolia (also called Nei Monggol) is an autonomous region in north central China, population 9 million. About twenty percent of the population are Mongols. The capital is Hohhot (in Chinese, Hūhéhǎotè).

Note: The facts as represented in exchange 10 need to be qualified. It is true that the minority nationality languages are still the most widely used in the vast rural areas of Xīnjiāng, Inner Mongolia, and other minority nationality regions. The larger cities in these regions, however, now have substantial Hān Chinese populations, and in some cities the Hān are even in the majority.

shǎoshù: "minority" or "a minority of," "a small number of" This is the opposite of duōshù, "majority," which you learned in the Society module.

Tāmen shì shǎoshù.

They are in the minority.

Zhǐ yǒu shǎoshù Mǎn rén hái  
néng shuō Mǎnyǔ.

There are only a small number of  
Manchurians who can still speak  
the Manchu language.

mínzú: "nationality," "a people," or "nation" in the non-governmental  
sense: a people who share common origins, history, customs, and language.  
Examples: Zhōnghuá mínzú, "the Chinese nation"; Ālābó mínzú, "the Arab  
nation"; mínzú dúlì, "national independence."

Měiguó shì yíge duō mínzúde  
guójiā.

America is a nation of many ethnic  
groups.

Shǎoshù mínzú is "minority nationality," often translated as "national  
minority." In the U.S., we more often speak of "ethnic minorities," but the  
Chinese prefer the translation "minority nationalities."

zhàn: (1) "to occupy" a space, area, or position, (2) "to make up,"  
"to constitute," a proportion of an amount, or (3) "to take up" an amount of  
time

Zěnmé hái yǒu rén zhànzhe zhèige ' Why are there still people occupying  
fángjiān? Gāi wǒmen yòng le! this room? It's our turn to use  
it!

Zhèizhāng zhuōzi tài zhàn  
dìfang le, bǎ ta bānchūqu.

This table takes up too much space.  
Let's move it out.

Zhèige fángzi zhānde dìfang yǒu  
duō dà?

How much space does this building  
take up?

Zài wǒmen xuéxiàode xuéshēngzhōng,  
shǎoshù mínzú xuéshēng zhàn yí-  
bàn zuǒyòu.

Minority nationality students make  
up about half of the students in  
our school.

Xiānzài fùnrǚ zài shèhuìshàng zhàn  
yuè lái yuè zhòngyàoode dìwei le.

Now women are occupying a more and  
more important position in society.

Zhēn duìbuqǐ, zhànle nǐ bù shǎo  
shíjiān.

Please excuse me for taking up so  
much of your time.

11. A: Nǐmen xiǎng qùde dìqū quán  
dōu qù le ba? Hái yǒu  
shénme wèntí meiyǒu?

Have you been to all the regions you  
wanted to go to? Do you have any  
more questions?

B: Méiyǒu shénme wèntí le,  
Lǚxíngshède gōngzuò gǎode  
hěn hǎo, wǒmen hěn mǎnyì.

We don't have any more questions.  
The China Travel Service did a very  
good job and we're very pleased.

Notes on No. 11

dìqū: "region," "district," "area"

Běijīng dìqū	the Běijīng area
Huáběi dìqū	the north China region
duō shān dìqū	a mountainous district

quán: (1) "to be complete," (2) "whole," "entire," (3) "entirely," "completely"

Zhèitào shū bù quán, dìsìběn méiyǒu le.	This set of books is incomplete; the fourth volume is missing.
Quán shìjiè yígòng yǒu duōshǎo zhǒng yǔyán?	How many languages are there in the whole world?
Liǎngsānnián méi shuō Zhōngwén le, chàbùduō quán wàng le.	After not speaking Chinese for two or three years, (I) have almost completely forgotten it.
Wǒ bǎ nèi jǐjiàn yīfu quán gěi tā le.	I gave all those articles of clothing to him.

Lǚxíngshè: Short for Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè, China Travel Service (CTS), or Zhōngguó Guójì Lǚxíngshè, China International Travel Service (CITS). These are the two government agencies through which all travel arrangements in China are handled. Representatives from CITS accompany tour groups in China.

gǎo: "to do," "to carry on," "to engage in," "to work in" a certain field or endeavor.

Gǎo shénme ne?	What are you doing? OR What are you up to?
Zhèijiàn shì wǒ gǎolái gǎoqù gǎobuhǎo.	I've tried doing this all different ways and I just can't get it right.

( <u>gǎo</u> a task or endeavor)	<div> <div>gǎo wèishēng</div> <div>gǎo shēngchǎn</div> <div>gǎo shèhuìzhǔyì</div> <div>gǎo Sìge Xiàndàihuà</div> </div>	<div> <div>to do cleanup</div> <div>to engage in production</div> <div>to practice socialism</div> <div>to carry on the Four Modernizations</div> </div>
( <u>gǎo</u> a line of work)	<div> <div>Tā shì gǎo fānyìde.</div> <div>Tā shì gǎo wénxuéde.</div> <div>Tā shì gǎo xīnwénde.</div> <div>Tā shì gǎo nóngyède.</div> </div>	<div> <div>He's a translator. ("He works in translation.")</div> <div>He works in literature.</div> <div>He's a journalist/reporter/etc.</div> <div>He works in agriculture.</div> </div>

Gǎohǎo, which is especially common in political talk, means "to make a good job of (something)," or "to handle (something) well":

Gǎohǎo shēngchǎn shì wǒmen zuì zhòngyàode gōngzuò.	Handling production well is our most important job.
--	---

Gǎo is used with many resultative verb endings (in the following two examples gǎo is interchangeable with nòng, "to do"):

Shéi bǎ wǒde chē gǎohuài le?

Who broke my bicycle/car?

Hài, nǐ yòu gǎocuò le, zhèige  
zì bú shì "niǎo," shì "wū."

No, you've got it wrong again. This  
character isn't "niǎo," it's "wū."

Zěnmē gǎode is an idiom, used as follows:

Zěnmē gǎode?!

{ What went wrong?! OR  
What's wrong?! OR  
What the . . . ?!

A: Tā shuō tā bù lái le.

Now he says he isn't coming.

B: Zěnmē gǎode?

How come?

A: Tā bù shūfu.

He isn't feeling well.

Nǐ zěnmē gǎode?!

{ What's with you? OR  
What's the matter with you? OR  
What the heck are you doing?

mǎnyì: "to be pleased," "to be satisfied" This is often used with the prepositional verb duì, "toward," equivalent to English "pleased with":

Hěn duō rén duì Dǎngde yìxiē  
zhèngcè bù mǎnyì.

Many people are dissatisfied with  
some of the Party's policies.

Wǒde huídá, nǐ mǎnyì ma?

Are you satisfied with my answer?

Tā duì nǐ zhème hǎo, nǐ wèi-  
shénme hái bù mǎnyì?

He's so good to you; why are you  
still dissatisfied?

Yíge mǎnyide huídá is an idiom for "a satisfactory answer."

Wǒ xīwàng néng gěi nǐ yíge  
mǎnyide huídá.

I hope I can give you a satisfactory  
answer.

Unit 1, Review Dialogue

Professor James Armstrong (B) (Āmūsītèlǎng Jiàoshòu), the leader of an American tour group visiting China, is talking in his room at the Běijīng Hotel with Chén Guóqiáng (A) of the China Travel Service (Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè). Later they are joined by Beth Troiano (C) (Bèisī Tèluóǎnnuò), an American linguist.

- A: Āmūsītèlǎng Jiàoshòu, nín hǎo, xiūxi de zěnmeyàng? Hái lèi bu lèi? Hello, Professor Armstrong. How was your rest? Are you still tired?
- B: Hái hǎo, bú tài lèi le, shuì yíge zhōngtóu, hǎoduō le. Nǐ zuò, nǐ zuò. Bú yào kèqì. Duì le, wǒ hái wàngle wèn nǐ, Chén Xiānsheng, wǒ zěnméi chēnghu nǐ hǎo ne? Pretty good. I'm not too tired anymore. I slept for an hour and I feel a lot better. Sit down, sit down. Make yourself at home. Oh, yes, I keep forgetting to ask you, Mr. Chén, what shall I call you?
- A: Nín jiù jiào wǒ Chén Guóqiáng hǎo le. Zài zǒulǎng gōngzuòde Lǎo Wáng zhīdao wǒ. Nín yǒu shì, jiù jiào tā zhāo Xiǎo Chén, tā jiù zhīdao le. Just call me Chén Guóqiáng. Lǎo Wáng who works in the corridor knows me. If you have any problems, just tell him to get Xiǎo Chén. He'll know who.
- B: Haha, Lǎo Wáng, Xiǎo Chén, yǒu yìsi. Duì le, nǐ lái, yǒu shénme shì ma? Haha, Lǎo Wáng, Xiǎo Chén, that's interesting. Well: Is there some particular reason you came?
- A: Shì zhèiyàngde. Wǒ lái zhāo nǐ, shì xiǎng zài hē nǐ tán yíxià nǐ-mende lǚxíng jìhuà. It's like this. I've come to see you to discuss your travel plans some more with you.
- B: Wǒmen zài Niǔ Yuēde shíhou, zhèige jìhuà yǐjīng chābùduō ānpái-hǎo le, shì Lǚxíngshè ānpáide. When we were in New York, the plans were already almost all arranged. It was the (China) Travel Service that arranged them.
- A: Zuìjìn lǚxíngde rén xiāngdāng duō, wǒmen zuì hǎo zài tānyí-tán. There have been quite a few tourists lately. It would be best to discuss [this] some more.
- B: Dāngrán, dāngrán. Búguò, nǐ zhīdao Bèisī ba? Of course, of course. But, you know Beth, don't you?
- A: Bèisī? Wǒ xiǎngyíxiǎng. À, Bèisī. Tèluóǎnnuò Xiǎojiě? Beth? Let me think. Ah, Beth. Miss Troiano?
- B: Yídiǎnr bú cuò, zhèng shì tā! Tā bǐjiào liǎojiě wǒmen zhèi èrshíge rén zuì xīwang cānguānde dìfang shì shénme. Wǒmen qǐng tā lái tán, hǎo bu hǎo? Absolutely right, that's her! She understands more about what places our group of twenty people most want to visit. Let's ask her to come and discuss this, okay?

A: Hǎojiē. Yào bu yào wǒ qù qǐng tā?

Sure. Do you want me to go and ask her?

B: Bú bì. Wǒ dǎ ge diànhuà.

You don't have to do that; I'll make a phone call.

(Professor Armstrong telephones Beth Troiano, then Chen and Armstrong continue to talk while waiting for her.)

A: Jiàoshòu, nǐ juéde Běijīng Fàndiàn zěnmeyàng? Hái keyi zhù ba?

Professor, how do you like the Běijīng Hotel? Is it livable?

B: Bú cuò, bú cuò. Jiù shì shíjiān chángè, huì juéde kōngqì bù hǎo.

It's nice, very nice. It's just that after a while one feels that the air isn't good.

A: Haha...

Haha...

(There is a knock at the door, then Miss Troiano enters.)

C: Wǒ lái le. Zhèiwèi shì...?

Here I am. This is...?

A: Chén Guóqiáng. Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshède.

Chén Guóqiáng, of the China Travel Service.

C: Nǐ hǎo. Wǒ shì Bèisī Tèluóǎnnuò.

How are you? I'm Beth Troiano.

A: Huānyíng nín lái Zhōngguó cānguān fǎngwèn. Tīngshuō nín shì gāo yǔánxuéde?

Welcome to China. I've heard that you work in linguistics?

C: Shì.

Yes.

A: Suóyì nín de Zhōngwén nàme hǎo!

That's why your Chinese is so good!

C: À! Xiànzài hěn duō rén duì Zhōngwén yǒu xìngqù, Zhōngwén hǎode rén yuè lái yuè duō le.

Oh, a lot of people are interested in Chinese now. And there are more and more people with good Chinese.

A: Shìde, shìde. Hǎo, xiànzài wǒmen lái tántan lǚxíng jìhuàde shì. Zhèige jìhuà zuì hǎo jīntiān, míngtiān liǎngtiān quánbù ānpái-hǎo.

Yes, yes. All right, let's talk about your travel plans. It would be best to arrange the whole thing in the next day or two.

B: Hǎode, hǎode.

Fine, fine.

C: Wǒmen zhèicì lái de èrshíge rén, dàbùfèn shì xuézhě, jiàoshòu. Zài Nǚ Yuē, wǒmen yǐjīng hé Zhōngguó fāngmiàn liánxiguò le, wǒmen duì Zhōngguóde gōngnóngyè qíngkuàng, jiàoyù qíngkuàng dōu hěn yǒu

The majority of our group of 25 who came this time are scholars and professors. In New York, we have already been in contact with the Chinese. We are very much interested in the Chinese industrial



xīngqū.

A: Nǐmen zhèicǐ zhǔyào shì zài Shànghǎi, Běijīng zhèixiē dìfāng cānguān, fǎngwèn, shì bu shì?

C: Duì le. Hái yǒu, wǒmen yǒu hěn duō rén, duì Zhōngguó de Dōng-běi dìqū fēicháng yǒu xīngqū, tèbié shì Dàqīng zhèige shíyóu chéng. Bù zhīdào wǒmen shì bu shì kěyǐ qù cānguān....?

A: Qù Dàqīng dàgài méiyǒu shénme wèntí.

B: Wǒmen hái yào qù nèixiē yǒu míngde dìfāng, xiàng Sūzhōu, Hángzhōu, Huángshān, Guǐlín, shénme. Zhèixiē dìfāng hé Zhōngguó de lìshǐ, wénhuà, yǒu hěn dà de guānxi. Dào Zhōngguó lái, zhèixiē dìfāng bù néng bú qù.

A: Dāngrán, dāngrán. Zhèixiē dōu yǐjīng chābùduō ānpáihǎo le.

B: Nà hǎo.

C: Wǒ kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dào Zhōngguó de Xīběi qù yíxià?

A: Ò! Qù Xīběi...zhèi yǒu yídiǎn wèntí.

C: Zěnmé ne? Shì bu shì yīnwèi shíjiān bù gòu a?

A: Duì, shíjiān bù gòu. Wǒ xiǎng, nǐmen zài Zhōngguó jiù yǒu sìge xīngqī, Huáběi, Dōngběi, Huánán, Xīnán, bǎ shíjiān chābùduō quán zhānwán le. Xiǎocǐ lái Zhōngguó zài qù Xīběi ba. Nín kàn hǎo bù hǎo?

C: Duìbùqǐ, wǒ gāode shì yǔyánxué! Nèiměng, Xīnjiāng yídài wǒ zhēn xiǎng qù.

B: Tā yánjiūde zhǔyào jiù shì Zhōngguó de shǎoshù mínzú yǔyán.

and agricultural situation and the educational situation.

This time you are mainly visiting and touring in Běijīng and Shànghǎi, these places, isn't that so?

That's right. But also, we have many people who are especially interested in China's Northeast region, in particular the oil city, Dàqīng. I don't know whether we can visit it....?

There won't be any problem with going to Dàqīng.

We also want to go to those famous places, like Sūzhōu, Hángzhōu, Huángshān, Guǐlín, etc. Those places are closely related to China's history and culture. One mustn't miss them on a trip to China.

Of course, of course. Those have almost all been arranged.

That's fine.

Could I go to China's Northwest?

Oh! To the Northwest. That's a bit of a problem.

What's that? Is it because there isn't enough time?

Right, there isn't enough time. I think that since you only have four weeks in China, your time will be almost entirely taken by North China, Manchuria, South China and the southwest. Why not visit the Northwest on your next trip to China. What do you say?

I'm sorry, but my work is linguistics! I really want to go to Inner Mongolia and Xīnjiāng.

Her research is mainly on the minority nationality languages.

A: Hǎi! Zhēn duìbuqǐ, wǒ hái yǐwéi nín gāode shì pǔtōnghuà ne!

Oh! Pardon me! I thought your work was in the standard language!

C: Méi guānxi, méi guānxi. Búguò yǒu jīhuì wǒ hái shì xiǎng qù Xībēi kànkàn.

That's all right, that's all right. Nonetheless if there's a chance, I would still like to go visit the Northwest.

A: Duì le, Yúnnán, Guìzhōu, Guǎngxī yí dài yě yǒu hěn duō shǎoshù mínzú. Nín qù Guǐlín de shíhòu jiù keyǐ zuò diǎnr yánjiū le!

Oh yes--the areas of Yúnnán, Guìzhōu, and Guǎngxī also have many minority nationalities--you can do some research when you go to Guǐlín!

C: Òu! Nánfāng gēn běifāng de yǔyán bù yíyàng. Yàoshì yǒu bànfa hái shì bāng wǒ ānpai yíxiar ba.

Oh! The languages of the north and south are not the same. If it's possible, I'd still rather you arranged it for me.

A: Tsk...Zhè shìr yǒu yídiǎnr máfan, děng wǒ hé lǐngdǎo yánjiū yíxià zài shuō ba.

Hmmm...This is a bit troublesome. Let me discuss it with the leader, and then we'll see about it.

B: Ò, nǐ zài xiǎngxiǎng, rúguǒ keyǐ ānpái, nà duì Bèisī shì hěn dàde bāngzhù.

Oh, you give it some more thought. If it can be arranged, that would be a great help to Beth.

C: Duì le. Nín shìshí kàn.

Right. See if you can.

A: Ng...Zhèiyàng hǎo bu hǎo? Nǐmen fǎngwènle Běijīng hé Dàqīng yǐhòu, Àmúsi tēlǎng Jiāoshòu nǐmen shíjiǔgè rén hái shì qù Shànghǎi, Sūzhōu, Hángzhōu, Guǐlín. Tèluó-ānnuò Xiǎojiě gēn lǐngwài yíge lǚxíngtuán qù Xībēi. Lǐkǎi Xībēi yǐhòu, yě jiù shì bàngge yuè yǐhòu, nín zài jīngguò Shànghǎi dào Guǎngzhōu.

Hmmm...How about this: After you've visited Běijīng and Dàqīng, Professor Armstrong and the other 19 people still go on to Shànghǎi, Sūzhōu, Hángzhōu and Guǐlín, but Miss Troiano goes to the Northwest with another tour group. After leaving the Northwest, that is, after half a month, then you go to Guǎngzhōu by way of Shànghǎi.

B: Ng, nà wǒmen hái shì yìqǐ còng Shēnzhèn líjīng.

Hmm, then we still leave the country together from Shēnzhèn.

A: Duì, nǐmen kàn zěnmeyàng. Yěxǔ zhè shì yíge bànfa. Búguò, xíng bu xíng, hái děi wǒmen yánjiūle yǐhòu cái zhīdao.

Right. See what you think. Perhaps that might work. However, we won't know if it's possible until we've looked into it.

C: Zài wǒmende lǚxíngtuánli, wǒ hái yǒu jǐge péngyou. Wǒ yě děi

I have several other friends in our tour group. I must talk it

hé tāmen tántán, xiǎngxiǎng  
zěnmeyàngr hǎo.

over with them too, and see what  
is best.

A: Wǒmen dōu yánjiūyánjiū zài  
zuò ānpái. Búguǒ, wǒmen děi kuài  
diǎnr.

Let's both look into it before  
making arrangements. But we should  
be quick about it.

B: Hǎode. Wǒmen wǎnfàn yǐhòu zài  
tán yíci. Nǐ xiǎng zěnmeyàng,  
Bèisī? Láidejí ba?

Fine. Let's talk it over again  
after dinner. What do you think,  
Beth? Does that give you enough  
time?

C: Wǒ xiǎng kéyí. Nàme, jiù máfan  
nín le.

I think so. Well then, we'll  
trouble you (to take care of this).

A: Méiyǒu shenme. Wǒ xīwàng néng  
ānpáide héshì. Huí tóu jiàn.

It's nothing. I hope it can be  
arranged suitably. See you later.

C: Xièxie nín. Huí tóu jiàn!

Thank you. See you later!



The regions of China

Unit 1, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American tourist discusses hotel reservations with the desk clerk at the Běijīng Hotel.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

kěnéng	to be possible
kōngchulai	to become vacant
tiáozi	a brief, informal note

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What problem is the tourist discussing with the desk clerk?
2. How does the desk clerk discover the change in plans?
3. Describe what actions took place by filling in the spaces below:

	Hotel personnel	American tourist group	Group still occupying rooms
2:00			
2:30			
2:40			
3:00			

## TVL, Unit 1

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

### Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American walks into the dining room of the Běijīng Hotel in a hurry and calls a waiter.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

-fèn	(counter for portions of food)
huǒtuǐ sānmíngzhī	ham sandwich
kǒuyīn	accent
yǔyánxuéjiā	linguist
tīngdechū	to be able to distinguish by listening
yǒu míng	to be famous
gǎitiān	another day

Note: The waiter in this dialogue speaks with a slight Shànghǎi accent.

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why is the American in a hurry?
2. Give some examples of words that the waiter pronounces differently.
3. What subject is the American interested in?
4. What are the waiter's interests? Is he interested in linguistics?
5. Can you infer why the waiter cuts the conversation short?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

In this conversation, a Washington Post correspondent talks to a worker in front of the Dàhuà Cinema in Běijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

chuāngkǒu	window (e.g., ticket window)
jīzhě	newspaper reporter
xīnwénpiǎn	newsreel
"Xīnwén Jiǎnbào"	"News Summary"
-bù	(counter for films)
gùshipiānr	feature film
<u>Wǔduǒ Jīnhuā</u>	<u>Five Golden Flowers</u> (a film)
Dàlǐ	(a city in Yúnnán province)
àiqíng gùshi	love story
yǎn diànyǐng	to show a movie
piānzi	film, movie

Questions for Exercise 4

1. How long has the reporter been in Běijīng?
2. What things does the reporter like about Běijīng?
3. What movies and newsreels has he seen? Which one does the worker recommend?
4. From the newsreel the reporter describes, what can you gather about how Chinese "newsreels" differ in content from American ones?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

An American tourist (A) talks with the front desk clerk (B) at the Běijīng Hotel.

- A: Ài, duìbuqǐ, lóushàngde fángjiān bú gòu le. Say, excuse me, there aren't enough rooms for us upstairs.
- B: Bú gòu le? Zěnmē kěnéng ne? Wǒmen ānpaide hǎohāorde. There aren't enough? How is that possible? We made all the arrangements.
- A: Shì zhēnde, wǒmen zhèige cānguān-tuán yìgòng èrshísānge rén, nǐmen gāngcái shuō wǒmen quánbù dōu zhù zài qīlǒu, yìgòng yǒu shísi ge fángjiān, duì bu duì? It's true. In all there are twenty-three people in our tour group. You just said that we're all staying on the seventh floor, in fourteen rooms altogether, right?
- B: Duìbuqǐ, qǐng màn yidiǎnr shuō, wǒ bú jìde le. Dēngyíděng, wǒ lái kànkàn! Ō, zài zhèr! Nǐmen shì yíge Měiguóde lǚxíngtuán shì bu shì? I'm sorry, could you say that more slowly? I don't remember. Wait a minute, let me have a look. Oh, here it is. You are an American tour group, aren't you?
- A: Shì a! That's right!
- B: Èrshísānge rén, yìgòng kāi shísi ge fángjiān, quán zài qīlǒu. Duì a! Méi cuò a! Twenty-three people taking fourteen rooms altogether, all on the seventh floor. That's right! There's no mistake!
- A: Bú duì! Jiù yǒu shíèr ge kòng fángjiān, yǒu liǎng ge fángjiān hái yǒu rén nà! No! There are only twelve free rooms. Two of the rooms still have people in them!
- B: Hái yǒu rén? Zěnmē huì ne? Wǒ hái yíwéi tāmen jīntiān zǎochen yíjīng cóng Shēnzhèn líjīng le ne! Zěnmē dào xiānzài hái zhànzhe wūzi ne? Still have people in them? How could that be? I thought they had left the country this morning by way of Shēnzhèn! Why are they still occupying the rooms?
- A: Bù zhīdào, nín zuì hǎo xiǎngxiang biéde bànfǎ, kànkàn hái yǒu méiyǒu kòng fángzi. I don't know. You'd better think of some other solution, and see if there are any other rooms free.
- B: Biéde kòng fángzi shì yíding méiyǒu a! Wǒ xiān liǎojiě yíxià zhèliǎng ge fángzi wèishénme dào xiānzài hái méiyǒu kòngchulai! Ō! Zhèr yǒu yíge tiǎozǐ, shuō tāmen gāi zài xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng líkāi Běijīng. Hǎojíle! Méi wèntí le. I'm positive there aren't any other free rooms. First let me try and find out why those two rooms haven't been vacated yet. Oh! There's a note here saying that their plans have been changed and that they're leaving Běijīng at three this afternoon. Great! No more problem.

- A: Xiànzài cái liǎngdiǎn zhōng,  
wǒmen hái dēi děng duō jiǔ?  
It's only two o'clock now, how much  
longer do we have to wait?
- B: Liǎngdiǎn tāmen jiù dēi líkāi  
fángjiān, dào fēijīchǎng dēi yòng  
sìshífēn zhōng ne! Wǒmen gāo  
yíxià wèishēng, sānshífēn zhōng  
ba!  
They'll have to leave their rooms  
at two: it takes forty minutes to  
get to the airport! It will be  
thirty minutes while we clean the  
rooms.
- A: Nàme liǎngdiǎn bàn wǒmen jiù yǒu  
fángjiān le.  
So we can have the rooms at two-  
thirty.
- B: Duì le. Dào cāntīng hē bēi kā-  
fēi, xiūxi yíxià, shíjiān jiù dào  
le.  
Right. Why don't you go have a cup  
of coffee in the dining room and rest  
a bit, and then it will be time.
- A: Hǎo, xièxie nín. Huí tóu jiàn.  
Okay. Thank you. See you later.
- B: Huí tóu jiàn.  
See you later.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American (A) walks into the dining room of the Běijīng Hotel in a hurry and calls a waiter (B).

- A: Duìbuqǐ, yíbēi rè kāfēi, jiù yào  
niúǎi, bú yào táng, yífèn huǒtuǐ  
sānmíngzhī. Yuè kuài yuè hǎo!  
Excuse me, a cup of hot coffee, with  
cream only, no sugar, and a ham sand-  
wich. As fast as possible!
- B: Měitiān dōu shì "yuè kuài yuè  
hǎo," nǐ zhēn máng a!  
Every day it's "as fast as poss-  
ible." You're so busy!
- A: Nǐ zhīdao tāmen gěi wǒ ānpaile  
nàme duō yào fǎngwènde dìfang.  
Zhēn shì yítiān yǒu sānshíliù  
zhōngtóu cái hǎo.  
You know, they arranged so many  
places for me to visit. I only wish  
that there were thirty-six hours in  
a day.
- B: Hǎo, hǎo. Wǒ mǎshàng jiù lái.  
Okay. I'll be right back.
- (One minute later, the waiter comes back with the lunch.)
- B: Nǐde sānmíngzhī, kāfēi, niúǎi.  
Your sandwich, coffee, and milk.
- A: Zhēn kuài. Xièxie nǐ. Ài, lái-  
le sìtiān le, kěshì háishì bù zhī-  
dao zěnmē chēnghu ní, zhēn duìbuqǐ.  
That was really fast. Thank you.  
Gee, I've been here four days and I  
still don't know how to address you,  
I'm very sorry.
- B: Nǐ jiù jiào wǒ Xiǎo Liú hǎo le,  
bǐjiào róngyì jì.  
Just call me Xiǎo Liú. It's the  
easiest to remember.



A: Xiǎo Liú, tīng nǐde kǒuyīn nǐ dàgài shì nánfāng rén. Shì Shàng-hǎi rén, duì bu duì?

Xiǎo Liú, your accent sounds like you're probably a southerner. You're from Shànghǎi, right?

B: Nǐ zhēn shì yǔyánxuéjiā, búdàn huì shuō Zhōngguó huà, hái tīngde-chū nánfāng, běifāng kǒuyīnde bù tóng.

You're a real linguist. Not only can you speak Chinese, you can even tell the difference between a northern and a southern accent.

A: Nálì, nálì. Wǒ yánjiūde zhǔyào shì pǔtōnghuà, duì fāngyán méiyǒu shenme yánjiū, zhǔyào shì wǒ duì Zhōngwén fēicháng yǒu xìngqù. Dōngběi, Xībēi, nánfāng, běifāng, měiyíge dìfāng, měiyíge dìqū dōu yǒu zìjǐde yǔyán xíguān, zhēn shì fēicháng yǒu yìsì.

Thank you. I mainly do research on Standard Chinese. I'm not well versed in the dialects. The main thing is that I'm very interested in Chinese. Manchuria, the northwest, the south, the north, every place, each district, has its own ways of speech. It's really very interesting.

B: Nǐ duì Zhōngwén zhèyàng yǒu xìng-qu, zhèicì lái fāngwén yǒu méiyǒu gēn Zhōngguóde yǔyánxuéjiā tántan?

Since you have such an interest in Chinese, did you talk with some Chinese linguists during this visit?

A: Tán le. Zhèicì Zhōngguó fāng-mian ānpai wǒ gēn hěn duō xuézhě jiànle miàn. Zhèixiē xuézhě zài guówài dōu shì hěn yǒu míngde.

Yes. On this trip, the Chinese arranged for me to meet with a lot of scholars who are very famous abroad.

B: Nà hǎojíe. Nǐ kěyǐ yǒu jīhuì duō liǎojiě yìdiǎn Zhōngguó yǔyán-xuéde qíngkuàng.

That's great. You get the chance to find out more about linguistics in China.

A: Nǐ duì yǔyán yǒu xìngqù ma?

Are you interested in language?

B: Wǒ? Wǒ duì wénxué, lìshǐ dōu yǒu yìdiǎn xìngqù. Nǐ máng, wǒmen xiāyíci zài tán.

Me? I have some interest in literature and history. You're busy, we'll talk some other time.

A: Hǎo, hǎo. Gǎitiān zài liáo. Huí tóu jiàn, Xiǎo Liú.

Okay. We'll chat some other day. See you later, Xiǎo Liú.

B: Zàijiàn.

Good-bye.

#### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

In front of Dàhuà Cinema in Běijīng, a worker (B) is cleaning the glass cases in which posters are displayed. The Washington Post correspondent, Richard Leblanc (A), walks over to him.

A: Nín hǎo a! Mǎi piàode chuāngkǒu hái méi kāi na?

Hello! The ticket window isn't open yet?

B: Měi na! Zài guò shífēn zhōng, jiǔdiǎn jiù kāi le. Nín cóng nǎ lǐ yā? Pǔtōnghuà shuōde zhème hǎo?

Not yet. It'll open in another few minutes, at nine. Where are you from? You speak such good Chinese.

A: Wǒ shì Huáshèngdùn Yóubàode jīzhě, zài Běijīng yǐjīng sānge yuē le.

I'm a reporter from the Washington Post. I've been in Běijīng three months now.

B: Zài Běijīng chīde, zhùde dōu mǎnyì ma?

Are you pleased with the food and living conditions here?

A: Chīde, zhùde dōu mǎnyì, wǒ tèbié xīhuan Běijīngde xiǎochī.

Yes. I especially like Běijīng's snacks.

B: Duì! Běijīngde xiǎochī shì yǒu míngde, Dōngdǎn yí dàide xiǎochī-diàn nǐ dōu qùguo le ba?

Right. Běijīng is famous for its snacks. I suppose you've been to all the "little eateries" in the Dōngdǎn area?

A: Dàbùfen dōu qùguo le. Zhēn bú cuò, qùle hái xiǎng qù.

Most of them. They're great. You always want to go back.

B: Shì a, shì a! Nín jīntiān xiǎng kàn shénme diànyǐng a?

Yes indeed. What movie do you want to see today?

A: Xiǎng kàn liǎngge xīnwénpiān. Zhōngguóde xīnwénpiān bú cuò.

I want to see two newsreels. China has good newsreels.

B: Nín dōu kànguo shénme le?

What ones have you seen?

A: Wǒ cháng kàn "Xīnwén Jiǎnbào," shàngcì kànle jiěshào Huánán, Huáběide yíbù xīnwénpiān, bú cuò.

I often see the "News Summaries." Last time I saw a newsreel presenting the north and south of China. It was pretty good.

B: Nín zuì xīhuan nǎ a?

What place did you like best?

A: Wǒ zuì xīhuan Huángshān hé Guǐlín.

I liked Mt. Huáng and Guǐlín best.

B: Ò! Nà shì hǎo dìfangr!

Oh, those are nice places.

A: Wǒ hái kànguo yíbù jiěshào shǎoshù mínzú shēnghuóde diànyǐng.

I also saw a movie introducing the life of the minority nationalities.

B: Shì gùshipiānr a, hái shì xīnwénpiānr a?

Was it a feature film or a newsreel?

A: Xīnwénpiānr, shì guānyú Xīnjiāng, Nèiměng nà yí dàide.

A newsreel. It was about the region of Xīnjiāng and Inner Mongolia.

- B: Yǒu yí bù gùshìpiānr jiào Wǔdǒu Jīnhuā, shì Dàilǐ de shǎoshù mínzú-de aiqíng gùshì, nǐ kànguo ma?
- A: Méi kànguo. Dàilǐ zài nǎr? Guìzhōu?
- B: Bù, zài Yúnnán, nài dìfāng kě hǎo kàn le.
- A: Zhèige diànyǐng jīntiān yǎn ma?
- B: Jīn bù yǎn, xiàlǐbài yǎn, nín yào kàn, dǎ ge diàn huà gēn wǒmen diànyǐngyuán liánxì yíxià, wǒmen kěyǐ gěi nín liú yízhāng piào.
- A: Zhēn xièxie nín. Ēi, zhèige guānggào shì guānyú Dàqīngde ba?
- B: Shì, nài shì ge chū shíyóude dìfāng. Jīntiānde "Xīnwén Jiǎnbào" lǐ jiù yǒu.
- A: Ò, wǒ yào kàn zhèibù piānzi.
- B: Hǎo, mài piàode kāi ménr le. Nín kuài qù ba!
- A: Ēi, xièxie nín. Zàijiàn!
- B: Zàijiàn!
- There's a feature film called Five Golden Flowers, a love story about a national minority in Dàilǐ. Have you seen it?
- No. Where's Dàilǐ? In Guìzhōu?
- No, in Yúnnán. It's a gorgeous place.
- Is that movie playing today?
- Not today, but next week. If you want to see it, give us a call and get in touch, and we can save a ticket for you.
- Thanks a lot. Say, is this ad about Dàqīng?
- Yes. They produce oil there. It's in today's "News Summary."
- Oh, I want to see that film.
- Okay, the ticket office is open now. Go and buy your ticket.
- Right. Thank you. Good-bye.
- Good-bye.

Unit 2, Reference List

1. A: Nǐmen zhèngfǔ rènwéi mùqián  
dà-, zhōng-, xiǎoxuéde  
qíngkuàng zěnmeyàng? What does your government think of  
your colleges, high schools, and  
primary schools at present?  
  
B: Wǒmen xiǎng Wénhuà Gémìng  
yǐhòude jiàoyu shuǐpíng bú  
gòu gāo, wǒmen děi gǎibiàn  
zhèige qíngxíng. We think that since the Cultural  
Revolution educational standards  
have not been high enough, and  
we must change this situation.
2. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ yǒu jìhuàde  
tígāo yībùfēn dàxuéde  
shuǐpíng. The Chinese government is raising the  
standards in some universities in a  
planned way.  
  
B: À! Zhèi jiù shì bǎ dàxué  
fēnchéng yīlèi dàxué èrlèi  
dàxuéde yuányīn le! Ah! This is the reason that univer-  
sities are divided into Class  
I and Class II.
3. A: Xiànzài Shànghǎide jiàoshī  
shùliang gòu bu gòu? At present is the number of teachers  
in Shànghǎi sufficient?  
  
B: Bú gòu, érqǐě, zhèi shì  
yíge pǔbiànde wèntí. No, moreover this is a widespread  
problem.
4. A: Bàoshang shuō Měiguó zhōng-  
xiǎoxuéde tiáojiàn dōu bú  
cuò. It says in the papers that condi-  
tions in American secondary and  
primary schools are quite good.  
  
B: Shì. Jībenshang měi sānshí-  
ge xuésheng yǒu yíwèi jiàoshī, Yes. In general there's a teacher  
for every thirty students, and even  
lián zuì pǔtōngde xuéxiào yě the most ordinary schools have tel-  
visions, a library, and so on.  
yǒu diànshì, túshūguǎn,  
shenmede.
5. A: Zhèngfǔ gěi pǔtōng xiǎoxué  
hé zhōngdiǎn xiǎoxuéde  
qián yíyàng duō ma? Does the government give the same  
amount of money to ordinary elemen-  
tary schools as to key elementary  
schools?  
  
B: Yǒu yídiǎnr chābié. Wǒmen  
děi shǒuxiān zhāogu  
zhōngdiǎn xiǎoxué. There is some difference. We must  
first give consideration to key  
elementary schools.
6. A: Zhōngguó liúxuéshēng xuéxíde  
zhōngdiǎn shì zìrán kēxué  
ba? Chinese students abroad concentrate  
on the natural sciences, isn't that  
so?  
  
B: Duìle, shì kēxué jìshù. Right, on science and technology.

7. A: Nǐmende yánjiūshēng chū guó  
xuéxí yǐhòu dōu huí dàxué  
jiāo shù ma? After going abroad to study, do all  
your graduate students go back to  
the universities and teach?
- B: Bù. Yǒu yībùfēn děi dānrèn  
jìshù fāngmiàn de lǐngdǎo  
gōngzuò. No. Some of them have to take up  
leading posts in technical fields.
8. A: Jīngguò sānniǎn de nǚlì,  
zhèige dìqū de nóngyè shēng-  
chǎn tiáojiàn xiāngdāng  
bú cuò le. After three years of effort,  
conditions for agricultural  
production in this area are now  
quite good.
- B: Guānyú zhèige wèntí, nǐmen yǒu  
méiyǒu cáiliào, wǒmen kě bu  
kěyǐ dàihuìqu kànkàn? Do you have any data on this subject  
that we could take back with us to  
read?
9. A: Yào shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuà  
zuì dàde wèntí shì shénme? What is the biggest problem in  
achieving the Four Modernizations?
- B: Shì jīngjì. Wǒmen děi zài bú  
tài chángde shíjiānlǐ bǎ  
zhènggè guójiāde jīngjì  
gāoshàngqù. It's the economy. Before too long  
we must push ahead the economy of  
the whole country.
10. A: Wǒmende liúxuéshēng tíchulai  
jǐge wèntí. Our foreign exchange students have  
brought up a few problems.
- B: Wǒ tīngshuō le, tāmen xiǎng  
jiākuài xuéxí sùdù. Wǒmen  
yíding kǎolǔ. I heard. They want to speed up the  
pace of their studies. We'll  
be sure to consider it.
11. zhǐliàng (zhǐliàng, zhǐliàng) quality
12. Běidà Běijīng University (short for  
Běijīng Dàxué)
13. qūbié difference, distinction
14. shèhuì kēxué social sciences

Unit 2, Vocabulary List

Běidǎ -bùfen	Běijīng University part, section
cáiliào chābié chū guó	material(s) difference, disparity to leave one's country
dānrèn	to take on, to assume
fēn	to divide (into)
gémìng	revolution; to revolt
jiākuài jiàoshī jībēnshàng	to speed up teacher basically, on the whole, by and large
jīngguò jìshù	to go through, to experience technology; technical
kēxué	science
-lèi liúxuéshēng	category study-abroad students
mùqián	at present
nǔlì	to make great efforts, to try hard to exert oneself
pǔbiàn pǔtōng	universal, widespread, common regular, ordinary
qūbié	difference, distinction
rènwéi	to think, to consider, to hold
shèhuì kēxué shíxiàn shǒuxiān shuǐpíng shùliang Sìge Xiàndàihuà sùdù	social sciences to realize first level number, amount the Four Modernizations speed, pace
tiáojiàn tíchulai tígāo	condition to bring up to raise

yánjiùshēng  
yíbùfen

zhěnggè(r)  
zhìliàng (zhǐ-, zhǐ-)  
zhòngdiǎn  
zìrán  
zìrán kēxué

graduate student  
a part, a portion; some

whole, entire  
quality  
focal point, emphasis; key  
nature; natural  
natural sciences

Unit 2, Reference Notes

1. A: Nǐmen zhèngfǔ rènwéi mùqián  
dà-, zhōng-, xiǎoxué  
qíngkuàng zěnmeyàng? What does your government think of  
your colleges, high schools, and  
primary schools at present?
- B: Wǒmen xiǎng Wénhuà Gémìng  
yǐhòude jiàoyù shuǐpíng bú  
gòu gāo, wǒmen děi gǎibiàn  
zhèige qíngxíng. We think that since the Cultural  
Revolution educational standards  
have not been high enough, and  
we must change this situation.

Notes on No. 1

rènwéi: "to think (that)," "to consider (that)," "to believe (that)"  
This is typically used for considered opinions and judgments, as opposed to  
xiǎng, "to think," which can be used for mere impressions and guesses. Also  
contrast yǐwéi, "to think mistakenly."

Wǒ rènwéi tā shuōde shì duìde. I consider what he said correct OR  
I believe that what he said is right.

Tā rènwéi zhèijian shì bù yīng- He does not think we should be allowed  
gāi ràng wǒmen zuò. to do this.

mùqián: "the present" or "at present" Although both mùqián and xiànzài,  
"now," refer to the present, xiànzài may mean "right now," whereas  
mùqián must refer to a broader period of time.

Mùqián wǒmen chǎngde shēngchǎn At present our factory's production  
shuǐpíng hái bú gòu gāo. level isn't high enough.

Mùqián tāde jīngjì qíngkuàng bú At present his financial situation  
tài hǎo. isn't too great.

dà-, zhōng-, xiǎoxué: Short for dàxué, zhōngxué, xiǎoxué.

gémìng: "revolution," "revolutionary," "to revolt" In ancient China,  
gé mìng, literally, "to change the mandate of heaven," referred to the changing  
of dynasties, since the monarch was held to be ordained by heaven. The pattern  
Gé X-de mìng, literally, "to change X's mandate of heaven," means "to revolt  
against X."

Wénhuà Gémìng or Wénhuà Dà Gémìng: The common terms for the Wúchǎn  
Jiējí Wénhuà Dà Gémìng, "Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution" (1966-1977).  
An even shorter abbreviation is Wéngé.

shuǐpíng: "level," "standard"

Rìběnde gōngyè shēngchǎn Japan's industrial production  
shuǐpíng zhēn gāo! level is really high!

Měiguó rén de shēnghuó shuǐpíng Americans have a very high standard  
hěn gāo! of living!



Tāde Dáyuǎn shuǐpíng bú gòu gāo.

His level in German isn't high enough.

2. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ yǒu jìhuà de  
tígāo yíbùfēn dàxué de  
shuǐpíng.

The Chinese government is raising the standards in some universities in a planned way.

B: À! Zhèi jiù shì bǎ dàxué  
fēnchéng yīlèi dàxué èrlèi  
dàxué de yuányīn le!

Ah! This is the reason that universities are divided into Class I and Class II.

Notes on No. 2

tígāo: "to raise," "to improve"

Dào Zhōngguó qù, keyǐ tígāo duì  
Zhōngguó de rènsī.

By going to China, you can increase your understanding of China.

Jiěfàng yǐhòu, fùnǚ de dìwèi  
tígāo le.

Since liberation, the status of women has improved.

Shǎoshù mínzú shuō pǔtōnghuà de  
shuǐpíng tígāo le bù shǎo.

The level of the minority nationalities in Standard Chinese has improved quite a bit.

-bùfēn: "part," "section"

Qǐng bǎ zhè yíbùfēn fānchéng  
Zhōngwén.

Please translate this part into Chinese.

Tā xiě de nèiběn shū, yǒu de bùfēn  
hǎo, yǒu de bùfēn bù hǎo.

Some sections of the book he wrote are good, and some aren't.

yíbùfēn: "a part," "a portion," "some"

Tā shuō de huà, yíbùfēn shì duì de,  
yíbùfēn shì cuò de.

Part of what he said is right, and part is wrong.

Qù de rén, yǒu yíbùfēn hái xiǎng  
zài qù, yǒu yíbùfēn bù xiǎng  
qù le.

Of the people who went, some would like to go back again, and some do not want to.

fēn: "to divide" As you learned fēnkāi, "to split up," in the Society module, this word is not entirely new to you, but here you see it with the ending -chéng, "into." Here's another example:

Wǒ bǎ píngguǒ fēnchéng sìkuài,  
wǒmen yīrén yíkuài.

I'll divide the apple into four pieces, one piece for each of us.

-lèi: "category"

Xiànzài lái Měiguó de Zhōngguó  
rén dàgài keyǐ fēn liǎnglèi.

The Chinese who are coming to the U.S. now can be roughly divided into two categories.

Zhèilèi wèntí zuì hǎo hé Lǚxíng-shède rén tán.

You had best talk with the Travel Service people about this sort of question.

"Hēi Wūlèi," "Hóng Wūlèi,"\* shì Wénhuà Dà Gémìng shíhoude shuōfǎ.

The "Five Black Categories" and the "Five Red Categories" were terms used during the time of the Cultural Revolution.

Zhèi jiù shì...-de yuányīn: "This is the reason that..." Here is another example of this useful pattern:

Zhèi jiù shì tā méi qùde yuányīn. This is the reason he didn't go.

Zhèi jiù shì...-de yuányīn le: This sentence exemplifies a use of new-situation le to emphasize the speaker's newly-reached understanding. You can think of this le as meaning "Now I get it!"

Ò, nǐ yǐqián shuōguode Hóu Xiān-shang jiù shì tā le!

Oh, the Mr. Hóu you spoke of before is him!

À! Suǒyǐ nǐ nàme xiǎng qù le!

Oh! That's why you want so much to go!

Related uses of new-situation le include drawing a new inference, e.g.,

Nàme, nǐ yídìng rènshi Chén Kēzhǎng le?

Then, you must know Section Chief Chén, I suppose?

and settling on a course of action or reaching a decision:

A: Tā zhīdao wǒde diànhuà ma?

Does he know my telephone number?

B: Zhīdao.

Yes.

A: Nà wǒ jiù děng tāde diànhuà le.

Then I'll wait for his call.

3. A: Xiànzài Shànghǎide jiàoshī shùliang gòu bu gòu?

At present is the number of teachers in Shànghǎi sufficient?

B: Bú gòu, érqǐě, zhèi shì yíge pǔbiànde wèntí.

No, moreover this is a widespread problem.

### Notes on No. 3

jiàoshī: "teacher," "schoolteacher"

Wǒ shì yíge xiǎoxué jiàoshī.

I'm an elementary school teacher.

---

\*These terms, which arose in the first years of the Cultural Revolution (and are now obsolete), referred to the two ideologically "irreconcilable camps." In effect, they were used to classify people by their family backgrounds. The Five Black Categories, or "bad" backgrounds, were landlords, rich peasants, counterrevolutionaries, bad elements, and bourgeois rightists. The Five Red ("good") Categories were workers, poor peasants, lower-middle peasants, revolutionary armyman, and revolutionary cadres.

Nǐmen xuéxiào yígòng yǒu duōshǎo Yīngwén jiàoshī?

How many English teachers are there in your school?

shùliang: "quantity," "number," "amount"

Nǐ néng bu néng shuōchū tāmen de shùliang yǒu duōshǎo?

Can you give an exact idea of their numbers?

Cóng shùliangshang kàn, zhèige xuéxiào de nánshēng zhān zhǔyào de dīwei.

From the point of view of numbers, the male students occupy the main position in the school.

pǔbiàn: "to be universal/widespread/common"

Zài Měiguó, yíge jiā tíng yǒu sānliàng qìchē shì hěn pǔbiàn de shì.

In America it is very common for one family to have three cars.

Zài Zhōngguó, zuìjìn sānshínián, rénmen de wénhuà jiàoyu shuǐpíng pǔbiàn tígāo le.

During the last thirty years, people's educational level in China has seen widespread improvement.

4. A: Bàoshang shuō Měiguó zhōng-xiǎoxué de tiáojiàn dōu bú cuò.

It says in the papers that conditions in American secondary and primary schools are quite good.

B: Shì. Jībēnshàng měi sānshíge xuéshēng yǒu yíwèi jiàoshī, lián zuì pǔtōng de xuéxiào yě yǒu diànshì, túshūguǎn, shènmede.

Yes. In general there's a teacher for every thirty students, and even the most ordinary schools have televisions, a library, and so on.

#### Notes on No. 4

tiáojiàn: "condition(s)," "circumstances"

Zhèrde gōngzuò tiáojiàn bú cuò.

Working conditions here are pretty good.

Xībēi de shēnghuó tiáojiàn bù zěnme hǎo.

Living conditions are not so good in the Northwest.

Zài mùqiándè tiáojiànxià, wǒmen méiyǒu bànfǎ zài kuài.

Under the present circumstances, we are unable to go any faster.

Hé tāmen zuò shēngyì zhēn bù róngyì, tāmen zǒngshì yào jiǎng hěn duō tiáojiàn.

It's really hard to do business with them. They are always insisting on a lot of conditions.

Tāmen rènwéi tā méiyǒu tiáojiàn zuò zhèige gōngzuò.

They don't think he's competent to do this job.

Jībēn: "basic," "fundamental," "elementary" (For the first example, you need to know yǔfǎ, "grammar," and cíhuì, "vocabulary.")

Xué liǎngnián Zhōngwén, jībēn-  
de yǐfǎ hé cíhuì dōu zhīdao le.

After studying two years of Chinese,  
(one) knows the basic grammar and  
vocabulary.

Zhèige dìqū gǎo nóngyède jībēn  
tiáojiàn bú gǒu.

The basic conditions for farming  
are not good enough in this area.

Jībēnshang, "basically," is often used in the PRC to mean "in the main," "on  
the whole," "by and large." (This usage is not common in Taiwan, however.)

Jībēnshang tā shì yíge hǎo  
tóngzhì.

On the whole, he is a good comrade.

Jībēnshang méiyǒu wèntí le.

By and large, there are no more  
problems.

Nǐ shuōde Yīngwén jībēnshang  
wǒ dōu tīngdédòng.

For the most part, I can understand  
all your English.

měi...yǒu...: "There is...for every..." Examples:

Měi sānge rén yǒu yíge shì  
Měiguó rén.

There is an American for every  
three persons. (One of every  
three people is an American.)

Měi sāntiān yǒu yíge rén lái.

(There is) one person (who) comes  
every three days.

pǔtōng: "to be ordinary/common/regular"

Tāmen liǎngge zhǐ shì pǔtōng  
péngyou, méi shénme tèbiéde  
guānxi.

The two of them are just ordinary  
friends; they don't have any  
special relationship.

Tā jiù shì yíge pǔtōng rén, hé  
nǐ hé wǒ yíyàng.

He is just an ordinary person, like  
you or me.

Pǔtōngde hùzhào hé zhèige yǒu  
shénme qūbié?

What's the difference between an  
ordinary passport and this?

5. A: Zhèngfǔ gěi pǔtōng xiǎoxué  
hé zhōngdiǎn xiǎoxuéde  
qián yíyàng duō ma?

Does the government give the same  
amount of money to ordinary elemen-  
tary schools as to key elementary  
schools?

B: Yǒu yídiǎnr chābié. Wǒmen  
dǎi shǒuxiān zhāogu  
zhōngdiǎn xiǎoxué.

There is some difference. We must  
first give consideration to key  
elementary schools.

# Notes on No. 5

zhōngdiǎn: "heavy-point"—"emphasis," "focal point" or in some phrases,  
"key" Also used adverbially.

Nǐ yánjiūde zhòngdiǎn dōu yǒu  
nèixiē fāngmiàn?

What are the focal points of your  
research?

Nǐmen yào cānguānde zhòngdiǎn  
shì něifāngmiàn?

What is to be the focus of your  
visit?

Nǐmen yào zhòngdiǎn fāzhǎnde  
dìqū yǒu jǐge?

How many regions do you intend to  
focus on developing?

Wǒmen yīnggāi bǎ zhòngdiǎn fàng  
zai jiàoyùshàng.

We should put the emphasis on  
education.

Tāmende gōngzuò zhòngdiǎn shì  
gāo wénhuà jiàoyù.

The focus of their work is on  
culture and education.

chābié: "difference," "discrepancy," "disparity" Contrast the word  
qūbié (additional required vocabulary), "difference," "distinction." Chābié  
stresses the idea of a distance, gap, or inequality between the things com-  
pared. Qūbié refers to differences, determined by inspection, between other-  
wise similar things.

Zhèiyang zuò hé nèiyang zuò yǒu  
shénme chābié?

What is the difference between doing  
it this way and doing it that way?

Chéngshì hé nóngcūn chābié hěn  
dà.

There's a big difference between  
the city and the country.

Nǐ shuōshuo zhèi liǎngge shǒu-  
yīnjīde qūbié zài nǎr?

Tell me what the differences are  
between these two radios.

Zhèi liǎngběn zìdiǎn yǒu shénme  
qūbié?

What's the difference between these  
two dictionaries?

shǒuxiǎn: "first," meaning before doing something else. This is a  
movable adverb (can come either before or after the subject of the sentence,  
but always before the verb).

Rúguǒ nǐ yào dào Zhōngguó qù,  
shǒuxiǎn yào xué yídiǎn Zhōngwén. If you want to go to China, you  
should learn a little Chinese first.

Shǒuxiǎn bǎ yào mǎide dōngxi kāi  
yìzhāng dānsi, ránhòu zài qǐng  
tā qù mǎi. First make a list of the things you  
want bought, and then ask him to  
go buy them.

Shǒuxiǎn can also mean "first of all," "in the first place":

Shǒuxiǎn wǒmen yào tántan nǐde  
cānguān fǎngwèn jìhuà. First of all we should discuss your  
sightseeing plans.

In sentence 5B, shǒuxiǎn zhàogu, "first of all give consideration to," can be  
idiomatically translated as "give first consideration to."

6. A: Zhōngguó liúxuéshēng xuéxíde zhōngdiǎn shì zìrán kēxué ba? Chinese students abroad concentrate on the natural sciences, isn't that so?

B: Duìle, shì kēxué jìshu. Right, on science and technology.

Notes on No. 6

zìrán: "natural," "naturally" Dàzìrán means "nature" in the sense of the physical world.

Tā hěn xǐhuan dàzìrán.	He is very fond of nature.
Ruìshìde zìrán huánjīng hěn tèbié.	Switzerland's natural environment is very different.
Zhèige shǎoshù mínzú dìqūde zìrán tiáojiàn bù hǎo.	The natural conditions in this minority nationality region are poor.
Tāde yàngzi hěn zìrán.	Her appearance is very natural.
Nǚér líkāi jiā, fùmǔ nánguò shì zìrán de.	When a daughter leaves home, it is natural for her parents to be sad.
Xuéle bú yòng, zìrán huì wàng.	If you don't use something after you learn it, you're bound to forget it.
Bú yòng guǎn, zìrán huì guòqude.	Don't worry about it; it will pass by itself.

kēxué: "science" Kēxuéjiā is a "scientist."

Měiguó shì ge kēxué jìnbùde guójiā.	The U.S. is a scientifically advanced country.
Nóngcūn rén cóngqián méiyǒu shenme kēxué zhīshi.	In the past, people in rural areas did not have any knowledge of science.

Kēxué is also used for "to be scientific":

Zhèizhǒng zuòfǎ hěn kēxué.	This method is very scientific.
Nǐ nèizhǒng xiǎngfǎ bù kēxué!	That's a very unscientific idea.

jìshu: "technique," "skill," "technology"

Tā kāi chēde jìshu hěn hǎo.	He's a good driver.
Zhè shì wǒ zuòde Mápó Dòufu, nǐ kàn wǒde jìshu zěnmeyàng?	I made this Mápó Beancurd. How do rate my technique?

Zhōngguóde chányè shēngchǎn jìshù  
fāshǎn dàole bǐjiào gāode  
shuǐpíng.

China's tea production technology  
is rather highly developed.

Tā shì ge jìshù gōngren.

He is a skilled worker.

7. A: Nǐmende yánjiūshēng chū guó  
xuéxí yǐhòu dōu huí dàxué  
jiāo shǔ ma?

After going abroad to study, do all  
your graduate students go back to  
the universities and teach?

B: Bù. Yǒu yíbùfen dǎi dǎnrèn  
jìshù fāngmiande lǐngdǎo  
gōngzuò.

No. Some of them have to take up  
leading posts in technical fields.

Notes on No. 7

chū guó: "to go abroad"

Tā shì nǎinián chū guóde?

In what year did he go abroad?

Chū guó liúxuéde yánjiūshēng  
nǎde duō bu duō?

Are there many women among the  
graduate students who go abroad  
to study?

dǎnrèn: "to assume," "to take up" a job or post

Nǐ zài zhèr dǎnrèn shénme gōng-  
zuò?

What is your job title here?

Tā zuìjìn yào qù Ōuzhōu dǎnrèn  
lǐngshǐ gōngzuò.

He will soon be going to Europe to  
do consular work.

Tā dǎnrènguó Měidàsī sīzhǎng.

He has been the chief of the Depart-  
ment of American and Oceanic Affairs.

Dǎnrèn lǐngdǎo gōngzuò, as in sentence 7B, is an often used phrase for "to take on leadership work," "to take up a leading post" (that is, to be in a job in which one is in charge of others).

8. A: Jīngguò sānniǎnde nǚlì,  
zhèige dìqūde nóngyè shēng-  
chǎn tiáojiàn xiāngdāng  
bú cuò le.

After three years of effort,  
conditions for agricultural  
production in this area are now  
quite good.

B: Guānyú zhèige wèntí, nǐmen yǒu  
méiyǒu cáiliào, wǒmen kě bu  
kěyǐ dàihuíqu kànkàn?

Do you have any data on this subject  
that we could take back with us to  
read?

Notes on No. 8

jīngguò: (1) "to pass," "to go through"

Zhèilù chē jīngguò Dōngdān ma? Does this bus go through Dōngdān?

Nèige dìfang wǒ méi qùguo, dànshì jīngguòguo. I've never been there, but I've passed through (OR passed by).

Zhèi shí wǒ dìyí cì jīngguò zhèiyàngde kǎoshì. This is the first time I've ever taken a test like this.

(2) "as a result of," "after," "through" This is the way jīngguò is used in sentence 8A. (For the second example you need to know zhànzhēng, "war.")

Jīngguò tāolùn, wǒmen juéding xià Xīngqī sī qù yěcān. After discussion, we have decided to hold the picnic next Thursday.

Tā yě bù jīngguò kǎolǚ jiù hé tā jiéhūn le. He married her without even giving it any consideration.

Jīngguò hěn cháng shíjiānde zhànzhēng, zhèige dìqū yǐjīng biànde bú rènshi le. As a result of the lengthy war, this area has become unrecognizable.

(3) "course (of events); what has happened"

Tā huílai bǎ quánbù jīngguò gāosùle wǒ. When he returned, he told me the whole story of what happened.

Shìqingde jīngguò shì zěnmeyàngde, nǐ zhīdao ma? Do you know how the whole thing went?

nǚlì: "to make great efforts," "to try hard," "to exert oneself"

Tā gōngzuò hěn nǚlì. He works very hard.

Tā bú dàn nǚlì gōngzuò, rén yě hěn rèxīn. Not only does he work very hard, but he is also a warmhearted person.

Contrast nǚlì gōngzuò, "work hard," with yònggōng, "study hard."

cáiliào: (1) "material"

Zhèige fángzide cáiliào kànqǐlái hǎoxiàng bú cuō. This house looks like it's made of pretty good material.

(2) "data," "material"

Tā gěile wǒ hěn duō cáiliào, wǒ sāntiān yě kànbuwán. He gave me a lot of data (material). Even three days wouldn't be enough time for me to finish reading it.

Nǐ nádao xīnde xuéxí cáiliào le ma? Míngtiān yào shàng xīn kè le. Have you picked up the new study materials yet? We start the new lesson tomorrow.



(3) "makings," "material"

Tā bú shì suǒ jiàoshòude cáiliào. He doesn't have the makings of a professor.

9. A: Yào shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuà zuì dàde wèntí shì shénme? What is the biggest problem in achieving the Four Modernizations?
- B: Shì jīngjì. Wǒmen děi zài bù tài chángde shíjiānlǐ bǎ zhěnggè guójiāde jīngjì gāoshàngqù. It's the economy. Before too long we must push ahead the economy of the whole country.

Notes on No. 9

shíxiàn: "to realize/achieve/bring about/accomplish/come true" Besides being used to talk about the Four Modernizations, shíxiàn is also used for realizing a wish, an ideal, a goal, self-sufficiency, a reform, industrialization, etc. Note that shíxiàn can be used in a causal sense (i.e., "cause to come about"): "They realized their wish" [Tāmen shíxiànle tāmen de yuǎnwàng]; or in a non-causal sense (i.e., "come about"): "Their wish came about" [Tāmen de yuǎnwàng shíxiànle].

Zài Xīfāng, shíxiàn gōngyèhuà yǐjīng shì yībǎinián qián de shì le. In the West, achieving industrialization is something which was done a century ago.

Nánjīng jībēnshàng shíxiànle lǜhuà. Nánjīng has basically accomplished "greenification" (making the city green by planting trees, flowers, etc.).

xiàndài: "modern times" or "modern," "contemporary"

Xiàndài rén de xiǎngfǎ dōu shì hěn kēxuéde. Modern man's ideas are all scientific.

-huà: "-ize," "-ify" Examples:

gōngyèhuà	to industrialize	lǜhuà	to make green (by planting trees, etc.)
jiǎnhuà	to simplify ( <u>jiǎn</u> is short for <u>jiǎndǎn</u> )	měihuà	to beautify
Měiguóhuà	to Americanize	èhuà	to worsen ( <u>è</u> is a literary word for "bad")
Xīfānghuà	to Westernize		

xiàndàihuà: "to become modernized"; "modernized/sophisticated/modern"  
Caution: This is an intransitive verb (cannot take an object). Therefore, to say "modernize our country" you must phrase it as "make our country become modernized":

Wǒmen yào shǐ wǒmen de guójiā  
xiàndàihuà.

We must modernize our country.

Zhèixiē xiàndàihuà yǐyán bú shì  
měi ge rén dōu zhīdaode.

Not everyone knows these modern terms.

Sìge Xiàndàihuà: "the Four Modernizations" These are the modernization of agriculture, industry, national defense, and science and technology. Comprehensive development in these areas by the end of the century was called for at the Eleventh National Party Congress in 1977, and again by Communist Party Chairman Huà Guófēng at the Fifth National People's Congress in 1978. (This theme had been enunciated twice before, in 1965 and 1975, by Zhōu Ēnlái.) Since 1979, the drive for the "socialist Four Modernizations" has been at the root of the Chinese government's domestic policy and have also had a broad influence on its foreign policy.

zhěnggè(r): As an adjective (before a noun), "whole," "entire," referring to a single item.

Zhěnggè shàngwǔ nǐ dōu zuò  
shénme le?

What did you do the whole morning?

Wǒ yào mǎi zhěnggè de huǒtuǐ,  
bú yào bànge de.

I want to buy a whole ham, not a half one.

Zhěnggè jìhuà dōu shì tā yíge  
rén xiǎngchūlái de.

The entire plan was his idea.

As an adverb, zhěnggè(r) means "completely," "in its entirety":

Zhèijù huàde yìsì nǐ zhěnggè  
nòngcuō le.

You completely misunderstood the meaning of that sentence.

Tāde mótuōchē zhěnggè bèi  
zhuànguài le.

His motorcycle was completely ruined in the collision.

Zhèige fángzi zhěnggè dōu shì  
mùtou zuòde.

This house is made completely of wood.

gǎoshàngqù: Shàngqù, "to go up," may be used figuratively to say that production "goes up" or work "moves forward." The resultative compound gǎoshàngqù, therefore, means "to cause to go up," "to cause to move forward." We have translated it here as "to push ahead" the economy.

10. A: Wǒmen de liúxuéshēng tíchulai  
jǐge wèntí.

Our foreign exchange students have brought up a few problems.

B: Wǒ tīngshuō le, tāmen xiǎng  
jiākuài xuéxí sùdù. Wǒmen  
yíding kǎolǚ.

I heard. They want to speed up the pace of their studies. We'll be sure to consider it.

Notes on No. 10

tí: One meaning of the verb tí is "to lift," "to raise." In a more abstract sense, it can mean (1) "mention," "refer to," "bring up" (a subject). Tí wèntí is "to ask questions."

Wǒ tí ge wèntí kěyǐ ma?

May I ask a question?

Qǐng dàjiā tí yìjian.

Please give us your comments, everyone.

Bié zài tí nèijiàn shì le,  
hǎo ma?

Don't mention that again, okay?

Tā měicì tídao zhèijiàn shì,  
wǒ jiù shēngqì.

Every time he mentions that, I  
get angry.

(2) "to raise," "to bring up," "to put forward" (questions, comments, demands, etc.):

Tā tíde nài liǎngge tiáojiàn,  
wǒ méi bànfǎ shíxiàn.

There's no way I can satisfy (fulfill)  
the conditions he put forward.

Nǐ juéde wǒde bànfǎ bù xíng,  
kěyǐ tíchū nǐde bànfǎ.

If you don't think my way (of handling  
it) will do, you can propose a way  
of your own.

Tā tíchū ràng Zhāng Tóngzhì  
zuò lǐngdǎo.

He proposed having Comrade Zhāng  
be the leader.

Tā tíchū yào dào Nánjīng qù  
yítàng yǐhòu cái néng xiě  
zhèipiān wénzhāng.

He said that he had to go to Nán-  
jīng before he could write this  
article.

jiǎkuài: "to quicken," "to speed up" (one's step, a process, the pace of doing something)

Rúguǒ jiǎkuài zuò, sāntiān jiù  
xíng le.

If we speed up, we can finish  
in three days.

sùdù: (literally "fast-degree") "speed," "pace," "tempo"

Sānshínián lái, Rìběn jīngjì  
fāzhǎnde sùdù hěn kuài.

For the past thirty years, Japan's  
rate of economic development has  
been very fast.

jiǎkuài...sùdù, "to quicken the pace of...", "to speed up":

Wǒmen yào jiǎkuài gōngzuòde  
sùdù.

We must speed up our work.

Zhōngguó yào jiǎkuài shíxiàn  
Sìge Xiàndàihuàde sùdù.

China wants to speed up the Four  
Modernizations.

[The opposite of jiǎkuài sùdù is fàngmàn sùdù.]

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

zhǐliàng: "quality" Also pronounced zhǐliàng or zhǐliàng.

Shùliàng duō, zhǐliàng yě bú  
cuò.

They are plentiful and of good  
quality.

In some contexts, you can use the syllable zhǐ/zhǐ/zhǐ to stand for zhǐliàng  
and the syllable liàng to stand for shùliàng:

Zhǐ, liàng, dōu bú cuò.

The quality and quantity are both  
good.

Unit 2, Review Dialogue

This dialogue takes place in Běijīng. Early one morning, Professor Armstrong is out for a walk near his hotel when he runs into Lín Xiǎohé of the China Travel Service.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| L: Jiàoshòu, nín zǎo!   | Good morning, Professor!  |
| A: Zǎo, nǐ hǎo! Zǎoshangde kōngqì<br>bǐjiǎo xīnxiān yídiǎnr. Wǒ hěn<br>xǐhuan zǎoshang zài wàimian<br>zǒuyízǒu.   | Good morning, how are you. The<br>morning air is a little fresher. I<br>like to go for a walk outside in the<br>morning.  |
| L: Jīntiān tiānqì yě bú cuò,<br>méiyǒu fēng, chūlai zǒuzou duì<br>shēntǐ yǒu hǎochu.  | The weather is pretty nice today<br>too. There's no wind. It's good for<br>the health to go out and do some<br>walking.   |
| A: Shì a! Jīntiānde tiānqì zhēn<br>shūfu.   | Yes. The weather today is really<br>pleasant.   |
| L: Jiàoshòu, nín jīntiān hǎoxiàng<br>hěn gāoxìng ma!  | Professor, you seem so happy today.   |
| A: Wǒ hěn gāoxìng. Nǐ zhīdao, duō<br>jiǔ le, wǒ xiǎng qù kànkàn Běidǎ,<br>kěshì yìzhí méiyǒu jīhuì qù.  | Yes, I am. You know, I've been<br>wanting to go visit Běijīng Univer-<br>sity for such a long time, but I<br>never had the chance to.   |
| L: Jīntiān wǒmen jiù keyǐ qù<br>cānguān le.   | But we're going today.  |
| A: Shì a. Wǒ shì gāo jiàoyu<br>gōngzuòde. Zài Měiguóde shíhou,<br>wǒ chángcháng xǐhuan kàn xiē<br>guānyú Zhōngguó jiàoyu qíngkuàngde<br>shù, kěshì, yào zhēnde yánjiūde<br>huà, zǒng juéde cáiliào bú gòu,<br>yǒu hěn duō dōngxī bú gòu liǎo-<br>jiě, érqǐ, yǒu shíhou yǒude<br>cáiliào hé Zhōngguóde qíngkuàng<br>chābié hěn dà, suǒyǐ . . . | That's right. I'm in education.<br>When I'm in the States I often like<br>to read books about education in<br>China, but I always feel that we<br>don't have enough data to do actual<br>research on it. There's a lot we<br>don't understand well enough.<br>Furthermore, some of the data<br>is very different from the [true] situation in China, so . . . |
| L: Nín yǒu shénme wèntí jiù<br>tíchulai, yěxǔ wǒ keyǐ bāng nín<br>yídiǎnr máng ne?  | Ask me any questions you have,<br>maybe I can help you with them.   |
| A: Nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ shìshi, kàn<br>néng bù néng shuōqīngchu a!   | Wait a second, let me try and see<br>if I can explain it clearly.   |
| L: Méi guānxi, nín mànmanr shuō.  | It doesn't matter, take your time.  |

A: Zài nǐmen zhèr, dàxué fēn yīlèi èrlèi, zhōngguó xiǎoxué yě yǒu zhōngdiǎn zhōng- xiǎoxué hé pǔtōng zhōng- xiǎoxuéde qūbié. Zhèiyang zuòde mùdì shì shénme ne? Wǒ shì shuō . . .

Here, your universities are divided into Class I and Class II, and your middle schools and elementary schools distinguish between key and regular ones. What is the purpose for doing that? I mean . . .

L: Ng, nǐ shuōxiāqu.

Uh-huh, go on.

A: Wǒde yìsī shì, yàoshì bǎ zhōng-diǎn fàng zài jǐgè xuéxiào-shang, néng bu néng pǔbiàn tí-gāo jiàoyu shuǐpíng ne?

I mean, if you put the emphasis on a few schools, will you be able to make a general improvement in the level of education?

L: Zhèi shì yíge hěn hǎode wèntí. Nǐ zhīdao, Zhōngguó yǒu shíyīdǎo rénǔ, yǒu nàme duō rén xūyào shòu jiàoyu, kěshì jiàoyude qíngkuàng bù néng ràng rén mǎnyì.

That's a very good question. You know, China has over a billion people. There are so many people who who need to get an education, but educational conditions are not satisfactory.

A: Ng.

Uh-huh.

L: Tèbié shì jīngguò Wénhuà Dà Gé-míng yǐhòu, jiàoyu fāngmian zhēn yǒu bù shǎo wèntí, suǒyǐ zài mùqián de qíngkuàng xià, wǒmen děi bǎ zhōngdiǎn fàng zài yǐbùfēn dàxué, zhōngguó, hé xiǎoxuéshang.

Especially since the Cultural Revolution, there have been a lot of problems in the area of education, so under the present conditions, we must put the emphasis on a portion of our colleges, middle schools, and elementary schools.

A: Nàme, zài zhōngdiǎn dàxuéli, nǐmen rènwéi zuì zhǔyào de gōngzuò yǒu shì shénme ne?

Then in key colleges, what do you consider to be the principal job?

L: Shǒuxiān děi xiǎng bànǎ tígāo jiàoshīde shuǐpíng. Xiànzài jiàoshī shùliang bú gòu, shuǐ-píng bù gāo.

First of all we must try to raise the level of the instructors. At present the number of instructors is insufficient and their level is low.

A: Ng, zhèi shì yíge zhòngyào de wèntí.

Mm, that's an important problem.

L: Shì, zhèige wèntí hé tígāo zhěnggè mínzúde jiàoyu shuǐpíng yǒu hěn dàde guānxi.

Yes, it's a question that has great bearing on raising the educational level of the whole nation.

A: Hǎo, nàme dièr ne?

Okay, then the second thing?

L: Gāo Sìge Xiàndàihuà xūyào hěn duō shòuguó jiàoyude rén, kěshì zhèijiàn shì bú shì zài duǎn

To carry on the Four Modernizations we need a lot of educated people, but this can't be accomplished in

shíjiānlǐ kěyǐ zuòhǎode. Zhèi yídiǎn nín dàgài tóngyì ba?

a short time. You probably agree with that point, don't you?

A: Wǒ dǒng, wǒ dǒng.

I understand, I understand.

L: Suǒyǐ, wǒmen bàn yíxiē zhòngdiǎn xuéxiào, wèide shì jiākuài jiàoyu sùdu.

So we are setting up some key schools in order to speed up the educational process.

A: Jiākuài jiàoyu sùdu? Nǐde yìsi shì shuō, zhòngdiǎn xuéxiàode tiáojiàn bǐjiào hǎo, xuésheng, jiàoshīde shuǐpíng yě bǐjiào gāo, zhèiyang, xuésheng jiù yǒu jīhuì zài bǐjiào duǎnde shíjiān-lǐ xué bǐjiào duōde dōngxī.

To speed up the educational process? You mean, key schools have better conditions, and the level of their students and teachers is higher, so the students have the opportunity to learn more things in a shorter time.

L: Duì le.

Right.

A: Nàme nǐmen pài chū guóde liúxuéshēng shì bu shì dōu shì cóng zhòngdiǎn xuéxiàoli lái de ne?

Then are all the students you send abroad from key schools?

L: Tāmen duōbàn shì cóng zhòngdiǎn dàxué lái de, tèbié shì yánjiūshēng.

They're mostly from key universities, especially the graduate students.

A: Wǒ jiànguó jǐwèi lái Měiguó niàn shūde liúxuéshēng, tāmen dōu shì xué kēxué jìshùde. Tīngshuō tāmen xuéde fēicháng nǚlì. Zhōngguó liúxuéshēngde xuéxí zhòngdiǎn shì kēxué jìshù, duì bu duì?

I've met several Chinese going to school in the United States. They were all studying science and technology. I hear that they were very hard-working. Chinese students abroad concentrate on science and technology, isn't that right?

L: Nín shuōde duì, tāmen zhǔyào shì xué zìrán kēxué. Zhèi shì wǒmen mùqián zuì dàde xūyào.

That's right, they mainly study the natural sciences. That's our greatest need at present.

A: Tāmen huí guó yǐhòu dōu gǎo yánjiū gōngzuò ma?

After they return home do they all do research work?

L: Bù yídìng. Wǒ xiǎng yǒu yí dà bùfen hái dǐ zài dàxué dǎnrèn jiàoshīde gōngzuò. Shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuà líbùkǎi jiàoyu ma? Jiàoshī, yǒu shíjiān gěi wǒ jièshào jièshào Měiguóde jiàoyu qíngkuàng a?

Not necessarily. I think that a large portion of them still have to take up teaching positions in universities. Education is essential to achieving the Four Modernizations! Professor, when you have the time, tell me about education in America!

A: Hǎo, nǐ duì nǐfāngmiàn de qíngkuàng zuì yǒu xìngqù?

Sure. What aspect are you most interested in?

L: Wǒ duì xiǎoxué jiàoyu, értóng jiàoyu suǐ yǒu xìngqù, yīnwèi, wǒ xiǎng yíge rén kāishǐ shòu jiàoyu de nèiduàn shíjiān shì fēicháng zhòngyào de.

I'm most interested in primary school and child education, because I think the period when a person begins his education is very important.

A: Wǒ tóngyì nǐ de kānfǎ, érqǐě, chúle shàng xué yǐwài, jiāting hé shèhuì de jiàoyu yě fēicháng zhòngyào. Yǒu de shíhòu, fùmǔ mende jiàoyu qíngkuàng hé háizimen yǒu fēicháng dà de guānxi.

I agree with you. Furthermore, besides attending school, the education one gets in the home and in society are also very important. Sometimes the parents' education has a great bearing on the children's.

L: Duì. Suǒyǐ gāohǎo jiàoyu shì zhènggè shèhuì de gōngzuò, wǒmen měi ge rén dōu yǒu zéren.

Right. So improving education is the job of our entire society. Each of us has the responsibility for it.

A: Nǐ shuō de zhēn hǎo. Duì le, jīntiān wǒmen cānguān de Běidà, shì bu shì Zhōngguó zuì hǎo de dàxué ne?

Well said. Oh yes—is Běijīng University, which we're going to visit today, the best university in China?

L: Běidà shì hěn yǒu míng de dàxué, kěshì hěn nán shuō shì bu shì zuì hǎo de. Zài Zhōngguó yǒu jǐ ge dàxué dōu bú cuò. Běidà de jiàoyu zhīliang jībēnshàng ràng rén mǎnyì.

B.U. is a very famous university, but it's difficult to say if it's the best. There are several universities in China that are pretty good. The quality of education at B.U. is basically satisfactory.

Shíjiān bù zǎo le, nín zhǐ zǎo fàn le meiyou?

It's getting late, have you had breakfast?

A: Òu, wǒ hái méi zhǐ zǎo fàn ne, wǒ mǎshàng jiù qù.

Oh, I haven't had breakfast yet. I'll go right away.

L: Bié jí, wǒmen děngzhe nín.

No hurry, we'll wait for you.

A: Hǎo, wǒ hěn kuài jiù lái.

Okay, I'll be there shortly.



Unit 2, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American college student runs into a student from China at the Dupont Circle subway station in Washington, D.C.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

suàn	to be counted as (good, bad, etc.)
kējī	science and technology (abbreviation for <u>kēxué jìshù</u> )
huìhuà	conversation
jiǎnchēng	abbreviation
yángé	to be strict

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Where did the American student learn Chinese? Where did the Chinese student learn English?
2. What was language study like at B.U.? Do you think it is different from an American university? How do you know?

3. What is the abbreviation for science and technology? Put the following into abbreviated form.

wénhuà (culture)	jiàoyù (education)	<hr/> (the field of culture and education)
rénmín (the people)	dàhuì (general member- ship meeting)	<hr/> (People's Congress)
yǔyán (spoken language)	wénzì (writing)	<hr/> (language and literature)

4. What is the Chinese student studying?
5. According to the Chinese student, what kinds of science are not so clearly separated in modern society?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

### Exercise 3

In this conversation, a young Chinese teacher at Běijīng University walks over to her American student who is sitting under a tree reading a book.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

Lǚ Xùn	(a famous Chinese author of the 1920s and 1930s)
yàoburán	otherwise
kùnnán	difficulty
niánlíng	age
Wénhuà Dà Gémíng	Cultural Revolution
dàxué bìyèshēng	college graduate

Wéngé

Cultural Revolution (abbreviation of  
Wénhuà Dà Gémìng)

xuéyuàn

(academic) institute

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why does the student like to read Chinese literature? What is Ms. Lín's reaction?
2. Why are Chinese students who go abroad older than usual? What does the American say are other characteristics of these students?
3. How does Ms. Lín respond to the student's wish to talk with more Chinese?
4. Summarize this dialogue in two or three sentences.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

### Exercise 4

This conversation takes place at the Běijīng University library when an American graduate student and a Chinese graduate student happen to meet.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

cānkǎoshū

reference book

xī

department (of a school)

huó dòng

activity

làngfèi

to waste

jiàokēshū

textbook

### Questions for Exercise 4

1. How does the American student feel about his study of Chinese?
2. Are post-Cultural Revolution college students in China very familiar with the social situation in their country? Why?
3. Why do the American students want to go outside the university?

4. What sentences does the American use to take leave of the Chinese?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

At the Dupont Circle subway station in Washington, D.C., an American college student (A) runs into a student from China (B).

- A: Duìbuqǐ, nǐ shì cóng Zhōngguó lái de liúxuéshēng ba?  
Excuse me, you must be a student from China, aren't you?
- B: Shì a! Nǐde Zhōngwén zěnmě hǎo, qùguo Zhōngguó ba?  
Yes! Your Chinese is so good! Have you been to China?
- A: Hái méiyǒu, yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì wǒ yíding yào qù kànkàn.  
Not yet, but if I get the chance to I'm sure I'll go visit.
- B: Nà nǐde Zhōngwén jiù shì zài Huáshèngdùn xuéde?  
Then you learned all your Chinese here in Washington?
- A: Èng. Jǐnián yǐqián wǒ zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué xuéguo yǐnián, lái Huáshèngdùn yǐhòu yòu yìzhí zài xué. Kěshì Zhōngwén de shuōfāng hǎishì bú gòu gāo.  
Mm. A few years ago I had a year of Chinese at the University of California, and since I came to Washington, I've been studying it all along. But my level in Chinese still isn't high enough.
- B: Nǐ méiyǒu qùguo Zhōngguó, Zhōngwén zěnmě hǎo le, wǒ lái Měiguó yǐjīng yǐnián, Yīngwén shuōfāng hǎishì tígāode hěn màn.  
Your Chinese is this good and you've never been to China, but I've been in the States a year already and my English level is still improving very slowly.
- A: Zài Zhōngguó de shíhòu nǐ xuéguo Yīngwén ba?  
You studied English when you were in China, I suppose?
- B: Xuéguo, xuéguo sānnián bàn ne!  
Sure, I studied it for three and a half years!
- A: Shì Yīngguó Yīngwén?  
British English?
- B: Shì, èrqiè jiàoshī yě dōu shì Zhōngguó rén, suǒyǐ chū guó yǐhòu zuì dàde wèntí shì tīngbùdǒng, shuōbùchū lái. Kàn shū bǐ shuō huà róngyìduō le.  
Yes, and my teachers were all Chinese, so after I left China my biggest problem was that I couldn't understand people talking and I couldn't speak. Reading is a lot easier than speaking.
- A: Zài Zhōngguó de shíhòu, nǐ zài nǎige dàxué nián shù?  
In China, what university were you studying at?
- B: Zài Běidà. Běidàde Yīngwén hái suàn bú cuò, búguò, wǒmen xué kējì de xuéshe zhòngdiǎn shì kàn shū, fānyì, bú shì huìhuà.  
At B.U. B.U. is pretty good for English, but for us students in science and technology the emphasis is on reading and translating, not on conversation.

- A: Kējì? Shì bu shì kēxué jìshù? "Kējì"? Is that science and technology?
- B: Shì. Wǒmen chángcháng yòng hěn duō jiǎnchēng, duìbuqǐ ya! Right. We use a lot of abbreviations, pardon me!
- A: Nà méiyǒu shenme. Búguò wǒ hái yǒu yídiǎnr bù dǒng. No problem. But there's still something I don't understand.
- B: Shénme dìfangr? What?
- A: Nǐmen cháng shuō kēxué fēn liǎng-bùfen, yíbfēn shì shèhuì kēxué, yíbfēn shì zìrán kēxué. Nàme kēxué jìshù shuōde jiù shì zìrán kēxué ma? You often say that science has two divisions. One is social science and the other is natural science. So does science and technology refer only to the natural sciences?
- B: Zhè bú shì nàme yán'gède, tèbié shì xiàndài shèhuì, zìrán kēxué hé shèhuì kēxué jiù fēnde bú nàme qīngchū le. This [distinction] isn't so strict. Especially in modern society, the natural sciences and the social sciences aren't so clearly separated.
- A: Zhèi wǒ tóngyì. Zài fēn lèide wèntíshang, wǒmen yǒu hěn duō shuōfǎ hé nǐmen bú tài yíyàng. I agree with that. On questions of categorization, we have a lot of ideas that are different from yours.
- B: Òu, chē lái le, wǒ yào shàng chē le. Yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì zài tán. Oh, here comes the train. I have to get on it. In the future we'll talk some more if we get the chance.
- A: Hǎode, xiàcì wǒmen yòng Yīng-wén tán. All right. Next time we'll talk in English.
- B: Hǎo, xièxie nǐ, zàijiàn. Okay, thank you. Good-bye.
- A: Zàijiàn. Good-bye.

### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

On the campus of Beijing Language Institute, an American student (B) is sitting under a tree reading a book. A young teacher (A) from the Chinese department walks over to chat.

- A: Zài nián shénme ne? What are you reading?
- B: Ò, Lín Lǎoshī, nín hǎo! Wǒ zài kàn Lǚ Xùn Xiānshengde xiǎoshuō. Oh, Miss Lin (Teacher Lin), how are you! I'm reading some fiction by (Mr.) Lü Xùn.
- A: Shì nǎyípiān na? What piece?

B: "Yào." Wǒ hěn xǐhuan Lǚ Xùn  
Xiānshengde xiǎoshuō.

"Medicine." I like Lǚ Xùn's fiction  
very much.

A: Wǒ xiǎng, zài Měiguóde shíhou,  
Zhōngguó lìshǐ, Zhōngguó wénxué,  
nǐ dāgāi niǎnde bù shǎo.

I guess you've probably read quite  
a lot of Chinese history and litera-  
ture in America.

B: Xué Zhōngwén, bīxū shǒuxiǎn xué  
yídiǎnr lìshǐ hé wénxué, dōng  
yídiǎnr Zhōngguó wénhuà, yàobu-  
rán xué Zhōngwén yíding yǒu hěn  
dàde kùnnán. Zhōngguó liúxué-  
shēng yě shì zhèiyang zuò ma?

To study the Chinese language, you  
have to first study a little history  
and literature, and understand a lit-  
tle Chinese culture, otherwise you're  
sure to have a hard time studying the  
language. Do Chinese who go abroad  
to study do the same thing?

A: Wǒmende xuéxí tiáojiàn hái shì  
bú cuòde, kěshì liúxuéshēng  
chū guó yǐqián děi duì nèige  
guójiāde wénhuà zuò bǐyàode  
liǎojiě. Zài zhèifāngmiàn, wǒ-  
men zuòde hái hěn bú gòu.

Our conditions for study are fair-  
ly good, but before a student goes  
abroad, he ought to acquire the req-  
uisite understanding of the country  
[he is going to]. In this area, we  
have as yet done far from enough.

B: Wǒ tīngshuō Zhōngguó liúxué-  
shēngde niánlíng dōu bú tài  
xiǎo le, duōbànr shì Wénhuà Dà  
Gémìng yǐqián bǐyède.

I understand that the Chinese stu-  
dents going abroad aren't very young;  
most of them graduated [from college]  
before the Cultural Revolution.

A: Shì. Wénhuà Dà Gémìng yǐqiándē  
dàxué bǐyèshēng pǔbiànde zhǐliàng  
bǐjiào gāo, hé WénGé yǐhòude  
dàxuéshēng chābié bù xiǎo.

Yes. In general the quality of col-  
lege graduates from before the Cul-  
tural Revolution is higher. They're  
quite different from the post-Cul-  
tural Revolution college students.

B: Nàme shùliang ne?

How about in terms of numbers?

A: Shùliang yě bù shǎo.

Their numbers are quite large, too.

B: Nàme zhèixiē bǐyèshēng shì bu  
shì dōu dānrèn bǐjiào zhòngyàode  
gōngzuò ne?

So do these graduates all take on  
rather important jobs?

A: Bù dōu yíyàng. Mùqián, Wénhuà  
Dà Gémìng yǐqiándē dàxué bǐyè-  
shēng yǒu hěn duō dānrèn bǐjiào  
zhòng yàode gōngzuò. Bǐfāng shuō  
wǒmen Xuéyuàn ba, gōngzuòde bǐ-  
jiào hǎode yě duōbànr shì nèige  
shíhoude dàxuéshēng. Dāngrán,  
hái yǒu gèng lǎode.

They're not all the same. At pres-  
ent, there are many pre-Cultural Revo-  
lution college graduates who have  
taken on rather important jobs. For  
example, in our Institute, those who  
do their work comparatively well are  
mostly college students from that  
time. Of course there are older  
ones as well.

B: Wǒ hěn xǐhuan wǒmen de lǎoshī, yě hěn xǐhuan Yǎnyán Xuéyuàn, wǒ zhǐ shì xīwàng yǒu bǐjiào duō de jīhuì hé Zhōngguó xuésheng, lǎoshī duō tántan.

I like our teachers very much, and the Institute, too. I just wish we would have more opportunities to talk with the Chinese students and teachers.

A: Hǎo, hǎo, yǒu shíjiān wǒmen duō tántan. Nǐ kàn shū ba. Yǐhuǐ jiàn.

All right, we'll talk more when we get the time. You go on reading. See you in a while.

B: Lín Lǎoshī yǐhuǐ jiàn.

See you in a while, Miss Lín.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

An American graduate student (A) walks up the stairs in front of the Beijing University library. A Chinese graduate student (B), whose arms are full of books, is trying to open the door with his foot.

A: Wǒ lái, wǒ lái! Dēngyidēng, wǒ lái bāng nǐ kāi mén.

I'll get it, I'll get it. Wait a second, I'll open the door for you.

B: Xièxie nǐ.

Thank you.

A: Zhè dōu shì nǐ jiède shū a?

These are all books you borrowed?

B: Shì a! Yòngle liǎngge xīngqīde gōngfu, hǎo róngyi cái kànwán le.

Yeah! It took me long enough to finish reading them--two weeks!

A: Bú cuò, liǎngge xīngqī kàn zhème duō Yīngwén cānkǎoshū, sùdu bú màn na!

Not bad! To read all these English reference books in two weeks, that's a pretty good speed!

(They enter the door and "B" goes to return his books. "A" sits down at a table. A few minutes later, "B" comes over to her.)

A: Xiūxi jǐfēn zhōng zài jìnqu kàn shū, hǎo bu hǎo a?

Why don't you rest a few minutes before you go in to study, okay?

B: Hǎo. Nèitiān, xīli yánjiūshēng kāi huì, dàjiā dōu rènwéi nǐ tán-de hěn hǎo, yě dōu juéde nǐde Zhōngwén bǐ gāng lái Běidāde shíhou hǎode duō le.

Okay. The other day when the graduate students in the department held a meeting, everyone thought that what you said was very good, and we all felt that your Chinese is much better now than when you first came to B.U.

A: Kěshì wǒ háishi juéde xuéxí sùdu tài màn, wǒmen dōu xīwàng néng jiākuài sùdu, tígāo shuō huàde shuǐpíng.

But I still feel that our pace of study is too slow. We all wish we could speed up the pace to improve our speaking.



B: Nèitiān nǐ tíchulaide guānyú yào liǎojiě Zhōngguó shèhuìde wèntí, xuéxiào fāngmian yíding huì kǎo-lǐde. Kěshì, wǒ xiǎng, nǐmen shuō Zhōngwénde jīhuì bù shǎo a! Yǒu Zhōngguó lǎoshī, yǒu Zhōngguó tóngxué, érqǐě nǐmende Zhōngwén dōu bú cuò le, nǐmen wàiguó xuésheng zìjǐ yě kěyǐ shuō Zhōngwén ma!

A: Wǒmen zìjǐ zài yìqǐ shuō Yīngwén shì hěn zìrán de. Érqǐě, xuéxiàoli dōu shì xuésheng hé lǎoshī. Wǒmen hěn xīwǎng hé shèhuìshàngde pǔtōng rén tányitán.

B: Wǒmen zhèixiē xuésheng duōbànr yě dōu shì cóng pǔtōngde jiātinglǐ lái de ma. Tèbié shì jīngguó Wénhuà Dà Gémíng yǐhòude dàxuéshēng duōbànr dōu zài shèhuìshàng gōngzuòguo hěn duō nián, bǐjiào liǎojiě shèhuìde qíngkuàng.

A: Ò, zhè hái shì yǒu qūbiéde. Shèhuìde qíngkuàng gēn dàxuélǐde qíngkuàng hěn bù yíyàng. Wǒmen lái Zhōngguó nián shùde wàiguó liúxuéshēng, yánjiūshēng, dōu hěn xiǎng duō liǎojiě Zhōngguóde qíngxíng, tèbié shì xiǎng liǎojiě nǐmen shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuàde qíngkuàng.

B: Dāngrán, dāngrán. Zhèiyidiǎn wǒmen shì qīngchude. Wǒmen xiǎng tài duōde shèhuì huódòng dàgài huì làngfèi nǐmen bù shǎode shíjiān.

A: Ò! Méiyǒu wèntí, zài Měiguóde dàxuélǐ, wǒmen bú jiù shì zài xuéxiào hé túshūguǎnlǐ nián shù, shèhuì shēnghuó shì wǒmen zuì zhōngyàode jiàokēshù, yě shì zuì hǎode lǎoshī.

B: Hǎode, hǎode, wǒ yíding hé xīlǐ tányitán, duō gěi nǐmen ānpai yidiǎnr cānguān fǎngwènde huódòng.

I'm sure the school will consider the question you brought up about wanting to learn about Chinese society. But it seems to me you have plenty of chances to speak Chinese! There are the Chinese teachers, and your Chinese classmates. Besides, you all speak Chinese very well now. You foreign students can speak Chinese among yourselves!

It's natural for us to speak English together. Besides, in school it's all students and teachers. We want very much to converse with ordinary people in society.

Most of us students are from ordinary families, you know. In particular, most college students after the Cultural Revolution have worked in society many years and understand the social situation pretty well.

Oh, there's still a difference. Society is quite different from the situation in the university. All of us foreign college and graduate students who come to China to study want to understand the situation here, and especially how the accomplishment of the Four Modernizations is progressing.

Of course, of course. We understand that. But we think that too many social activities would probably waste a lot of your time.

Oh, that's no problem. In American universities, we don't just study in school and in the library. Social life is our most important textbook and our best teacher.

All right, I'll be sure to talk with the department, and set up more visiting activities for you people.

A: Hǎode, xièxie nǐ. Nǐ kuài jìnqu  
niàn shū ba! Bú zhàn nǐde shí-  
jiān le. Zàijiàn.

Good, thank you. Now you go on in  
and study. I won't take up any more  
of your time. Good-bye.

B: Zàijiàn.

Good-bye.

Unit 3, Reference List

1. A: Tāmen quān zhèige gōngshè  
jiào shénme? Dānzishang  
yǒu méiyǒu xiězhe? What do they call this commune? Is  
it written on the list?  
B: Xiězhe ne, jiào "Sìjìqīng." Yes, it's called Sìjìqīng.
2. A: Zhèige gōngshè shíwǔge dàduì-  
de chǎnliàng dōu zhème gāo Is the output this high in all  
ma? fifteen brigades of this commune?  
B: Chābuduō, zài shāndìde Almost. The two brigades in the  
liǎngge dàduì, chǎnliàng mountains have somewhat lower  
shǎo yídiǎnr. outputs.
3. A: Běijīng jiǎoqū shēngchǎn yì- There's a famous kind of rice pro-  
zhǒng yǒu míngde dàozi, duced in the suburbs of Běijīng.  
jiào shénme? What's it called?  
B: Jiào Jīngxīdào. Běijīngde It's called Jīngxīdào. Jīng as in  
jīng, dōng-xī-nán-běide Běijīng, xī as in dōng-xī-nán-  
de xī. běi.
4. A: Quánguó yígòng yǒu jǐge píng- How many flatland regions are there  
yuán? in the whole country?  
B: Miànjī bǐjiào dàde yǒu sìge, There are four which are relatively  
dōu shì shēngchǎn liángshíde large; all of them are major  
zhǔyào dìqū. grain-producing regions.
5. A: Nèige shēngchǎn shūcàide dàduì The brigade that produces vegetables  
zhǐ yǒu liùshí hù! has only sixty households!  
B: Shì a, èrbǎiduōkǒu rén měi- Yes, for two hundred people, they  
nián mài gěi guójiā bù shǎo sell a lot of vegetables to the  
de cài na! state every year!
6. A: Xiànzài, gāo jīngjī jiànshè Today, engaging in economic construc-  
hái shì Zhōngguó rénmín zuì tion is still the most important  
zhòngyàode gōngzuò a! work of the Chinese people!  
B: Shì, suīrán zhèixiē nián Yes, although the pace of development  
fāzhǎn sùdù hěn kuài, kěshì has been very fast the past few  
jīngjī hái shì wǒmen de gōng- years, the economy is still the main  
zuò zhòngdiǎn. focus of our work.

7. A: Hē! Nǐmende càidī shōude bù shǎo a!  
B: Jiù shì ma, měimǔ dì dòu shōu yíwānduǒ jīn na!
- Wow! You've harvested quite a lot from your vegetable plots!  
Sure, we harvested over ten thousand catties from each mu of land!
8. A: Zhèige gōngshè jīxièhuà yǐhòu, mǔchǎn tígāole duōshǎo?  
B: Tígāole yíbàn duō yidiǎn, chàbuduō bǎifēnzhī wǔshíyī.
- Since this commune was mechanized, how much has the yield per mu been increased?  
It was raised a little more than half, about fifty one percent.
9. A: Nǐ jiù cānguānle "Sìjìqīng?" Biéde jǐge xiānjìn gōngshè ne? Shénme shíhou qù ya?  
B: Guò jítīān jiù qù, péi jǐwèi nóngyè zhuānjiā yìqǐ qù.
- You've only visited Sìjìqīng? How about the other advanced communes? When are you going to them?  
We'll be going in a few days. We're going with several specialists in agriculture.
10. A: Zhèige dìqūde nóngyè shēngchǎn yǒu shénme tèdiǎn ma?  
B: Wǒmen shìzhe zǔzhīle jǐge zhuānyèhuàde gōngshè, tāmen-de shēngchǎn bǐjiǎo yǒu tèdiǎn.
- Is there anything distinctive about the agricultural production of this region?  
We have organized a few specialized communes on a trial basis. Their production set-up is rather distinctive.
11. A: Nǐmen gōngshè yǒu zhème duō dà tuōlājī!  
B: Ng, píngjūn měige dàduì èrshítái, wǒmen hái xiǎng duō mǎi jǐtái ne!
- Your commune has so many large tractors!  
Yes, every brigade has twenty on the average, and we want to buy a few more!
12. A: Cóng túpiànshàng kàn, nǐmen gōngzuòde hǎo xīnkǔ.  
B: Méiyǒu shénme xīnkǔ, jiù shì zài xuéxiào hòubianr zhòng diǎnr cài.
- From the picture it looks like you're working very hard.  
Not so hard. We're just planting some vegetables behind the school.
13. zhuānyè special line/field/discipline
14. jīqī (jīqī) machine

Unit 3, Vocabulary List

bǎifēn zhǐ	percent
càidī	vegetable plot
chǎnliàng	output, yield
dǎduì	(production) brigade
dàozi	rice; paddy
dì	earth, soil; land; fields
fāzhǎn	to develop, to expand, to grow
gōngshè	commune
guān X jiào Y	to call X Y
-hù	household, family
-huà	-ize
jiànshè	to construct, build; construction, reconstruction
jiāoqū	suburbs, outskirts
Jīngxīdào	(a kind of rice plant)
jīxièhuà	to mechanize
-kǒu	(counter for people)
liángshí	grain, cereals
miànjī	(surface) area
-mǔ	<u>mu</u> , a unit of area
mǔchǎn	per- <u>mu</u> yield
píngjūn	average, mean
píngyuǎn	plain, flatlands
quánguó	the whole country
rénmín	the people
shāndì	mountainous region, hilly area
shōu	to harvest
shūcài	vegetable
Sījīqīng	(a commune in Běijīng suburbs)
-tái	(counter for machines)
tèdiǎn	distinctive trait, characteristic
tuōlājī	tractor
túpiàn	picture, photograph

xiānjìn  
xínkǔ

to be advanced  
to be hard work; to be toilsome,  
to be arduous; to work hard, to  
go through hardships, to go to  
great trouble

zhōng  
zhuānjiā  
zhuānyè  
zhuānyèhuà  
zǔzhī

to plant  
specialist, expert  
special line/field/discipline  
to specialize; specialization  
to organize, to form

Unit 3, Reference Notes

1. A: Tāmen guān zhèige gōngshè      What do they call this commune? Is  
jiào shénme? Dānzishang      it written on the list?  
yǒu méiyǒu xiězhe?

B: Xiězhe ne, jiào "Sìjìqīng."      Yes, it's called Sìjìqīng.

Notes on No. 1

guān...jiào...: Guān A jiào B means "to call A B."

Guǎngdōng rén guān qípáo jiào      Cantonese call qípáo (a kind of  
"chángshān."      dress) "chángshān."

gōngshè: "commune" This is short for rénmín gōngshè, "people's commune"  
(the word rénmín is taught in exchange 6). Gōng means "public," and shè is  
an "organized body."

People's communes, of which there are now over 52,000 in China, are the administrative units of the countryside. There are three levels of commune organization: the production team, with from eleven to over one hundred households; the production brigade, with from twenty to over one thousand households; and the commune itself, with from six to seventeen brigades or from fifty-six to 275 teams. A typical commune might have a population of 22,500 people, broken down into fifteen production brigades of three hundred families each, and each brigade would in turn be composed of ten production teams of thirty families. (Of course, no actual commune would be divided up so evenly.) A typical county might be made up of thirteen communes of this size.

The people's communes were formed after a long series of changes in the organization of the countryside, beginning with the Land Reform Movement of 1950. This movement distributed the land to the peasants; the next step was to begin the coordination of their efforts in production. They did this in 1951 by forming mutual aid teams, also called work exchange teams. The peasants still owned their own land, plows, and livestock, but they pooled their manpower, tools, and other resources to get the work done.

In 1953, elementary agricultural cooperatives were organized by merging several mutual aid teams. The land, tools, and livestock became the property of the cooperative, but the profits from the land were distributed, not retained by the commune for investment. In 1956, when advanced agricultural cooperatives were established, the distribution of profits was abolished.

In 1958, the last step to communize China was taken. The people's communes were formed by the merging of several advanced agricultural cooperatives. What was formerly an advanced agricultural cooperative became a production brigade. The original plan for communization had called for completion in 1967. Since no major problems were encountered, the plan was completed nine years ahead of time.

Today, commune members still live in individual houses. All the land, buildings, shops, clinics, large machinery, electrical power stations, factories, and so on, belong to the commune. However, the planning of the production and the payment of the members, which depends on the amount of production, is done on the production team level. All the teams have their own livestock, but they take turns borrowing large machines such as planters or tractors from the commune. Production teams often specialize in one type of activity, such as crop raising, machinery repair, or animal husbandry. Production brigades handle tasks which are beyond the capacity of a team, such as irrigation or the purchasing of a tractor. Truly large projects like road construction or the establishment of a large, well-equipped hospital, must be taken on by the commune.

yǒu méiyǒu xiězhe: -Zhe is the marker of duration. Together with a verb, it describes a STATE, for example:

Mén	kāizhe.
(The door is in the state of having been opened.)	

"The door is open."

Mén	guānzhe.
(The door is in the state of having been closed.)	

"The door is closed."

Thus, xiězhe, in exchange 1, means literally "in the state of having been written."

To make a verb plus -zhe negative, use méi(you) (not bù):

Mén méi kāizhe.

The door is not open.

Mén méi guānzhe.

The door is not closed.

Dānzishang méi xiězhe.

It isn't written on the list.

To make a question, use one of the following patterns:

Mén kāizhe ma?

Mén yǒu méiyǒu kāizhe?

Mén kāizhe meiyǒu?

Is the door open?

Ne is often added onto the end of a sentence with -zhe:

Mén kāizhe ne ma?

Is the door open?

Kāizhe ne.

Yes, it's open.



Many speakers of standard Chinese do not use this -zhe; they would replace it by phrasing such as Mén kāile and Dānzishang yǒu méiyǒu xiě (or xiě le méiyǒu). These sentences are also perfectly good Chinese.

Sìjìqīng: A commune in rural Běijīng. Literally, the name means "four-seasons-green," in other words, "green all year round."

Half the population of the municipality of Běijīng lives in rural areas, in 272 people's communes. The principal crops are wheat, rice, and vegetables, including cabbage, eggplants, cucumbers, and tomatoes. There are also orchards producing apples, pears, peaches, and persimmons. About half the vegetables grown in Běijīng's communes supply the city's needs completely and half are shipped elsewhere.

2. A: Zhèige gōngshè shíwǔge dàduì-  
de chǎnliàng dōu zhème gāo  
ma? Is the output this high in all  
fifteen brigades of this commune?
- B: Chàbuduō, zài shāndì  
liǎngge dàduì, chǎnliàng  
shǎo yídiǎnr. Almost. The two brigades in the  
mountains have somewhat lower  
outputs.

### Notes on No. 2

dàduì: "(production) brigade," short for shēngchǎn dàduì.

chǎnliàng: "output, yield," literally, "production-amount."

shāndì: "mountainous region; hilly area; hilly country," literally, "mountain-land."

Āěrbā'níyà shì shāndì guójiā. Albania is a mountainous country.

Zài shān Output is somewhat lower in  
mountainous regions.

Nèige dìfang shì shān , kāi chē That's hilly country; it isn't  
bù tài fāngbiān. easy to drive there.

3. A: Běijīng jiāoqū shēngchǎn yì-  
zhǒng yǒu míngde dàozi,  
jiào shénme? There's a famous kind of rice pro-  
duced in the suburbs of Běijīng.  
What's it called?

B: Jiào Jīngxīdào. Běijīngde  
jīng, dōng-xī-nán-běide  
xī. It's called Jīngxīdào. Jīng as in  
Běijīng, xī as in dōng-xī-nán-  
běi běi.

### Notes on No. 3

jiāoqū: "suburbs, outskirts" The bound form jiāo means "suburbs," as in

in Běijīng xījiāo, "the western suburbs of Běijīng," yuǎnjiāo, "the outer suburbs," and jīnjiāo, "the close suburbs." (Qū, "area, district," will be introduced separately in Unit 5 of this module.)

Běijīng jiāoqū yígòng yǒu  
èrbǎiqīshíèr gōngshè.

Altogether, there are 272  
communes in the suburbs of  
Běijīng.

Sìjìqīng gōngshè zài Běijīngde  
jīn jiāoqū.

The commune Sìjìqīng is in the  
close suburbs of Běijīng.

dǎozi: "rice" in the paddy or after harvesting but before hulling.  
(After hulling, it is called mǐ, and when cooked it is called fàn.)

Jīngxīdào: "Capital-West Rice," a variety famous for its good taste.

Běijīngde jīng: "jīng as in Běijīng" In conversation, you identify a word or character by giving a common phrase in which it is used. The pattern for doing this is

Phrase	-de	Word	
e.g., yī èr sān sì	-de	sì	"'four' as in 'one two three four'"

This pattern can be especially useful when you tell someone your Chinese name. If you were called Chén Dǐngwén ( ), for example, you could identify the characters of your first name by saying Yídīngde dīng, wénxuéde wén, "Dīng as in yídīng ('certainly'), and wén as in wénxué ('literature')." "

dōng-xī-nán-běi: While in English we usually name the directions of the compass in the order "north, south, east, west," in Chinese they are usually named in the order

dōng xī nán běi	or	dōng nán xī běi
east west south north		east south west north

4. A: Quánguó yígòng yǒu jǐge píng-yuán? How many flatland regions are there in the whole country?

B: Miànji bǐjiāo dàde yǒu sìge, dōu shì shēngchǎn liángshide zhǔyào dìqū. There are four which are relatively large in area; all of them are major grain-producing regions.

#### Notes on No. 4

quánguó: "the whole country"

Wú Zuòrénde huà zài quánguó hěn yǒu míng.

The paintings of Wú Zuòrén are famous throughout the country.

Quánguó chǎnliàng zuì gāode dìqū shì Sìchuān.

The area of the country with the highest output is Sìchuān.

Běijīng Yāo-líng-yāo Zhōngguóde  
jiàoyu zhìliàng guóguó dìyī.

The educational quality of Běijīng's  
No. 101 Middle School is first  
in the country.

miànjī: "(surface) area" (For the second example, you need to know  
píngfāng gōnglǐ, "square kilometer.")

Zhèige gōngshède miànjī duō dà? What is the area of this commune?

Zhōngguóde miànjī shì jiǔbǎi China's area is 9.6 million square  
liùshiwàn píngfāng gōnglǐ. kilometers.

miànjī bǐjiào dàde yǒu sìge: This is a useful structure with yǒu:

Miànjī bǐjiào dàde (píngyuán)	yǒu sìge.	
(As for the ones [flatlands] with a relatively large area,	there four.) are	"There are four with a relatively large area."

Tā bú yuànyì qù Zhōngguóde yuányīn	zhǔyào liǎngge. yǒu	
(As for the reasons why he doesn't want to go to China,	there are two.) mainly	"There are mainly two reasons why he doesn't want to go to China."

Zuótiān méi lái de (rén)	yǒu duōshǎo?	
(As for those [people] who didn't come yes- terday,	there how many?) were	"How many people were there who didn't come yesterday?"

Zhōngwén shuōde nàme hǎode Měiguó rén	méiyǒu jǐge.	
(As for Americans who speak Chinese that well,	there a few.) aren't	"There aren't but a few Americans who speak Chinese that well."

liángshi: "grain, cereals," but in Chinese terminology this can also  
include other staples like beans and sweet potatoes.

5. A: Nèige shēngchǎn shūcǎide dàduì The brigade that produces vegetables  
zhǐ yǒu liùshí hù! has only sixty households!

B: Shì a, èrbǎiduōkǒu rén měi- Yes, for two hundred people, they  
niǎn mài gěi guójiā bù shǎo- sell a lot of vegetables to the  
de cài na! state every year!

Notes on No. 5

hù(r): "household, family" The original meaning of this word was "door." Now it has become the counter for households. Besides its use in exchange 5, -hù can also be followed by the noun rénjiā, "people-home," that is, "family":

Zhèige dàduì yǒu duōshao hù  
rénjiā?

How many households are there  
in this brigade?

Zài Měiguó, chàbuduō měihù dōu  
yǒu diànshì.

In American, almost every family  
has a television.

kǒu: Literally, "mouth," this is the counter for people considered as making up a family, as in

Nǐ jiā yǒu jǐkǒu rén?

How many people are there in your  
family?

mài gěi guójiā: "sell to the state" Every year, a production team must give a certain percentage (usually from five to seven percent) of its produce and cash income in taxes to the state. In addition, they must sell a quota of grain to the state, the quantity being established according to the population of the team, and the area and productivity of the land. If the team is left with additional grain after fulfilling their quota, they decide for themselves how much of it they will sell for cash to the state at a higher price and how much will be put into the team's grain reserves. The state sets quotas for grains; fruit and vegetable supply and demand are coordinated by local government authorities.

...bù shǎode cài na!: Na is not a new word for you; it is just a contraction of ne and a. You have learned that ne is the marker of absence of change. Here it has a special function: to show that the speaker is trying to convince the listener of the greatness of an amount, the great extent of a condition, or a fact which surpasses ordinary expectations. Examples:

Tāde shōurù bù shǎo ne!

His income is not small (i.e., more  
than you would suspect)!

Tā shuōle yào zuò dào hěn wǎn ne.

She said she was going to work until  
very late.

Hǎo rè'naode dìfang na!

What a lively place!

Kān tā nàme niánqīng, hái néng  
qù zuò jiàoshòu ne!

Isn't it something that someone  
as young as he can be a professor!

Yào cānguān nàme duō dìfang,  
yíge xīngqī nǎr gòu? Liǎngge  
xīngqī hái bú gòu ne!

How could one week be long enough  
to visit so many places? Two  
weeks wouldn't even be enough!

Zhème dàde rén hái kū na!

Imagine, such a grown-up person  
crying!

6. A: Xiànzài, gāo jīngjì jiànshè  
hái shì Zhōngguó rénmin zuì  
zhòngyào de gōngzuò a!

Today, engaging in economic construction is still the most important work of the Chinese people!

B: Shì, suīrán zhèixiē nián  
fāzhǎn sùdu hěn kuài, kěshì  
jīngjì hái shì wǒmen de gōng-  
zuò zhòngdiǎn.

Yes, although the pace of development has been very fast the past few years, the economy is still the main focus of our work.

# Notes on No. 6

jiànshè: "to construct, to build up; construction" This is mostly used in a special sense: to construct or build up a country. The jargon "socialist construction," "the construction of China," or "China reconstructs" conveys an attitude toward the "mission" facing the country: to build China from the ruins left by a semi-feudal, semi-colonial society into a socialist power and to create the conditions for the transition to Communism. "Socialist construction" includes the reform of the superstructure as well as the development of the national economy.

Wǒmen yào bǎ Zhōngguó jiànshè-  
chéng yíge xiàndàihuàde shè-  
huìzhūyì guójiā.

We want to build China into a  
a modern socialist nation.

rénmín: "the people" You have seen this word already in Rénmínbì, "People's currency." Distinguish between rénmín and rénmen. Rénmen (with the plural ending -men) refers to any and all people, without class implications. It has approximately the same scope as dàjiā, "everyone." Rénmín, on the other hand, refers to the broad masses and lower-level cadres, and excludes state and class enemies.

Zhōngguó rénmin xiwàng néng  
shèngguóde āndìng.

The Chinese people hope to be able  
live peaceful and settled lives.

Quánguó yígòng yǒu wǔwàn èrqiān-  
duō rénmin gōngshè.

There are over 52,000 people's  
communes in the whole country.

fāzhǎn: "to develop, to grow" In the Society module, you learned the adjectival verb fādá, "to be developed." Now you see the action verb for "to develop."

Zhèi èrshínián lái, Rìběnde  
qìchē gōngyè fāzhǎnde bǐjiào  
kuài.

Over the past twenty years, Japan's  
automobile industry has developed  
rather quickly.

Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ zài nǚlì fāzhǎn  
gōngyè.

The Chinese government is working  
hard to develop industry.

Tā yánjiū fāzhǎnzhōng guójiāde  
jīngjì qíngkuàng.

He studies the economic situation  
of developing countries.

7. A: Hē! Nímende càidī shōude bù  
shǎo a!

Wow! You've harvested quite a lot  
from your vegetable plots!

B: Jiù shì ma, měimǐ dì dòu shōu  
yíwànduǒ jīn na!

Sure, we harvested over ten thousand  
catties from each mu of land!

Notes on No. 7

càidī: "vegetable plots" or "vegetable fields" (large or small).

shōu: "to harvest"

Lǎo Wángde càidī měinián shōude  
fānqié dòu hěn duō.

Lǎo Wáng harvests a lot of  
tomatoes from his vegetable  
plots every year.

Shōubudào liángshí, zěnmē chī  
fàn ne?

If we can't harvest any grain,  
how will we eat? (rhetorical  
question said by farmers when  
working in the fields)

mǔ: A Chinese unit of area equal to 1/15 hectare. In English this is  
simply written mu (or sometimes mou).

dì: "land," "ground," or "fields"

Zhèikuài dì yǐqián shì wǒ  
fùqinde.

This piece of land used to  
belong to my father.

Tā cóng dìshang zhǎodàole nèizhī  
bǐ.

He found that pen on the ground.

Shuì dìshang ba! Lián jiàoshòu  
dōu shuì nàr ne!

Sleep on the ground! Even pro-  
fessors sleep there!

Zhème zǎo nǐmen jiù dào dīlǐ qù  
gōngzuò la!

You're going to work in the fields  
so early!

shōude bù shǎo: "harvested quite a lot" Here are some more examples  
of the pattern Verb -de Quantity:

Nǐ chīde tài shǎo.

You're eating too little.

Guānyú zhèige, wǒ zhīdaode  
bù duō.

I don't know much about this.

Tā kàn xiǎoshuō kànde bǐ  
wǒ duō.

He reads more fiction than I.

Wǒ bú shì jiào nǐ shǎo mǎi yī-  
diǎnr ma? Nǐ mǎide tài duō  
le!

Didn't I tell you not to buy very  
much? You bought too much!

8. A: Zhèige gōngshè jíxièhuà  
yǐhòu, mùchǎn tígāole duō-  
shǎo?

Since this commune was mechanized,  
how much has the yield per mu  
been increased?

B: Tígāole yíbàn duō yídiǎn,  
chàbuduō bǎifēnzhī wǔshíyī.

It was raised a little more than half,  
about fifty-one percent.

Notes on No. 8

jíxièhuà: "to mechanize; mechanization" Jíxiè means "machinery," "mechanics," or "mechanical." -Huà is the syllable which corresponds to "-ize" (make into), which you learned in the previous unit in xiàndàihuà, "to modernize."

Nóngyè jíxièhuà xiànzài shì  
nóngcūnde zhòngdiǎn gōngzuò.

Agricultural mechanization is now  
the key task in rural areas.

Nǐmen dàduìde jíxièhuà shuǐpíng  
xiāngdāng gāo a!

The level of mechanization in your  
brigade is quite high!

yíbàn duō yídiǎn: "a little more than half" [The opposite, "a little less than half," could be said as chǎyídiǎnr yíbàn, yíbàn shǎo yídiǎnr, or yíbàn bú dào yídiǎnr.]

bǎifēnzhī wǔshíyī: "fifty-one percent". Chinese does not have a separate word for "percent," expressing percentages with the same pattern used for all fractions. First, therefore, you should learn how to express fractions. In Chinese, the two parts of a fraction are stated in the reverse order from English, with the word -zhī in between. (-Zhī is a literary word with the same use as -de: possessive or modification marker.)

sānfēn      zhī      èr

(3 parts 's    2)    "two parts out of three,"  
i.e., "two thirds"

Here are a few more examples:

$\frac{1}{2}$  èrfēnzhī yī\*     $\frac{1}{3}$  sānfēnzhī yī     $\frac{1}{4}$  sìfēnzhī yī     $\frac{1}{20}$  èrshífēnzhī yī

$\frac{5}{4}$  sìfēnzhī wǔ     $\frac{5}{8}$  bāfēnzhī wǔ     $\frac{17}{19}$  shíjiǔfēnzhī shíqī

Percentages (hundredths) are expressed like this:

bǎifēn      zhī      wǔshíyī

(100 parts 's    51)    "fifty-one parts out of one hundred,"  
i.e., "fifty-one one hundredths"  
or "fifty-one percent"

\*Normally, of course, you would say yíbàn.

"One hundred percent," therefore, is bǎifēnzhī bǎi:

Tā shì bǎifēnzhī bǎide  
Měiguó rén.

He is one hundred percent American.

9. A: Nǐ jiù cānguānle "Sìjìqīng?"  
Biéde jǐge xiānjìn gōngshè  
ne? Shénme shíhou qù ya?

You've only visited Sìjìqīng? How  
about the other advanced communes?  
When are you going to them?

B: Guò jítīān jiù qù, péi jǐ-  
wèi nóngyè zhuānjiā yìqǐ  
qù.

We'll be going in a few days. We're  
going with several specialists in  
agriculture.

Notes on No. 9

biéde jǐge...: "the other few" Compare:

Nǐ jiù cānguān gōngshè ma?  
Bù cānguān biéde shénme dìfang?

You're only visiting communes?  
You're not going to visit any  
other kinds of places?

xiānjìn: "advanced" This is used to describe people, work units, or methods of a high level, worthy of emulation. Individuals may be designated as advanced workers (xiānjìn gōngzuòzhě) by their unit leaders or elected by their fellow workers, and units such as factories and communes may be designated as advanced by government authorities. To qualify as advanced, a unit must have carried out all political movements successfully, successfully put into effect each policy directive, and completely met the quota for its product under the national plan.

guò jítīān: "in a few days" (literally, "pass a few days")

Qǐng nǐ guò yíhuǐr zài dǎlai.

Please call back in a while. (In  
this case, guò yíhuǐr means děng  
yíhuǐr.)

Zài guò jǐge xīngqī, tāmen jiù  
yào shōu dàozi le.

In another few weeks, they are  
going to harvest the rice.

Bàba mǎma xiān dào le. Yòu  
guòle yíhuǐr, dìdì mèimei  
yě lái le.

Mother and father arrived first.  
Then after a while, younger brother  
and sister came too.

zhuānjiā: "specialist, expert" The ending -jiā enters into many words describing people. It has a slightly different meaning from -zhě, which you learned in unit 1. -Zhě is only added to verbs; -jiā can be added to nouns as well as verbs. -Zhě means simply "a person who..." but -jiā is used for professionals or specialists in some activity. Thus, zuòjiā is "professional writer, author," but zuòzhě is just "writer" (not specifying whether writing is the person's career).

The ending -jiā is added to subjects of study, as in zhèngzhìxuéjiā,



"political scientist," and jīngjìxuéjiā, "economist." In the PRC, some words with the ending -jiā carry elitist overtones and are sometimes replaced by other terms.

10. A: Zhèige dìqūde nóngyè shēngchǎn yǒu shénme tèdiǎn ma? Is there anything distinctive about the agricultural production of this region?
- B: Wǒmen shìzhe zǔzhīle jǐge zhuānyèhuàde gōngshè, tā-mende shēngchǎn bǐjiǎo yǒu tèdiǎn. We have organized a few specialized communes on a trial basis. Their production set-up is rather distinctive.

Notes on No. 10

yǒu shénme tèdiǎn ma?: "does...have any distinctive points?" is here translated more idiomatically as "is there anything distinctive about...?"

shìzhe zǔzhīle...: "trying-ly organized..." i.e., "organized on a trial basis"

Nǐ shìzhe nèiyang zuò xíng bu xíng. Try doing it that way and see if it works.

Zhèishuāng xié wǒ shìzhe chuān, chuānbushàng. I tried to put these shoes on, but couldn't get them on.

Do not overuse shìzhe; there are other more common ways to express English "try." Sometimes the idea of trying is implicit in the verb itself, as in

Zhèipiān wénzhāng wǒ kànle, kànbuguò. I tried to read this article, but I couldn't.

Wǒ gěile, tā bú yào. I tried to give it to him, but he didn't want it (wouldn't take it).

Sometimes, "try" can be expressed by reduplicating the verb:

Nǐ chuānchuan. Try it on.

Wǒ chuānle chuān, chuānbushàng. I tried to put it on, but couldn't get it on.

Wǒ kāile kāi, kāibukāi. I tried to open it, but couldn't get it open.

or by a reduplicated verb plus kàn:

Wǒ méi zuòguo jiǎozi, zuòzuo kàn ba. I've never made jiǎozi (dumplings), but I can try.

zǔzhī: "to organize; organization"

Zhèipiān wénzhāng zǔzhīde hěn hǎo. This article is well organized.

Wǒmen zǔzhīle yíge lǚxíngtuán, xiǎng dào Ōuzhōu qù wánwanr. We organized a tour group; we want to go on a trip to Europe.

Zhèige zǔzhī yǐjīng yǒu wǔshíwàn rén le. This organization already has 500,000 people.

zhuānyè: "special line/field/discipline; specialization" This is used in the PRC for one's "major" subject in college, or for one's professional specialization.

Wǒ zài dàxué xuéde zhuānyè shì zhèngzhīxué. My major in college was political science.

Shùxué zhuānyè zhēn méi yìsi, nǐ wèishénme hái yào xué tā? Majoring in math is really boring; why do (did) you want to take it?

Zhèige zhuānyè zài Zhōngguó hěn shǎo yǒu rén xué. Very few people study this specialization in China.

zhuānyèhuà: "specialized; specialization"

Gōngchǎngde zhuānyèhuà yuè lái yuè pǔbiàn le. The specialization of factories is becoming more and more common.

Zhuānyèhuà(de) rénmin gōngshè yǒu tāde hǎochù. Specialized communes have their advantages.

11. A: Nǐmen gōngshè yǒu zhème duō dà tuōlājī! Your commune has so many large tractors!

B: Ng, píngjūn měige dàduì èrshítái, wǒmen hái xiǎng duō mǎi jítái ne! Yes, every brigade has twenty on the average, and we want to buy a few more!

# Notes on No. 11

tuōlājī: "tractor" This word may be a sound borrowing from the English word "tractor," but it also makes good sense in Chinese, since the parts mean literally, "drag-pull-machine."

píngjūn: "average" This can be used as an adjective, an adverb, or a verb:

Zhōngguó gōnggrénde píngjūn shǒurù bù duō. The average salary of Chinese workers is not much.

Píngjūn yíge rén shíge jiǎozi zěnme gòu! How could an average of ten jiǎozi (dumplings) per person be enough!

Píngjūnqilai wǒmen měige rén  
yǒu shíkuài qián.

When you average it out, each of  
us has ten dollars.

-tái: Literally, "platform" (as you learned in zhàntái, "station platform"), this is the counter for machines. (The word for "machine," jīqì, is number 14 on this reference list.)

měige dàduì èrshítái: "twenty for each brigade" No verb is necessary here. Compare:

Yíge rén yíkuài.

One piece (e.g., of cake) per person.

měige xīngqī yíci

once every week

Wǒmen xuéxiào píngjūn wúge  
xuéshe yíge lǎoshī.

In our school, there is one teacher  
for every five students on the  
average.

hái xiǎng duō mǎi jǐtái: "still want to buy a few more" English "more" sometimes contains the meaning of "still, additionally" (hái), so the word "still" is not absolutely necessary in the English translation for 11B. Look at other examples of the common pattern hái...duō...:

Zhèige xiǎo nánháizi hái xiǎng  
duō chī yíge píngguǒ, kěshì  
tā māma bù gěi!

This little boy (still) wanted to  
have another apple, but his mother  
wouldn't give it to him!

Wǒ hái xīwàng duō xué jǐge yuè  
Zhōngwén.

I would like to study Chinese for  
another few months.

Tā hái děi duō děng jǐtiān cái  
néng zǒu.

He still has to wait another few  
days before he can leave.

12. A: Cóng túpiànshàng kàn, nǐmen  
gōngzuòde hěn xīnkǔ.

From the picture it looks like you're  
working very hard.

B: Méiyǒu shenme xīnkǔ, jiù shì  
zài xuéxiào hòubianr zhòng  
diǎnr cài.

Not so hard. We're just planting  
some vegetables behind the school.

### Notes on No. 12

túpiàn: "picture, photograph" This is usually used for photographs, as in túpiàn zhǎnlǎn, "photo exhibition" (but some people use it for any kind of illustration).

xīnkǔ: "to be arduous, tiring, hard" (literally, "pungent-bitter")

Tā báitiān zuò shì, wǎnshang  
niàn shū, tài xīnkǔ le.

It's too tiring for her, working  
during the daytime and studying  
at night.

Nǐ zhème xīnkǔ yào lèibīngde.

You're going to get sick from  
fatigue by working so hard.

zhòng: "to plant" or "to grow" things:

Zhèikuài dì zhòng shénme yě  
bù shōu.

You don't harvest anything you  
plant on this land!

Zhòng liángshí shì nóngmínde shì.

Growing-grain is the business of  
the peasants.

Zhèige shǎoshù mínzú zài shān-  
shang zhòngle bù shǎo qíguài de  
dōngxi lái chī.

This minority nationality grows  
a lot of strange things on the  
mountain to eat.

13. zhuānyè

special line/field/discipline  
(See Notes on No. 10)

14. jīqì (jīqī) (yītái)

machine

Unit 3, Review Dialogue

While walking along Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard in Běijīng, Ms. Olsen (A), an agricultural specialist from the United States, and Chén Guóqiáng (B), from the China Travel Service, stop to look at the photos and articles displayed in the building of the People's Daily. They are looking at an article about a model commune, Sìjìqīng.

- A: Zhèige dìfang shì bu shì wǒmen yào qù cānguānde? Is this one of the places we're going to visit?
- B: Shì. Guò liǎngtiān wǒmen jiù qù. Yes. We'll be going in a couple of days.
- A: Wǒ kàn, zhèige rénmin gōngshè hǎoxiàng yǒu yìdiǎnr tèbié ma, tā-mende shēngchǎn zhǔyào shì shūcǎi hé shuǐguǒ. It looks to me as if this people's commune is rather special. Their production is mainly vegetables and fruits.
- B: Nǐ shuōde yìdiǎnr yě bú cuò, zhèi jiù shì yǒu míngde Sìjìqīng Rénmín Gōngshè. You're absolutely right. This is the famous Sìjìqīng People's Commune.
- A: "Sìjìqīng"? "Sìjìqīng?"
- B: Duì le, "yìnián sìjì"de "sìjì," "qīng shān lǜ shuǐ"de "qīng". Nín zài Běijīng Fàndiàn chīde cài dānbùfen dōu shì tāmen shēngchǎnde. Yes. "Sìjì" ["Four Seasons"] as in "yìnián sìjì" ["throughout the four seasons of the year," and "qīng" ["green"] as in "qīng shān lǜ shuǐ" ["green hills and green water"]. Most of the food you eat at the Běijīng Hotel is produced by them.
- A: Òu! Oh!
- B: Tāmen gōngshè yǒu sìwànduǒ mǔ tǔdì, dānbùfen dōu shì cài dì. Their commune has over four hundred mu of land. Most of it is vegetable plots.
- A: Càidìde miànjī zhàn bǎifēnzhī duōshǎo? Zhèr yǒu méiyǒu xiězhe? What percentage do the vegetable plots take up? Is it written here?
- B: Zhèr xiězhe ne. Càidì zhàn liǎngwàn liǎngqiān mǔ, yǐbàn duō yìdiǎnr. Yes, it is. The vegetable plots take up 22,000 mu, a little more than half.
- A: Nàme, hái yǒu yíwàn bāqiān mǔ ne? Zhòngde dōu shì shénme? And what about the other 18,000 mu? What do they grow there?
- B: Tāmen shuō yòng yíwàn mǔ dì zhòng liángshí. They say they use 10,000 mu to plant grain.

- A: Ng. Zhǔyào shēngchǎn shénme liángshí? What grain do they mainly produce?
- B: Dàozǐ, yǒu míngde Jīngxīdào! Nín lái zhèr yǐhòu, tiāntiān chī! Rice, the famous Capital-West rice. You've been eating it every day since you came here.
- A: Āhà! Yuánlái "Jīngxīdào" shì Sì-jìqīng shēngchǎnde. Tīngshuō chǎn-liàng hěn gāo ou! Mùchǎn yǒu yì-qiānduō jīn ba? Ah! So Sìjìqīng produces Capital-West rice. I hear that the yield is very high! The per-mu yield is over one thousand catties, isn't it?
- B: Yǒu, mùchǎn zǒng zài yìqiān yì-qiān yībǎi jīn zuǒyòu. Yes. The per-mu yield is always approximately 1,100 catties.
- A: Ng, zhēnde bú cuò. Nà língwài bāqiān mǔ dōu shì shuǐguǒ? Mm, that's really quite good. So then are the remaining 8,000 mu all fruits?
- B: Shì. Tāmen gōngshède shuǐguǒ chǎnliàng yě hěn gāo. Yes. Their commune has a very high fruit yield, too.
- A: Wǒ hái yǒu yíge wèntí, quán gōngshè yǒu duōshǎo rénǎu, yǒu duōshǎo láodònglǐ? I have one more question. What's the population of the whole commune, and how many laborers are there?
- B: Yǒu yíwàn líng bābǎiduō hù, sì-wàn sānqiānduō kǒu rén, liǎngwàn liǎngqiānduō láodònglǐ, píngjūn měige láodònglǐ dēi guǎn liǎngmǔ dì na! There are 10,800 households, over 43,000 people, and over 22,000 laborers. On the average, every laborer has to take care of two mu of land!
- A: Yíge rén guǎn liǎngmǔ dì hěn xīnkǔ ma? Is it very hard work for one person to take care of two mu?
- B: Zhōng cái, shǒu cái, xiānzài hái méi bànfa kào jīqì, quán dēi kào shǒu, zěnmē bù xīnkǔ ne? At present they still don't have the means to adopt machines. Planting and harvesting have to be done entirely by hand. It's hard work all right.
- A: Nǐ kàn, túpiànshàng yǒu bù shǎo tuōlājī, tāmende jīxiēhuà shuǐpíng xiāngdāng gāo ma. But look, in these pictures there are lots of tractors. Their level of mechanization is pretty high!
- B: Zhèige gōngshè xiāngdāng xiānjìn, yǒu yībǎi bāshí liàng qìchē, dà xiǎo tuōlājī sānbǎi qīshiduō tǎi, kěshì zhèixiē qìchē zhǔyàode gōng-zuò shì bǎ cái sòng dào chénglǐ qu. This commune is quite advanced. They have 180 automobiles, and over 370 tractors. But the main job of these vehicles is to take the vegetables into the city.
- A: Ng, wǒ dǒng le, wǒ juéde zhèige gōngshè hěn yǒu tèdiǎn, nǐ zài duō tāntan, hǎo bu hǎo? Mm, I see. This seems to be a very distinctive commune. Could you tell me more about it?

- B: Hǎo a! Zhèige gōngshède měige shēngchǎn dǎduì dōu yǒu zìjǐde shēngchǎn zhōngdiǎn—shēngchǎn dǎduì nǐ dǒng bu dǒng?
- A: Wǒ zhīdao shēngchǎn dǎduì, shēngchǎnduì, shenmede.
- B: Nà hǎo, wǒmen guān tāmen zhèizhōng zǔzhǐ shēngchǎnde bànfǎ jiào zhuānyèhuà shēngchǎn.
- A: À! Měige shēngchǎn dǎduì dōu yǒu zìjǐde zhuānyè. Hǎojǐle. Zhèiduì fāzhǎn shēngchǎn yíding yǒu hěn dàde hǎochu.
- B: Shì ma! Shēngchǎn fāzhǎnle, rénminde shēnghuó shuǐpíng cái néng tígāo ma!
- A: Nàme, zhèizhōng zhuānyèhuà shēngchǎn zài quánguó shǐ bu shǐ hěn pǔbiàn ne?
- B: Bú shǐ, quánguó dàbùfen gōngshè zhǔyào hái shì shēngchǎn liángshí, zài dà chéngshìde jìn jiāoqū cái yǒu xiàng Sījìqīng zhèiyàngde gōngshè.
- A: Yǒu jīhuì, wǒ hái xiǎng qù cānguān yīliǎngge pǔtōngde gōngshè. Hái yǒu píngyuán hé shāndìde nóngyè shēngchǎn qíngkuàng dàgāi yě yǒu hěn duō bù tóng, rúguǒ yǒu jīhuì, wǒ hěn xiǎng qù liǎojiě yíxià tāmende qūbié.
- B: Hǎode. Zuìjìn jǐnián Zhōngguó nóngyè jiànshè fāzhǎnde hěn kuài. Nín shì zhuānjiā, nínde yíjian duì wǒmende gōngsuǒ yíding yǒu hěn dàde bāngzhù, wǒ yíding duō gěi nín ānpai jǐge dìfang.
- A: Bú bì kèqì, nín ānpaihǎole, qǐng zǎo yidiǎnr gàosu wǒ.
- Every production brigade of the commune has its own production priority—do you understand "production brigade?"
- I know about productions brigades, production teams, and so forth.
- Okay, well we call this method of organizing production of theirs specialized production.
- Ah! Each production brigade has its own specialty. Great. This must be of great help in expanding production.
- Sure! The people's standard of living can only be raised when production expands.
- So is this kind of specialized production very common throughout the whole country?
- No, most of the communes in the country still mainly produce grain. It's only in the close suburbs of big cities that one finds communes like Sījìqīng.
- If I get the chance, I'd also like to visit one or two ordinary communes. Also, farming production is probably very different on the plains from that in mountainous regions. If it's possible, I'd like very much to go look into the differences.
- All right. In the past few years, China's agricultural construction has been moving rapidly ahead. As an expert, your opinions can help us a great deal in our work. I'll be sure to arrange a few more visits for you.
- You needn't be polite. Please let me know soon after you've made the arrangements.

Unit 3, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American is looking over the selection in front of a vegetable stall in Dōngdān market in Běijīng and strikes up a conversation with the salesperson.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

qīngjiāo	green pepper
běndì	this locality
chū	to produce
jǔ ge lìzi	to give an example
sì jì	four seasons
yínián sìjì	in all four seasons of the year, all year round
chūnji	spring season
qiūji	fall season
sì jì cháng lǜ	green all year round
zǒng miànjí	total area

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Where are green peppers grown?



2. What is the main product of most people's communes?
3. How does the salesperson explain the components of the word Sìjìqīng?
4. How much of Sìjìqīng's total area is planted to vegetables?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

### Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American who is examining several varieties of rice in the Běijīng Agricultural Exhibition Center talks with a worker.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

pǐnzhǒng	variety
Qiānjīndào	Thousand-Catty Rice
míngcí	term, expression
Cháng Jiāng	the Yangtze River
Jiāngnán	the area south of the lower reaches of the Cháng Jiāng (Yangtze River)
nóngyèqū	farm region
àn	shore, bank, coast
píng	to be flat, to be level
Huáng Hé	the Yellow River

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is the chief characteristic of Capital-West Rice?

2. How are conditions in the Jiāngnán region suitable for the development of agriculture?
3. How does the yield of Thousand-Catty Rice compare with the average yield for grains?
4. Describe the production brigade in Shānxī that the American heard about.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

#### Exercise 4

This conversation takes place during a visit by an American farm owner to the apple orchard of Nánkǒu Farm in Běijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

nóngchǎng	farm
nóngmín	peasant
gōngren	worker
yīnián bǐ yīnián duō	more and more every year
píngjūnshù	an average number, a mean
xiànjīn	cash
cúnguǎn	savings
dàibǐǎotuán	delegation

#### Questions for Exercise 4

1. What is the first question the American asks the worker?
2. Who runs Nánkǒu Farm?
3. What are the differences between peasants and agricultural workers?
4. How has the income of peasants changed? What is the major cause of the change?
5. What is the American's comment about the success of China's efforts to modernize agriculture?

6. (Extra) Pretend that you are going to visit a farm around Běijīng.  
Make a list of questions you would like to ask the workers.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

This dialogue takes place in front of a vegetable stall in Dōngdān market in Běijīng. An American customer (A) is looking over the selection. Here he talks with the salesperson.

- A: Ài, zhèige qīngjiāo hǎo dà a! Yě hěn xīnxiān, shì běndì chūde ba?      Wow! These green peppers are so big! They're very fresh, too. They must be local produce, aren't they?
- B: Shì cóng jiāoqū lái de.      They come from the suburbs.
- A: Běijīng jiāoqūde rénmin gōngshè dōu zhòng shūcài ma?      Do all the people's communes in the suburbs of Běijīng grow vegetables?
- B: Xiànzài de rénmin gōngshè zhǔyào hái shì zhòng liángshi, jiāoqūde gōngshè yǒu xiē dāduì zhòng shūcài, dāngrán yě yǒu zhuānyèhuàde gōngshè.      These days most people's communes still mainly produce grain. In communes in the suburbs, some brigades grow vegetables, and, of course, there are also specialized communes.
- A: Zhuānyèhuà shì shénme yìsi?      What does specialized mean?
- B: Zěnmē shuō ne? Wǒ shìzhe jǐ ge lǐzi ba.      How should I explain it? I'll try and give you an example.
- A: Ng, nǐ shuōshuo kan.      Mm, go ahead.
- B: Bǐfāng shuō Sìjìqīng zhèige gōngshè.      For instance, the commune Sìjìqīng.
- A: "Sìjìqīng" shì shénme yìsi?      What does "Sìjìqīng" mean?
- B: Ng, "yī èr sān sì" de "sì," "chūnjì, qiūjì" de "jì," "qīng" jiù shì "lǜ" de yìsi.      Sì ["four"] as in yī èr sān sì ["one two three four"], jì ["season"] as in chūnjì, qiūjì ["spring season, fall season"]. Qīng means "green."
- A: À! Nà shì sì jì cháng lǜde yìsi.      Ah! So it means "green all year round."
- B: Duì le, jiù shì yīnwèi nàige gōngshè yīnián sìjì dōu shì lǜde, wǒmen cái guān ta jiào Sìjìqīng. Nà shì ge xiānjīnde gōngshè. Tāmen jiù zhòng cài!      Right. It's precisely because the commune is green all year round that we call it Sìjìqīng. It's an advanced commune. They grow only vegetables.
- A: Jiù zhòng cài?! À! Duì le, duì le, suǒyǐ guān zhèige gōngshè jiào zhuānyèhuà gōngshè.      Only vegetables? Oh! Of course. That's why they call it a specialized commune.
- B: Òu, wǒ shuōde "jiù zhòng cài" bú shì shuō bǎifēnzhī bǎi a! Jiù shì      Oh, when I said "only vegetables," I didn't mean one hundred percent! I

shuō, cǎidide miǎnji hěn dà, zhān  
gōngshè zǒng miǎnji de bǎifēnzhī  
qī-bāshí!

mean that the area of their vegetable  
plots is very large. They make up  
seventy or eighty percent of the  
commune's total area!

A: Suǒyǐ zhèige xiānjīn gōngshè  
zhǔyàode shēngchǎn shì shūcài!

So the main product of this  
commune is vegetables!

B: Duì le, yìdiǎnr dōu bú cuò!  
Zhèige dà qīngjiǎo jiù shì cóng  
nàr lái de. Duō mǎi jǐge ba!

Right, absolutely correct. These  
big green peppers are from there.  
Buy a bunch of them!

A: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yìjīn.

Okay, I'll take one catty.

### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

In the Běijīng Agricultural Exhibition Center, an American (A) is exam-  
ining several varieties of rice. He talks with a worker from the Center (B).

A: Nímende dàozi pǐnzhǒng hěn duō  
ma!

You have so many varieties of rice!

B: Pǐnzhǒng shì bù shǎo, chǎnliàng  
bǐjiào gāode shì zhèi shíjǐzhǒng.

Yes, there are a lot of varieties.  
The ones with the highest yields are  
these ten or so here.

A: Tāmende chǎnliàng zài zhèr yǒu  
méiyǒu xiězhe?

Are their yields written down here?

B: Xiězhe ne! Nín xiànzài kàndaode  
shì Jīngxīdào, mǔchǎn yìqiān yībǎi  
jīn zuǒyòu.

Yes. What you're looking at now is  
Capital-West Rice. It has a per-mu  
yield of approximately 1,100 catties.

A: Ō, zhè jiù shì Qiānjīndào de  
yǐzhǒng le.

Oh, this is one kind of Thousand-  
Catty Rice.

B: Ng. Jīngxīdào de tèdiǎn jiù shì  
hǎo chī. "Qiānjīndào" zhèige míng-  
cí zuì zǎo shì zài Jiāngnán yòng,  
xiànzài Jiāngnán dàozi chǎnliàng  
hái shì bǐjiào gāo yíxiē.

Mm. Capital-West Rice is distin-  
guished for being good to eat. The  
term Thousand-Catty Rice was first  
used in Jiāngnán [the area south of  
the lower reaches of the Yangtze River].  
Today the yield of rice in that area  
is still comparatively high.

A: Duì, Jiāngnán duōbàn shì píng-  
yuán, méiyǒu shénme shāndì, shuǐ  
yòu fāngbiān, nóngyè shēngchǎn  
fāzhǎnqilai bǐjiào yǒu tiáojiàn.

Of course. Jiāngnán is mostly flat-  
lands. There are hardly any hills.  
Water is convenient, too. The condi-  
tions are better for the development  
of agriculture.

B: Jiù shì ma! Suǒyǐ Jiāngnán yìzhī  
shì wǒ guó zhōngyàode nóngyèqū.

Exactly! That's why Jiāngnán has  
always been an important agricultural  
region of our country.

- A: Búguò, wǒ xiǎng xiānzài Huáng Hé liǎng àn de nóngyè shēngchǎn qíngkuàng yě bú cuò le. Tīngshuō, xiānzài liǎngshì měimǔ píngjūn chǎnliàng dōu zài sì-wǔbǎijīn zuǒyòu le.
- B: Chābuduō shì zhèiyang. Wǒ xiǎng zài guò jǐnián qíngkuàng huì gèng hǎo yíxiē.
- A: Shíduōnián qián wǒ tīngshuōguo Shānxī yíge shēngchǎn dàduì nàr chābuduō quán shì shāndì, méiyǒu jǐmǔ dī shì píngde, kěshì tāmen měinián yě mài gěi guójiā bù shǎo de liǎngshì ne!
- B: Xiānzài, zhèiyangde dàduì, gōngshè bù shǎo le. Cháng Jiāng, Jiāngnán, Huáng Hé shàng xià nǎr dōu yǒu a!
- A: Ng, bú cuò bú cuò, Zhōngguóde nóngyè dà yǒu xīwàng!
- But I think that now agricultural production is quite good on both sides of the Yellow River. I hear that the average per-mu yield of grain is now around four or five hundred catties.
- That's about the way it is. And I think that in another few years the situation will be even better.
- Ten or so years ago I heard about a production brigade in Shānxī that was almost all on hilly land. There were only a few mu of flat land, but they still sold a lot of grain to the state every year!
- These days, there are a lot of brigades and communes like that. They're everywhere—the Yangtze River, Jiāngnán, and the Yellow River area.
- Mm, great, great. China's agriculture has a great future!

#### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

An American farm owner (A) is visiting Běijīng's Nánkǒu Farm. In the apple orchard, he talks with a responsible person from the farm (C).

- C: Wǒmen de píngguǒ zěnmeyàng? Hái keyi chī ba?
- A: Ng, zhēn bú cuò, hěn tián, hěn hǎo chī.
- C: Lái, zài chī yíge!
- A: Ò, bù néng zài chī le, wǒmen jiù liáoliáo tiānr ba!
- C: Hǎo a! Nǐ xiǎng liáo shenme?
- A: Nǐmen nóngchǎngde zǔzhī hé rénmin gōngshè yǒu hěn dàde qūbié ma?
- C: Yǒu. Nóngchǎng shì guójiā bànde. Zài nóngchǎng gōngzuòde rén bú shì pǔtōngde nóngmín, shì nóngyè gōngren.
- How are our apples? Not too bad, are they?
- Mm, they're really good. Very sweet. Delicious.
- Here, have another!
- Oh, I can't eat any more. Let's just chat!
- Sure! What would you like to talk about?
- Is there a big difference between the organization of your farm and that of a commune?
- Yes. The farm is run by the state. The people who work on the farm aren't ordinary peasants, they're agricultural workers.

- A: Ò. Nàme nóngyè gōngren shì ná zhèngfǔ gōngsīde. Tāmen hé nóngmín hái yǒu shénme bù yíyàngde meiyǒu?
- C: Méiyǒu shénme. Tāmende gōngzuò shì yíyàngde, dōu shì gāo nóngyè shēngchǎn.
- A: Nóngyè gōngrende shōurù bǐ nóngmín duō ba?
- C: Bù yíding. Xiànzài yǒu zìyóu shìchǎng, yǐbānde nóngmínde shōurù dōu bǐ yǐqián duōduō le.
- B: Shì ma?
- A: Lǐ wǒmen nóngchǎng bù yuǎnde dìfangr yǒu yíge gōngshè, yǐqián, jīxièhuà shuǐpíng yě bù gāo, dàjiǎ xīnxīnkùkù gōngzuòle yínián, gōngshè shōurù bù duō, jiǎlǐ fēnde yě bù duō, shēnghuó zhēn bù róngyì. Kěshì xiànzài yǒule zìyóu shìchǎng tāmende qíngkuàng hǎoduō le, chūle zhòng liángshì yǐwài, tāmen yě yǒule shūcài, shuǐguǒ, shénmede, shōurù yínián bǐ yínián duō a!
- A: Nàme xiànzài píngjūn měige láodònglǐ yínián kéyǐ yǒu duōshǎo xiànjīn shōurù?
- C: Píngjūnshù wǒ bú tài zhīdao. Wǒ rènshi yǐjiā rén, jiǎlǐ yǒu dàren xiǎoháizi qī-bākǒu, yǒu sìge bàn láodònglǐ. Cóngqián niánnián měiyǒu shénme xiànjīn shōurù.
- A: Zěnméi huì méiyǒu xiànjīn shōurù ne?
- C: Yínián jiù néng fēn diǎnr liángshì, nǎr hái yǒu shénme xiànjīn a!
- A: Xiànzài ne?
- Oh, so agricultural workers are on government salary. Are they different in any other ways from peasants?
- Not really. Their work is the same. They're both in agricultural production.
- Agricultural workers have higher incomes than peasants, don't they?
- Not necessarily. Now, with free markets, most peasants have a much higher income than before.
- Is that so?
- Not far from our farm there's a commune. In the past, their level of mechanization wasn't high. After everybody had toiled for a whole year, the commune didn't have much income, so each family's allotment wasn't much either. Life was really hard. But now, with free markets, their situation is much better. Besides growing grain, they now also have vegetables, fruits, and so on. Their income is more and more every year.
- So how much cash income can a laborer earn per year?
- I don't really know the average figure. I know one family with seven or eight adults and children, and four and a half laborers. It used to be that every year they didn't have any cash income.
- How could it be that they didn't have any cash income?
- In one year they could only get their little allotment of grain. How could they get any cash?
- How about now?

C: Qùnián tāmen jiǎ fēnle bā-jiǔbǎi-kuài qián, hái yǒu yíge hái zi shàngle dàxué. Nǐ kàn zěnmeyàng a?

Last year their allotment was eight or nine hundred dollars, and one of their children started college. What do you think of that?

A: Ng, shì hǎodeduō le, kěshì wèi-shenme gǎibiàn zhème dà ne?

Mm, that is much better. But why has the change been so great?

C: Zhèi jiù shì xiànzài zhèngfǔde jīngjì zhèngcè hǎo a! Jīngjì zhèngcè gǎibiànle, nóngcūnde shēnghuó jiù hǎo la! Xiànzài, nèige gōngshè yǒu yíbàn duō yídiǎnrde hù zài yínhánglǐ yǒu cúunkuǎn. Nǐ kàn, nà bú shì hǎodeduō le ma?

That's because now the economic policy of the government is good. Since the economic policy changed, life in rural areas has been good. In that commune now a little over half of the households have bank savings. See, isn't that much better?

A: Nín shuō xiàng nèige gōngshè nèiyangde qíngqíng zài quán guó shì bu shì hěn pǔbiàn ne?

Would you say that that commune's situation is very common throughout the country?

C: Hěn pǔbiàn....Nǐmen zhèige nóng-yè zhuānjiǎ dàibiǎotuán zǒule nàme duō dìfang, kànle nàme duō nóngchǎng, gōngshè, nín juéde zěnmeyàng ne?

Yes, it's very common....Now that your delegation of agricultural specialists has been to so many places and seen so many farms and communes, what are your opinions?

A: Wǒmen xiǎng zhèijīnián Zhōngguó nóngyède xiàndàihuà shì gǎode bú cuò.

We think that in the past few years, the modernization of China's agriculture has come along very well.

B: Shì ma! Wǒ gāngcái shuōde nèige gōngshè yě mǎile bù shǎo tuōlājī le. Tīngshuō xiànzài měige dàduì shíwútái, tāmen shuō tāmen hái xiǎng duō mǎi jítái na!

You bet! That commune that I just mentioned has bought a lot of tractors. I hear that each brigade now has fifteen tractors, and they want to buy even more!

A: Hǎo a! Hǎo a!

Great, great!

C: Duì le, wǒmen nóngchǎng dà ménkǒu yǒu hǎo duō túpiàn, lǐbian yě yǒu nèige gōngshède, wǒ dài nǐmen kànkàn qu!

Oh--at the front gate of our farm, there are a lot of pictures, including some of that commune. I'll take you to see them!

A: Hǎo! Zǒu!

Okay! Let's go!



Unit 4, Reference List

1. A: Wànlǐ Chángchéng zhēn yǒu  
yíwàn lǐ cháng ma? Is the Great Wall of Ten Thousand Li  
really ten thousand li long?  
B: Chángchéng jīngguòle hǎojǐge  
shěng, yígòng yǒu yíwàn  
èrqīan lǐ cháng. The Great Wall goes through many  
provinces and is altogether  
twelve thousand li long.
2. A: Tīngshuō Wànlǐ Chángchéng  
xiūguo hǎojǐcǐ le. I've heard that the Great Wall  
has been repaired a great many  
times.  
B: Shì, cóng Qíncháo dào  
xiànzài yízhí zài xiū. Yes, from the Qín Dynasty up until  
now, there have been repairs all  
along.
3. A: Bādǎlǐngshàngde Chángchéng  
hǎoxiàng bú shì Qíncháo  
jiànzhùde. It seems to me that the Great Wall at  
Bādǎlǐng wasn't built during the  
Qín Dynasty.  
B: Ng, nǐ shuōde duì, shì Míng-  
cháo chóngxīn jiànzhùde. Mm, you're right. It was rebuilt  
from scratch during the Míng Dynasty.
4. A: Zài lìshǐshàng yǒu zhème duō  
cǐ yòng Běijīng zuò shǒudū. Throughout history Běijīng has been  
used as a capital so many times.  
B: Nà shì yīnwèi dìxíng hǎo. That's because the terrain is good.
5. A: Zhèizhǒng dìxíng bǐjiǎo  
róngyì fángbèi běifāng  
láiide qīnlüè. This kind of terrain makes it easier  
to guard against invasion from  
the north.
6. A: Nǐmen yóulǎn jīhuàlǐ yǒu  
méiyǒu Shísānlǐng? Does your sightseeing plan include  
the Thirteen Tombs?  
B: Wǒ zhīdao nǐmen jiànzhù  
gōngsuǒzhě duì Shísānlǐngde  
dìxià gōngdiàn hěn yǒu xìng-  
qu, wǒmen hòutiān qù. I know that all of you in architecture  
and structural engineering are very  
interested in the underground pal-  
aces at the Thirteen Tombs. We'll  
go the day after tomorrow.

7. A: Chùle gǔdài Zhōngguó jiànzhù yìshù yìwài, nimen hái xiǎng qù kàn shénme? What would you like to go see in addition to ancient Chinese architectural art?
- B: Tīngshuō yǒu jǐge jiàotáng yě kāi mén le. Wǒmen xiǎng qù kànkàn. I've heard that there are also some churches which have opened. We would like to go see them.
8. A: Wǒ yào dào Tiān'ānmén qù kànkàn. Zuǒ jǐlǚ gōnggòng qìchē hǎo? I want to go see the Gate of Heavenly Peace. What bus should I take?
- B: Xīngqītiān qìchē kě jǐ le. Nǐ zuì hǎo zǒuzhe qù. It's Sunday and buses are really crowded. It would be best to walk.
9. A: Wǒ hěn xīnshǎng nimen jiěfàng yǐhòu gāide Shí Dà Jiànzhù. I really admire the Ten Great Structures you've built since liberation.
- B: Nín tài kèqì le. You're too polite.\*
10. A: Wǒmen yǐjīng juédìng chīle fàn yǐhòu qù mǎi dōngxī. We've already decided that after we eat we're going shopping.
- B: Hǎo. Cóng zhèr chuānguò guǎngchǎng jiù yǒu shāng-diàn le. Okay, from here cross through the square and there are some stores.
11. A: Gùgōng yìtiān kàndewán kànbu wán? Can you see all of the Imperial Palace in one day?!
- B: Yìtiān nǎr kàndewán! How could you see it all in one day?
12. A: Shéi qùguo Zhōngguó, shéi jiù huì xiǎngzhe ta. Whoever goes to China will always think of it.
13. chádài dynasty
14. The Major Chinese Dynasties

Qīng	1644-1911
Míng	1368-1644
Yuán	1271-1368
Jīn	1115-1234
Lǐáo	916-1125
Sòng	960-1297
Táng	618-907

Suí	581-618
Hàn	206 B.C.-A.D. 220
Qín	221 B.C.-207 B.C.
Zhōu	c. 11th century-256 B.C.
Shāng	c. 16th-11th century B.C.
Xià	c. 21st-16th century B.C.

---

\*He really is.

Unit 4, Vocabulary List

Bādǎilǐng (Bādǎilǐng)	(mountain northwest of Běijīng, site of a famous section of the Great Wall)
-cháo	dynasty (bound form)
chǎodài	dynasty
chóngxīn	again, anew, afresh
chuānguò	to pass, to cross
dìxíng	topography, terrain
fángbèi	to take precautions against
gài	to build (buildings); to cover
gōngdiàn	palace
gōngzuòzhě	worker
guāngchǎng	(public) square
gǔdài	ancient times, antiquity
Gùgōng	Former Imperial Palace
jǐ	to be crowded
jiànzhù (-zhù, -zhu)	to build, to construct; structure
jiàotáng	church, cathedral
juéding	to decide
kě	indeed, certainly
-lǐ	<u>li</u> , a unit of length (1/2 km.)
Míngcháo	(name of a dynasty, 1368-1644)
Ōuzhōu	Europe
Qiánmén	(a gate in Běijīng)
Qíncháo	(name of a dynasty, 221-207 B.C.)
qīnlüè	to invade; aggression
shěng	province
Shísānlíng	the Thirteen Tombs (Míng Tombs)
shǒudū	capital
Tiān'ānmén	the Gate of Heavenly Peace
Tiān Tán	the Temple of Heaven
Wànǐ Chángchéng	the Great Wall of Ten Thousand <u>Li</u>
xīnshǎng	to appreciate/enjoy/admire
xiū	to build, to construct (roads, reservoirs, etc.); to repair; to trim, prune
Yíhéyuán (Yǐ-)	the Summer Palace (in Běijīng)
yìshu	art
yóulǎn	to sightsee, to tour, to visit

Unit 4, Reference Notes

1. A: Wànlǐ Chángchéng zhēn yǒu  
yíwàn lǐ cháng ma? Is the Great Wall of Ten Thousand li  
really ten thousand li long?
- B: Chángchéng jīngguòle hǎojǐge  
shěng, yígòng yǒu yíwàn The Great Wall goes through many  
èrqiān lǐ cháng. provinces and is altogether  
twelve thousand li long.

Notes on No. 1

lǐ: A Chinese unit of length, equal to one-half kilometer. lǐ is often used to measure the noun lù ("road," but here meaning simply "walking or riding distance"):

Cóng nǐ jiā dào xuéxiào yǒu      How many li is it from your house  
jǐlǐ lù?      to the school?

The unit of distance lǐ is often used in rural areas, but rarely in the city.

Wànlǐ Chángchéng: You learned Chángchéng, "the Great Wall," in the Meeting module. The descriptive term Wànlǐ Chángchéng comes from the fact that the wall is over twelve thousand li in total length (approximately 6,700 kilometers).

yǒu yíwàn lǐ cháng: "is ten thousand li long" Use the verb yǒu (not shì) in sentences telling or asking length, height, area, time, age, etc. In such sentences, yǒu has the special meaning "to attain, to come up to (a certain level)."

Cóng zhèr dào	:		"How far is it from here to the
huǒchēzhàn	:	yǒu duō yuǎn?	train station?"
Chābudoō	:	yǒu yílǐ lù.	"It's about one <u>li</u> ."
Nǐde hái'izi	:	yǒu duō dà?	"How old is your child?"
Tā	:	yǒu sānsuǐ duō.	"He is over three years old."
Nǐ	:	yǒu duō gāo?	"How tall are you?"
Wǒ	:	yǒu yímǐ bā.	"I'm one meter eighty (cm)."
Shànghǎide	:	zhǐ liǎngge yuè.	"Winter in Shànghǎi is only
dōngtiān	:	yǒu	two months (long)."

The negative of such sentences uses méiyǒu:

- A: Dào huǒchēzhàn zhēn yǒu      Is it really five li to the train  
wǔlǐ lù ma?      station?
- B: Méiyǒu wǔlǐ, hěn jìn.      No, it isn't. It's very close.
- Tā méiyǒu wǔshisuǐ, tā cái      He isn't (as old as) fifty years old;  
sìshíjǐ.      he's only forty-something.

jīngguòle hǎojǐge shěng: "goes through many provinces" This sentence illustrates well that completion -le is completely different from English past tense. Even with completion -le, the verb still means "goes through," not "went through." The completion of an event in the past can result in a present state (for example, the Great Wall was built in the past and is still standing), and so -le must sometimes be translated into English with the present tense. Other examples:

Wǒ xiànzài dǒngle tā wèishénme  
méi gēn tā jiéhūn.

Now I understand why he didn't marry her.

Wǒ dàile yǎnjìng, nǐ dōu bù  
rènshí wǒ le, shì ma?

You don't recognize me with glasses on, eh? (I am wearing glasses.)

Zhèiběn shū jièshàole Měiguóde  
zhèngzhì qíngkuàng.

This book introduces the American political situation.

shěng: "province" Shěng takes the counter -ge, or is sometimes used without a counter.

Zhōngguó yígòng yǒu èrshíèrge  
shěng.

China has twenty-two provinces altogether.

2. A: Tīngshuō Wànlǐ Chángchéng  
xiūguo hǎojǐcì le.

I've heard that the Great Wall has been repaired a great many times.

B: Shì, cóng Qíncháo dào  
xiànzài yǐzhí zài xiū.

Yes, from the Qin Dynasty up until now, there have been repairs all along.

### Notes on No. 2

xiū: "to repair" roads, structures, cars, radios, shoes, etc. Also, "to trim" hair, fingernails, or "to prune" trees, shrubbery, etc. Also, "to build, to construct" reservoirs, railroads, roads, irrigation ditches, etc.

xiūguo hǎo jǐcì le: "has been repaired a great many times" The -le at the end of the sentence adds on the meaning "so far." Here are other examples of the pattern . . . -guo . . . -le:

Zhèige diànyǐng tā kànguo liǎng-  
cì le, hái bù zhīdào zěnmē huī  
shì.

He has seen this movie twice, and he still doesn't know what it's all about.

Tā kǎoguo liǎngcì le, dōu bù  
xíng.

He has taken the exam twice, but didn't make it either time.

Qíncháo: "the Qin Dynasty" (221-207 B.C.)

yízhí zài xiū: Literally, "all-along in-process-of repair," i.e., "it has been being repaired all along."

3. A: Bādǎlǐngshàngde Chángchéng  
hǎoxiàng bú shì Qíncháo  
jiànzhùde.

It seems to me that [the section of] the Great Wall at Bādǎlǐng wasn't built during the Qín Dynasty.

B: Ng, nǐ shuōde duì, shì Míng-  
cháo chóngxīn jiànzhùde.

Mm, you're right. It was rebuilt from scratch during the Míng Dynasty.

Notes on No. 3

Bādǎlǐng: A mountain seventy-five kilometers northwest of Běijīng, over which passes a section of the Great Wall dating from the Míng Dynasty (1368-1644). This is the usual spot to which tourists are taken to see the Great Wall. (Some people pronounce this with different tones: Bádǎlǐng.)

hǎoxiàng: "to seem," but here meaning "it seems to me," as in

Wǒ hǎoxiàng zài nǎr jiànguò  
zhèige rén.

It seems to me I've seen this man somewhere before.

Nǐ hǎoxiàng gāosūguo wǒ zhèi-  
jiàn shì.

It seems to me you've told me this before.

jiànzhù: As a verb, "to build, to construct":

Zhèige dàlóu shì něinián  
jiànzhùde?

When was this building constructed?

As a noun, "a structure" or "architecture":

Zhèi shì Qíncháo de jiànzhù.

This is a structure from the Qín Dynasty.

Tā shì xué jiànzhùde.

He studied architecture.

chóngxīn: "again, afresh, anew"

Zhèixiē pánziwǎn xǐde bù gānjīng,  
qǐng nǐ chóngxīn xǐ yíci.

These dishes were not washed clean; please wash them again.

Chóngxīn is often followed by zài, "again":

Zuòde bù hǎode huà, chóngxīn zài  
zuò.

If (we) don't do it well, we'll do it all over again.

4. A: Zài lìshǐshàng yǒu zhème duō  
cǐ yòng Běijīng zuò shǒudū. Throughout history Běijīng has been  
used as a capital so many times.
- B: Nà shí yīnwèi dìxíng hǎo. That's because the terrain is good.

Notes on No. 4

zài lìshǐshàng: "in history, down through history" Chinese often uses -shang, "on," where English would use "in," especially for the meaning "in such-and-such a field or area": zài jīngjìshàng, "in economy, economically"; zài xuéxíshàng, "in (one's) studies"; zài shēngchǎnshàng, "in production"; and, of course, bàozhǐshàng, "in the newspaper," etc.

yòng...zuò...: "to use...as..."

Tā yòng tāmen jiāde kètīng  
zuò bàngōngshì. He uses their living room as  
an office.

5. A: Zhèizhǒng dìxíng bǐjiào  
róngyì fángbèi běifāng  
láide qīnlüè. This kind of terrain makes it easier  
to guard against invasion from  
the north.

Notes on No. 5

qīnlüè: As a verb, "to invade":

Sūlián wèishénme qīnlüè Āfùhàn? Why did the Soviet Union invade  
Afghanistan?

As a noun, "invasion" or "aggression":

Wǒmen bìxū fángbèi Sūliánde  
qīnlüè. We must guard against Soviet  
aggression.

běifāng láide: "coming from the north" The word cóng, "from," is  
often omitted from phrases such as the following:

A: Nèige xuéxiào de Zhōngguó  
xuésheng dōu shì Táiwān  
láide ma? Are the Chinese students in that  
school all from Taiwan?

B: Bú shì, yě yǒu dàlù láide. No, there are also some from the  
mainland.

Cóng Shànghǎi qù Xīběi zhùde  
rén hěn duō, Běijīng qùde yě  
yǒu. There are many people who have gone  
to live in the Northwest from  
Shànghǎi, and there are also some  
who have gone there from Běijīng.

Rén shì hóuzi biànde. Man came ("changed") from the monkey.

6. A: Nǐmen yóulǎn jīhuàlǐ yǒu  
méiyǒu Shísānlǐng?

Does your sightseeing plan include  
the Thirteen Tombs?

B: Wǒ zhīdao nǐmen jiànzhù  
gōngzuòzhě duì Shísānlǐngde  
dìxià gōngdiàn hěn yǒu xìng-  
qù, wǒmen hòutiān qù.

I know that all of you in architecture  
and structural engineering are very  
interested in the underground pal-  
aces at the Thirteen Tombs. We'll  
go the day after tomorrow.

Notes on No. 6

yóulǎn: "to sightsee," "to tour"

Dào Běijīngde wàiguó rén dōu  
xiǎng qù Shísānlǐng yóulǎn.

Foreigners who go to Běijīng all want  
to go to the Thirteen Tombs to sightsee.

Dào Chángchéng qùde yóulǎnchē  
měitiān sìbān.

There are four tour buses to the  
Great Wall every day.

Shísānlǐng: "the Thirteen Tombs," also called "the Míng Tombs," because  
they date from the Míng Dynasty. These are located outside of Běijīng.

gōngzuòzhě: "worker" in a particular field, e.g., jiàoyù gōngzuòzhě,  
"educational worker," xīnwén gōngzuòzhě, "journalist," yǔyán gōngzuòzhě,  
"language worker." Such terms are PRC usage, sometimes created to replace  
titles with elitist connotations.

Do not confuse this with the general term for "worker," gōngren, which  
will be introduced in Unit 6.

7. A: Chūle gǔdài Zhōngguó jiànzhù  
yìshù yǐwài, nǐmen hái  
xiǎng qù kàn shénme?

What would you like to go see in  
addition to ancient Chinese  
architectural art?

B: Tīngshuō yǒu jǐge jiàotáng  
yǒu kāi mén le, wǒmen  
xiǎng qù kànkàn.

I've heard that there are some  
churches which have reopened. We  
would like to go see them.

Notes on No. 7

gǔdài: "ancient," the opposite of xiàndài. Gǔ-, "ancient," is used  
mainly in compound words:

Běijīng shì yíge gǔchéng.

Běijīng is an ancient city.

Gǔrén yǒu yíjù huà, "Jiāozhě  
bǐ bài."

The ancients had a saying, "Pride  
goeth before the fall."

Zài gǔshíhòu zhèige guójiāde  
wénhuà yǐjīng hěn fādá le.

This country's culture was already  
well developed in ancient times.

Gǔdài is also used as a noun meaning "ancient times, antiquity."



yìshu: "art," meaning either "the arts" or "skill" Yìshujiā is an "artist."

Wǒ tīngshuō nǐ zài zhèr xué yìshu, nǐ shì xué xiàndài yìshu háishì gǔdài yìshu? I understand you study art here; do you study modern art or ancient art?

Jiāo shū shì yìzhǒng yìshu. Teaching is an art.

jiàotáng: "church," literally, "religion-hall"

8. A: Wǒ yào dào Tiān'ānmén qù kànkàn. Zuò jǐlù gōnggòng qìchē hǎo? I want to go see the Gate of Heavenly Peace. What bus should I take?

B: Xīngqītiān qìchē kě jǐ le. Nǐ zuì hǎo zǒuzhe qù. It's Sunday and buses are really crowded. It would be best to walk.

#### Notes on No. 8

kě: Notice that kě, "indeed, certainly, really," is often accompanied by le at the end of the sentence:

Wǒ xiànzài zài kàn tā zuì xīnde shū, kě yǒu yìsī le. I'm reading his latest book now. It's really interesting.

9. A: Wǒ hěn xīnshǎng nǐmen jiěfàng yǐhòu gàide Shí Dà Jiànzhù. I really admire the Ten Great Structures you've built since liberation.

B: Nín tài kèqì le. You're too polite.

#### Notes on No. 9

gài: "to build," only used for buildings. (Another common use of this word is as the verb "to cover," which was the original meaning.)

Zhèige fángzi gàile duōshǎo nián le? How old is this house/building? (lit., "How many years has it been since this house was built?")

Shí Dà Jiànzhù: The "Ten Great Structures" in Běijīng were designed and built in the 1950s by the Chinese themselves. The authorities wanted to modernize the layout of the capital and at the same time to commemorate the revolutionary victory and its heroes. The architectural styles include Western as well as traditional Chinese. The buildings are as follows: Běijīng Railroad Station, Museum of Art, Museum of History, Great Hall of the People, Revolutionary Military Museum, Telegraph Building, Nationalities Cultural Palace, Agricultural Exhibition Hall, Workers Stadium, and the Monument to the People's Heroes.

10. A: Wǒmen yǐjīng juédìng chīle  
fàn yǐhòu qù mǎi dōngxi. We've already decided that after we  
eat we're going shopping.
- B: Hǎo. Cǒng zhèr chuānguò  
guǎngchǎng jiù yǒu shāng- Okay, from here cross through the  
diàn le. square and there are some stores.

Notes on No. 10

juédìng: "to decide" a course of action, or a "decision"

Tāmen juédìng yào bān dào Niǔ They decided to move to New York.  
Yuē qù zhù le.

Wǒ juédìng míngtiān zài zuò I've decided not to do this  
zhèijiàn shì. until tomorrow.

Wǒ juédìng qù le. I've decided to go. (Note that -le  
is not attached to juédìng here  
even though "decided" is a completed  
action. The verb which follows  
juédìng prevents this.)

Wǒ yào hé Huáshèngdùn fāngmian I have to discuss this with Washington  
shāngliang yíxià cái néng before I can make a decision.  
zuò juédìng.

chuānguò: "to cross through"

Cǒng zhèr chuānguòqu jiù dào We just cross through here and  
le. then we're there.

guǎngchǎng: "square" in a city (the literal meaning is "wide-field")

11. A: Gùgōng yìtiān kàndewán Can you see all of the Imperial Palace  
kànbuwán? in one day?
- B: Yìtiān nǎr kàndewán! How could you see it all in one day?!

Notes on No. 11

Gùgōng: The full name is Gùgōng Bówùyuan, "the Former Imperial Palace Museum." This was the palace of the ruling families of the Míng and Qīng dynasties. It is located in the center of Běijīng. In conversation it is usually referred to simply as the Gùgōng (literally, "Former-palace").

kàndewán kànbuwán?: "can (one) finish seeing (it)?" This is the compound verb of result kànwán, "finish seeing," with the syllables -de- and -bu- inserted between the action and the result. Notice that in the question form, the affirmative choice is given first and the negative choice second, just as in simple questions like qù bu qù (which means qù háishì bú qù). In some varieties of Standard Chinese, the question form of verbs like kàndewán

follows the pattern Action bu Action-de-Result: Kàn bu kàndewán? This pattern is increasingly common.

Gùgōng yìtiān kàndewán kànbuán?: Note the placement of the time expression yìtiān, "one day," BEFORE the verb. Expressions telling that something is done WITHIN a certain period of time (usually translated as "in" a certain period) come BEFORE the verb.\* Other examples:

Nǐ <u>yìtiān</u> néng huílai ma?	Can you get back <u>in one day</u> ?
Méi wèntí, <u>bàntiān</u> jiù huílai le.	No problem. I'll be back <u>in half a day</u> .

Wǒ <u>yìhuìr</u> yào chūqu.	I'll be going out <u>in a while</u> .
-----------------------------	---------------------------------------

Tā <u>yíge zhōngtóu</u> jiù xuéhuì le.	He learned it <u>in just an hour</u> .
--	--

Wǒ <u>liǎngge yuè</u> qù yíci.	I go once <u>in two months</u> .
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

nǎr: The word for "where" is used here to make a rhetorical question (one to which no answer is expected) implying the negative of what it says. Other examples:

Nǎr yǒu nàme róngyì!	Since when is it that easy! (It isn't at all so easy.)
----------------------	--

Wǒ nǎr zhīdào tā yǐjīng jiéhūn le!	How was I to know that she was already married! (i.e., I had no way of knowing)
------------------------------------	---

12. A: Shéi qùguo Zhōngguó, shéi jiù huì xiǎngzhe ta.	Whoever goes to China will always think of it.
---	--

#### Notes on No. 12

shéi...shéi jiù...: "whoever..." You can use an interrogative pronoun--shéi, shénme, něige, zěnmé, nǎli, shénme shíhou, duōshǎo, etc.--in a dependent clause and then repeat it in the main clause to get meanings like "whoever," "whatever," "however," "wherever," "whenever," "however much," etc. The adverb jiù, "then," is often used in the main clause.

Nǐ xūyào shénme, wǒ jiù gěi nǐ shénme.	I'll give you whatever you need.
--	----------------------------------

Nǎli duì nǐ zuì fāngbian wǒmen jiù zài nǎli jiàn miàn.	We'll meet wherever is most convenient for you.
--	---

Shéi xiǎng qù, shéi jiù qù.	Whoever wants to go, goes.
-----------------------------	----------------------------

---

\*Remember: Time expressions referring to POINTS in time, including ones like "in (by the end of) two days," go BEFORE; those describing the CONTINUATION of time go AFTER. (Review the note on placement of time phrases in the Meeting module, Unit 1, Notes on No. 6.)

Here are some examples in which jiù is not used:

Nǐ ài zěnmeyàng zěnmeyàng. Do whatever you like.

Nǐ shénme shíhou fāngbian, shénme shíhou lái. Come whenever it's convenient for you.

Zài Táiwān, xiāngjiāo zǒngshì yǒu; yào duōshǎo, yǒu duōshǎo. They always have bananas in Taiwan; there are as many as one could want (i.e., there are plenty).

xiǎngzhe: "be thinking of, have on one's mind" -Zhe on the end of an action verb like xiǎng shows the prolonging of the action over a period of time. Compare these examples:

Bié zhànzhe, zuòxia ba! Don't stay standing; sit down!

Nǐ tīngzhe! Listen!

Nǐ mànman chī, wǒ děngzhe nǐ. Take your time eating; I'll wait for you.

Wǒ zài zhèr kānzhe tā, nǐ qù jiào liǎng jiùhùchē. I'll stay here and watch him; you go call an ambulance.

#### ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

13. chāodài dynasty

#### Note on No. 13

chāodài: The bound form -chāo must be preceded by a name (as in Qínchāo, "the Qin Dynasty"). Chāodài can be used alone, as in Zhèige gōngdiàn shì zài nǎige chāodài jiànzhude?, "In which dynasty was this palace constructed?"

Unit 4, Review Dialogue

An American architect, John Bernacki, is attending a joint Sino-American conference on architecture in Běijīng. During the conference, he has made the acquaintance of a certain Liú Yuèwén of the Chinese Institute of Architecture. They had the chance to talk a bit when Liú accompanied a delegation of American architects around the city to visit several ancient buildings.

One evening toward the end of the conference, Bernacki is having coffee in the dining room of the Běijīng Hotel. On his table he has spread out a tourist map of Běijīng and a relief map of China, and is studying them intently. Just then, Liú Yuèwén comes over to his table carrying a cup of coffee.

- L: Jīntiān cānguānle Gùgōng hái bú gòu lèi ma? Hái zài zhèr kàn dìtú ne! Aren't you tired enough after visiting the Palace Museum today? Still here reading maps!
- B: À! Shì nǐ ya? Lái lái lái, zài zhèr zuò yíhuǐr. Nǐ hē shénme? Kāfēi? Ah, it's you? Come on and sit down here for a while. What are you drinking? Coffee?
- L: Ng, shì kāfēi. Wǒ zài Déguode shíhou hēchéng xíguān le. Yes, coffee. I got in the habit of drinking it when I was in Germany.
- B: Duì le. Wǒ zěnmē huì wàngle nǐ shì zài Déguo xuéde jiànzhù. Huì guò zhème duō nián, méiyǒu zài qùguo Ōuzhōu? Oh yes; how could I forget that you studied architecture in Germany. After so many years back in China, haven't you gone back to Europe at all?
- L: Yǒu qùguo yíci, nèi shí qǐjiǔ-nián, zhèicì bǐ shàngcì duō zǒule jǐge dìfang. I've been back once. That was in '79. That time I went to a few more places than the previous time.
- B: Shéi qùguo Ōuzhōu, shéi jiù huì xiǎngzhe tā. Jiù xiàng Zhōngguó yíyàng, láiguó Zhōngguóde rén, bù guǎn shénme shíhou, zǒng hái huì xiǎngzhe tā. Whoever goes to Europe will always think of it. It's just like China, no matter when it is that a person comes here, they'll always think of it.
- L: Shì a!...Gāngcái wǒ lái de shí-hour, nǐ hǎoxiàng zài yánjiū shénme? Yes, indeed!...Just now when I came, you seemed to be studying something, is that so?
- B: Méi shénme, wǒ zài xiǎng, Běijīng-de dìxíng hé nà Běijīng zuò shǒudū yǒu diǎnr guānxi. Nothing much. I was thinking that the topography of Běijīng has something to do with using it as the capital.

- L: Nǐ shuōde duì, Běijīng zài Huá-běi Píngyuǎnde zuì běibian, xībēi kǎo shān, dōng, nán shì píngyuǎn.
- B: Zhèizhǒng dìxíng ràng rén gǎnjué bǐjiǎo róngyì fángbèi běifāng láide qīnlüè.
- L: Tèbié shì yǒule Chángchéng yǐhòu, gèng róngyì fángbèi.
- B: Tīngshuō Chángchéng xiūguo bù zhīdào duōshǎo cì le.
- L: Cóng Qíncháo dào xiànzài, Chángchéng yìzhí zài xiū, wǒmen děi jìde bù guǎn shénme shíhòu wǒmen dōu děi xiǎoxīn Běifāng láide qīnlüè!
- B: Nǐ zhēn yǒu yìsi. Duì le, wǒ xiǎng wǒmen qiántiān qù kànguode nèiduàn Chángchéng hǎoxiàng bú shì Qíncháo jiànzhude?
- L: Èng, shì Míngcháo chóngxīn jiànzhude. Qíncháode Chángchéng zài Bādǎlǐng běibian liǎngbǎiduō lǐde dìfang. Suǒyì lái Zhōngguó cānguānde wàiguó péngyou píngcháng kàndaode Chángchéng bú shì zuì lǎode yíduàn.
- B: "Wàn lǐ Chángchéng" zhēn yǒu yíwàn lǐ cháng ma?
- L: Yǒu, Chángchéng jīngguòle qīge shěng, yígòng yǒu yíwàn èrqiān lǐ cháng.
- B: Chúle Chángchéng yǐwài, wǒmen jǐge jiànzhù gōngzuòzhě duì Shísānlíngde dìxià gōngdiàn yě hěn yǒu xìngqù.
- L: Tāndao Zhōngguó gǔdài jiànzhù yìshu, nǐ qùguo Tiāntán ma? Nǐmen-de yóulǎn jìhuàli yǒu méiyǒu Tiāntán?
- That's right. Běijīng is in the northernmost part of the North China Plain. On the northwest it is bordered by mountains; to the east and south there are flatlands.
- This kind of topography made people feel as if it were easier to guard against invasions from the north.
- Especially after the Great Wall was built, it was even easier to guard against [invasions].
- I understand the Great Wall has been repaired I-don't-know how many times.
- From the Qín dynasty down to the present the Great Wall has been under repair all along. We must remember that no matter when, we must always beware of invasion from the north!
- You're such a card. Oh yes—it seems to me that the section of the Great Wall we went to see the day before yesterday wasn't built during the Qín dynasty, was it?
- Mm, it was rebuilt in the Míng Dynasty. The Qín Dynasty Great Wall is over two hundred li north of Bādǎlǐng. So the Great Wall that foreign friends who come to sightsee in China usually see isn't the oldest section.
- Is the "Great Wall of Ten Thousand Li" really ten thousand li long?
- Yes. The Great Wall passes through seven provinces and altogether is 12,000 li long.
- Besides the Great Wall, we building workers are also very interested in the underground palaces of the Thirteen Tombs.
- Speaking of ancient Chinese architectural art, have you been to the Temple of Heaven? Is that on your touring schedule?

B: Ò, duì le, Tiāntán! Wǒ xiǎng-qilai le, tīngshuō Tiāntán gài de hěn tèbié. Kěshì, bù zhīdào wèishenme, wǒmen de yóulǎn jìhuàlì hǎoxiàng méiyǒu.

L: Bú yàojǐnde. Wǒmen hé Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè tányitán, rúguǒ tāmen méiyǒu shíjiān ānpaide huà, wǒmen kéyì zài Xīngqítīān zìjǐ qù.

B: Xīngqítīān zìjǐ qù! Hǎo jìhuà! Nǐde xiānsheng, háizi, dōu kéyì lái ma?

L: Dàgài kéyì. Wǒ àiren hé wǒde dà érzi dōu shì gāo jiànzhude, tāmen kéyì gěi nǐ hǎohǎo jièshào yíxià Tiāntánde jiànzhù tèdiǎn.

B: Wǒmen zěnméi qù ne?

L: Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng zǒuyizǒu lù a?

B: Kéyì a! Zài shuō, wǒ xiǎng Xīngqítīānde gōnggòng qìchē dàgài xiāngdāng jǐ.

L: Ng. Wǒmen cóng Běijīng Fàndiàn zǒu dào Tiān'ānmén, ránhòu chuānguò guǎngchǎng, bù yuǎn jiù shì Tiāntán le.

B: Hǎo, jiù zhème juéding le. Búguò, bù zhīdào Tiāntán yǒu duō dà? Bàntiān kàndewán ma?

L: Tiāntán bǐ Yíhéyuán xiǎode duō, zhǔyàode jiànzhù jiù yǒu liǎngbùfen. Bàntiān dàgài kéyì kànwán. Zěnméi, Xīngqítīān nǐ hái yǒu biéde shì ma?

B: Xīngqítīān xiàwǔ yǒu rén qǐng women chī fàn. Bù hǎo yìsi bú qù, kěshì xīnshǎng jiànzhù yìshù, nà kě shì yàojǐnde shìr, bàntiān dàgài bú gòu!

Oh, yes--the Temple of Heaven. That reminds me. I've heard that the Temple of Heaven is very special. But for some reason I don't know, it doesn't seem to be on our tour schedule.

That doesn't matter. We'll talk about it with the China Travel Service, and if they don't have time to set it up, we can go by ourselves on Sunday.

Go ourselves on Sunday! That's a great plan! Can your husband and children all come too?

Probably. My spouse and my oldest son are both in building. They can do a proper job of showing you the special architectural characteristics of the Temple of Heaven.

How shall we go there?

Do you want to walk a little?

That would be okay. Besides, I suppose the buses are pretty crowded on Sundays.

Mm. From the Běijīng Hotel we walk to the Gate of Heavenly Peace, then we cross the square, and not far from there is the Temple of Heaven.

Okay. Then that's the decision. Only, I wonder how large the Temple of Heaven is? Could we see it in half a day?

The Temple of Heaven is much smaller than the Summer Palace. The main structures include only two parts. You can probably finish seeing it in half a day. Why? Do you have other things to do on Sunday?

Sunday afternoon we've been invited to dinner. It would be embarrassing if we didn't go, but admiring architectural art is certainly an important thing, and half a day probably won't be enough!

A: Bú yàojǐnde, zhèige Xīngqītiān wǒmen zǎo diǎnr qù. Zǎo qù zǎo huí, jiù kàn bàntiān. Rúguǒ nǐ hái xiǎng qù, wǒmen zài xiǎng bàn-fǎ yuē shíjiān.

That's okay, this Sunday we'll go a little earlier. We'll leave early and come back early, and just spend half a day there. If you still want to go we'll try to arrange a time.

B: Hǎo, jiù zhèiyang le. Wǒ jìde zài Ōuzhōu cānguān yige jiàotáng hái děi yòng bù shǎo shíjiān ne!

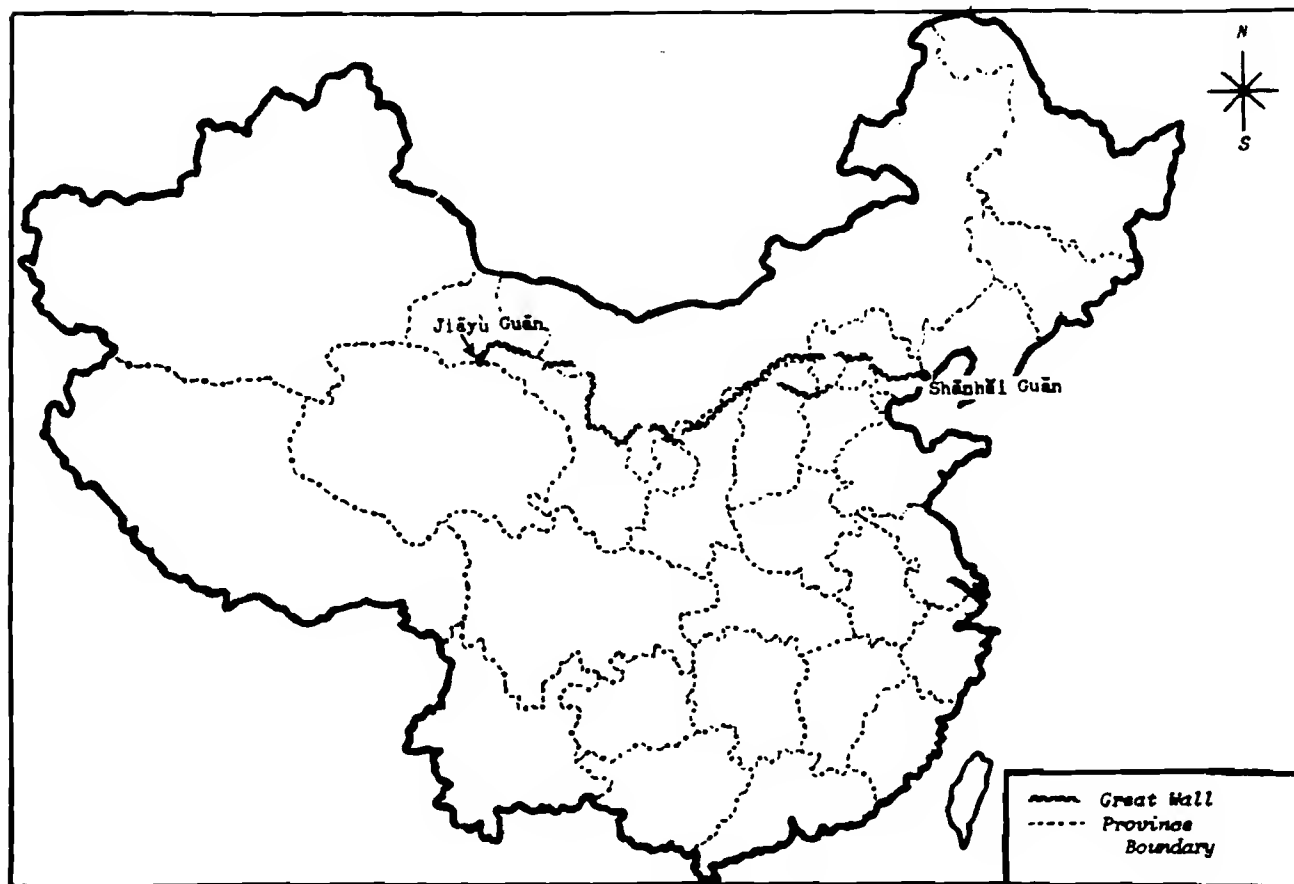
Okay, that sounds good. I remember it takes quite a long time to tour a cathedral in Europe!

L: Hǎo le, jiù zhèiyangr. Xīngqītiān zǎoshang bādiǎn, zài lóuxià dà ménkǒu jiàn, rúguǒ yǒu shénme gǎibiàn, wǒ zài dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ.

All right, that's our plan. We'll meet at the entrance downstairs, Sunday morning at eight. If there's any change I'll give you a call.

B: Hǎode, jiù zhèiyang!

Okay, that's fine!



The Great Wall of China



Unit 4, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American scholar visiting China talks with an old Chinese friend at the Běijīng Hotel.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

pǎolai pǎoqù	to run back and forth
yìshí	for the moment
Gēlúnbiyà Dàxué	Columbia University
hǎishi	it would be better to
Zhōngshān Gōngyuán	Sun Yatsen Park
shù	tree
-kē	(counter for trees)
-zuǒ	(counter for massive objects)
mùtōu	wood
Liáodài	the Liáo Period

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why does the American scholar want to stop talking about New York?
2. Why does his Chinese friend think New York is a special place?

3. Does the Chinese friend enjoy old things? How do you know?
4. How do you get from the Běijīng Hotel to Sun Yatsen Park?
5. Describe three attractions in Sun Yatsen Park.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

### Exercise 3

In this conversation, Professor Michaels talks with Ms. Táng Lǎn, from the China Travel Service, while he packs his bags in his hotel room.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

dǎrǎo	to disturb
huācè	book of photographs
xūyàoliàng	need, demand
jiēshòu	to accept
lǐwù	gift
zhàopiàn	photograph
yǒuhǎo	friendship
dàibǎo	to represent; on behalf of

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What does Ms. Táng Lǎn bring Professor Michaels?
2. Why does she bring this particular gift?
3. Why does she refuse the pen Professor Michaels offers her?

4. How does Professor Michaels explain his gift of the pen so that it will be acceptable?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

#### Exercise 4

In this conversation, a young German student is touring the Great Wall at Bādǎlǐng when she meets a Chinese who was a classmate of hers three years before in Germany.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

Nǐ hái shì lǎo yàngzi	You look as if you haven't changed a bit
bàng	to be great, to be terrific
wěidà	to be great (e.g., a leader)
Mùníhēi	Munich
shìzhèngfǔ	city hall
zhěngqí	to be neat, to be tidy

#### Questions for Exercise 4

1. Why hadn't the German gotten in touch with her Chinese friend yet?
2. What plans of the Chinese government are bothering the German?
3. What example does the Chinese friend give to show that modernization has made improvements in Běijīng?
4. What is the main reason the Chinese friend sees for building the hotel?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

In this conversation, an American scholar visiting China (A) talks with an old Chinese friend of his (B) at the Běijīng Hotel.

A: Měicì lái Zhōngguó zǒngshì yào máfan.nǐ, péizhe wǒmen pǎolai pǎo-qùde. Nǐ shénme shíhòu yě dào Měiguó qù kànkàn ma! Sān-sìshí-nián le, Měiguó yǐjīng biànde tài duō le!

Every time I come to China I always trouble you to accompany us all around the place. You should really come see America some time! It's changed a lot in thirty or forty years!

B: Shì a! Qù shì hěn xiǎng qùde, zhǐ shì yìshí hái zhǎobudào jīhuì.

Yes, I'd love to go, it's just that for the moment I can't find the opportunity.

A: Gēlúnbiǎyà Dàxué cháng qǐng tāmen-de lǎo xuésheng huíqù cānguān, yóulǎn. Wǒ shìshí gěi nǐ ānpai yìxiar.

Columbia University often invites their old students back to visit and tour. I'll try to arrange it for you.

B: Hǎode....Shuōqilai yě qíguài, Niǔ Yuē zhēn shì ge tèbiéde dìfang. Wǒ zhù zài nàrde shíhòu bù juéde zěnme tài hǎo, kěshì xiànzài cháng xiǎng-qǐ ta! Yǒu hěn duō lǎo liúxuéshēng cháng shuō, shéi zài Niǔ Yuē zhùguo shéi jiù huì chángcháng xiǎngzhe ta!

Okay....It's a funny thing, but New York is really a special place. When I was living there, I didn't think much of the place, but now I often think of it. A lot of old students returned from abroad often say that whoever has lived in New York will think of it often!

A: Ò, wǒmen bù tán zhèige le. Zài tánxiàqu wǒ yě yào xiǎng jiā le. Wǒmen háishì chūqu zǒuzou ba!

Let's not talk about this any more. If we keep talking about it, I'm going to start missing home, too. It would be better if we went outside for a walk!

B: Hǎo a! Nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr a?

All right! Where would you like to go?

A: Běijīng shì shǒudū, yíding yǒu xié yǒu yìside dìfang. Gùgōng, Yíhéyuán shénmede wǒ dōu qùguo le. Fūjīn hái yǒu shénme biéde dìfang bǐjiào yǒu yìsi ma?

Běijīng is the capital, so it naturally has some interesting places. I've been to the Palace Museum and the Summer Palace. Are there any other interesting places near here?

B: Cóng zhèlǐ chūqu wǎng xī zǒu, chuānguò Tiān'ānmén Guāngchǎng, zài Tiān'ānménde xībianr yǒu yíge gōngyuánr, jiào Zhōngshān Gōngyuán, lǐmian yǒu bù shǎo piàoliangde gǔdài jiànzhū.

If you go out from here and walk to the west, then cut across Tiān'ānmén Square, then on the west side of Tiān'ānmén there's a park called Sun Yatsen Park, and inside there are a lot of beautiful ancient buildings.

A: Shì shénme chāodàide jiànzhū, yǒu duōshao niánde lìshǐ?

What dynasty are the buildings from? How old are they?

B: Zuì zǎode jiànzhū shì Liáodàide, chābudoō yǒu yìqiānniǎnde lìshǐ le. Nàr hái yǒu qīkē gǔdàide dà shù, yě dōu yǒu yìqiānduō nián le. The earliest buildings are from the Liáo Period. They are about a thousand years old. There are also seven ancient trees there, which are over a thousand years old, too.

A: Nèr yě yǒu yǒu míngde gōngdiàn ba? There's a famous palace there too, isn't there?

B: Yǒu, yǒu yízuò dà diàn shì Míngchāode shíhour jiànzhude, yòngde cáiliào quán shì mùtou, yě yǐjīng chābudoō yǒu liùbǎiniǎnde lìshǐ. Yes. There's a large palace which was constructed in the Ming Dynasty, made entirely of wood. That's about six hundred years old, too.

A: Hǎo, nà wǒmen xiànzài jiù qù zǒuzou. All right, then let's go for a walk right now.

B: Hǎode, zǒu! Okay, let's go!

### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American tourist, Professor Michaels (M), is packing his bags in his hotel room. Ms. Táng Lán (T), from the China Travel Service, comes to his door.

T: Mǎikè Jiàoshòu, dǎrǎo nǐ le. Professor Michaels, I'm disturbing you.

M: Méi shenme, kuài qǐng zuò, wǒ zhèr luànqībāzāode, zài shōushì dōngxi. Not at all. Please sit down. It's a mess here, I'm packing.

T: Shénme shíhourde fēijī ya? When's your plane?

M: Wǎnshangde, hái zǎo ne, bù jí bù jí, nǐ zuò ma. In the evening. It's still early. No rush, no rush. Come on and sit down.

T: Wǒ lái sòng gěi nín yìběn yóulǎn huàcè. I've come to give you a photographic travel book.

M: Yóulǎn huàcè? Jiù shì wǒmen zài yóulǎn Wànlǐ Chángchéngde shíhou, wǒ xiǎng mǎide nèizhǒng? A photographic travel book? Is it the kind I wanted to buy when we were touring the Great Wall of Ten Thousand Li?

T: Jiù shì. Zhèizhǒng huàcè xūyào-liàng kě dà le. Right. There sure is a great demand for this kind of book of photographs.

M: Shì ma! Ōuzhōu láiide, Měizhōu láiide, shénme dìfang láiide kèrén dōu xiǎng mǎi yìběnr. Xūyào-liàng yíding hěn dà. Sure! Visitors from Europe, America, everywhere, all want to buy one. Of course there's a great demand.

- T: Nèitiān zài Bādǎlǐng, nín méiyǒu mǎizhǎo, jīntiān wǒ gěi nín sònglái le. That day at Bādǎlǐng, you weren't able to find one, so today I'm bringing you one.
- M: Zhēn xièxie nǐ, zhème diǎnr xiǎo shìr nǐ hái xiǎngzhe. Duóshao qián na? Thank you so much. Such a small thing and you still remembered it. How much was it?
- T: Shí Lǚxíngshè sòng nín de. Wǒmen huānyíng nín zài lái. It's a gift from the Travel Service. We welcome you to come back again.
- (Michael takes a Parker pen out of the pocket of his suitcase.)
- M: Nà, zhèizhǐ bǐ sòng gei nǐ. Then, take this pen as a gift.
- T: Ò, bù kéyǐ, wǒmen bù kéyǐ jiēshòu kèrende lǐwù. Oh, I can't. We're not allowed to accept gifts from visitors.
- M: Nàme sòng gei nǐmen Lǚxíngshè. Hái jǐde nèitiān wǒmen zài Shísānlíng ma? Then I give it to your Travel Service. Do you still remember that day at the Thirteen Tombs?
- T: Duì, nèitiān nín hěn gāoxìng. Yes. That day you were very happy.
- M: Xīnshǎng Zhōngguó gǔdài jiànzhù yìshù shì wǒ zuǐ gāoxìngde shì. Nèitiān wǒmen zhào xiàng le, nǐ hái jǐde ma? The thing that makes me happiest is admiring the ancient architectural art of China. That day we took pictures, do you remember?
- T: Jǐde. Nèitiān nín gěi wǒmen Lǚxíngshède jǐge tóngzhǐ zhào le xiàng, nín hái zài zhàopiàn hòumian yòng Zhōngwén xiěle "Měi-Zhōng yǒuhǎo" sìge zì. Yes. That day, you took a picture of us comrades from the Travel Service, and you wrote on the back of the picture "American-Chinese friendship."
- M: Duì, nàme jīntiān nǐ sòng huàcè lai, wǒ sòng gei nǐmen yìzhǐ bǐ wèishénme bù kéyǐ ne? Right. So then today since you've brought me the photographic travel book, what's wrong with my giving you a pen?
- T: Hǎo. Wǒ dài biǎo tóngzhimen xièxie nín, huānyíng nín zài lái. All right. On behalf of the other comrades, I thank you and welcome you to come back again.
- M: Wǒ yíding zài lái. I'll be sure to.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

A traveler from Germany (B) is touring the Great Wall at Bādǎlǐng when she spots a Chinese friend (A) whom she met three years before when he was studying in Germany.

- B: Ài! Xú Gāng! Hái rènshi wǒ ma? Hey! Xú Gāng! Do you still remember me?
- A: Ò! Shì nǐ ya! Sānnián bù jiàn, nǐ hái shì lǎo yàngzi! Lái Běijīng duō jiǔ le? Well! It's you! It's been three years, but you still look the same! How long has it been since you came to Běijīng?
- B: Ha! Kāndào nǐ zhēn gāoxìng! Wǒ lái zhèr yíge duō xīngqī le. Yìzhí cānguān zhèr, cānguān nàrde, mǎngjīle, dōu méi néng gěi nǐ dǎ yíge diànhuà. Nǐ hái zài Běidà ma? Ha! It's so good to see you! It's been a week or more since I got here. I've been sightseeing all over the place all along, and haven't been able to give you a call. Are you still at Běijīng University?
- A: Hái zài Běidà. Nǐde Zhōngwén yuè lái yuè bàng le ma? Yes, I'm still there. Your Chinese is getting more and more fantastic!
- B: Bàng shénme ya? Hái bu shì mǎ-mahūhūde! Duì le, zài zhèr kāndào nǐ zhèng hǎo! Wǒ yǒu yíge wèntí xiǎng wèn ne, nǐ yǒu méiyǒu shíjiān? What's fantastic about it? It's just so-so, really! Oh yes--glad I've run into you here; I have a question I'd like to ask. Do you have time?
- A: Yǒu! Nǐ yǒu shénme wèntí? Yes. What's your question?
- B: Wǒ jìde Chángchéng jīngguòle hǎo-jǐge shěng, yǒu yíwàn èrqiānduō lǐ cháng. As I remember, the Great Wall passes through many provinces and is over 12,000 li long.
- A: Duì ya! Right!
- B: Chángchéng shì Zhōngguó zuì wěi-dàde gǔdài jiànzhù. The Great Wall is China's greatest ancient structure.
- A: Duì ya! Chābuduō shì zhèiyàng. Right! That's about the way it is.
- B: Hǎo. Nàme Qíncháo de shíhòu wèishénme yào xiū zhème chángde Chángchéng ne? Okay. And why did they want to build such a long Great Wall during the Qín dynasty?
- A: Dāngrán shì wèile fángbèi Běifāng lái de qīnlüè le. As a precaution against invasions from the north, of course.
- B: Nàme, hǐmen xiànzài wèishénme bù hǎohāorde bǎohù Chángchéng, nǐmen gǔdài de chuāntǒng ne? Then why aren't you doing a good job of protecting the Great Wall, of protecting your ancient tradition?
- A: Shéi shuōde? Wǒmen bú shì yìzhí zài xiū ma? Says who? We've been repairing it all along, you know!
- B: Kěshì tīngshuō nǐmende zhèngfǔ yǐjīng juéding zài Chángchéngde fùjìn gài yíge xiàndàihuàde fān- But I hear that your government has decided to build a modern hotel in the vicinity of the Great Wall. If that's

- diàn. Rúguǒ zhēn shì nèiyangr, wǒ juéde yǒu yìdiǎnr bú tài shūfu.
- A: À! Wǒ xiǎngqilai le. Zài Mùní-hēide shíhou, wǒmen yǒu yíci qù cānguān yíge lǎo jiàotáng.
- B: Duì le. Wǒmen zǒuguò lǎo shì-zhèngfǔ ménkǒurde shíhou, kàndào nàr yǒu hěn duō hěn xiàndàihuàde fànguǎnr, yě yǒu zázhi, shūbào, huàr shenmede, zhēn ràng wǒ xīnlǐ bù shūfu.
- A: Hài, xiàndàihuàde shèhuì ma, zěnmē néng méiyǒu xiàndàihuàde dōngxī ne? Bǐfāng shuō Běijīngde Qiánménwài ba, cóngqián yǒu hěn duō xiǎo pùzi. Jiěfàng yǐhòu xiūguo hǎo duō cì, hái shì bú tài hǎo, hòulái chóng-xīn gǎile hěn duō dà shāngdiàn, jiù zhèngqíde duō le. Yǒu shénme bù hǎo ne?
- B: Hǎo le, hǎo le, wǒ tóngyì le.
- A: Shì ma! Nǐ kàn, zhèrde dìxíng duō yǒu yìsi, fēngjǐng duō piàoliang. Lái zhèrde rén wǎnr yìtiān gòu ma?
- B: Dàgài bú gòu.
- A: Jiù shì ma, yàoshi fǔjìn yǒu yíge dà fàndiàn, nà duō fāngbian!
- B: Hǎo le, hǎo le, wǒ tóngyì le! Zǒu, zǎnmen zài wǎng shàng zǒuzou.
- A: Zǒu!
- really the case, then I feel rather bad about it.
- Ah! I remember. When we were in Munich, once we went to visit an old church.
- Right. When we walked in front of the old city hall, seeing all those modern restaurants, and the magazines, books, newspapers, paintings, and so on, it really made me feel very bad.
- Well, that's modern society, you know! How can it do without modern things? Take Qiánménwài in Běijīng, for example. It used to have a lot of little shops. After liberation, it was fixed up many times, but it still wasn't too good. Later a lot of new big stores were built, and it looked much neater. What's wrong with that?
- Okay, okay, I agree.
- Sure! Look, the terrain is so interesting here, and the scenery is so beautiful. Is one day enough for the people who come here?
- Probably not.
- Exactly. If there were a big hotel in the vicinity, how convenient it would be!
- Okay, okay, I agree! Come on, let's walk on up!
- Let's go.



Unit 5, Reference List

1. A: Zhōngguó méitàn zīyuán bù  
shǎo, chǎnliàng hěn gāo. China's coal resources are large  
and output is high.  
B: Shì, xiānzài Zhōngguó méitàn  
chǎnliàng zài shìjièshang  
zhàn dìsānwèi. Yes, China's coal output ranks  
third in the world.
2. A: Cóngqián Zhōngguóde shíyóu  
dàbùfēn zài lí biānjìng  
bù yuǎnde dìfang. In the past, China's oil was  
mostly in places out near the  
border.  
B: Xiānzài yánhǎi yídàide  
shíyóu yě fāzhǎnqilai le. Now oil in the coastal region is  
starting to be developed.
3. A: Zhèige kuàngqūde jīnshǔ  
gōngyè shì shénme shíhou  
kāishǐ yǒude? When did the metal industry in this  
mining area begin?  
B: Bāshí niándài. Jīxiè gōngyè  
yě shì bāshí niándài cái  
yǒude. In the eighties. There wasn't a  
machine industry until the eighties,  
either.
4. A: Zài guò shínián, dào jiǔshí  
niándài chū, zhèige guójiā  
dàgāi huì biànchéng yíge  
jīngjì qiángguó. In another ten years, in the early  
nineties, this country will pro-  
bably become an economic power.  
B: Bù xíng, qǐmǎ děi zài guò  
èrshínián. No, it will be at least another  
twenty years.
5. A: Zhèiwèi zài guówài yǒu míngde  
gōngchéngshī, huí guó yǐhòu  
zěnmeyàng la? What happened when this engineer who  
was famous abroad went back to his  
country?  
B: Huí guó yǐhòu yìzhí gāo zhòng  
gōngyè fāngmiàn de jìshù  
gōngzuò. He has been doing technical work  
in heavy industry since he  
returned to his country.
6. A: Bú jiù shì Rìběn, xiānzài  
gèguó dōu hěn guānxīn  
Zhōngguó yánhǎide jīngjì  
jiànshè. Not only Japan, all countries are  
now interested in the economic  
construction of China's coast.  
B: Shì. Yǐjīng yǒu xǔduō guójiā  
xiǎng hé Zhōngguó yìqǐ zài  
nèi yídài chénglì xīnde  
gōngsī. Yes, there are already many countries  
which are thinking of establishing  
new companies with China in that  
area.

7. A: Tīngshuō zhèige nóngyèqū yǐjīng yǒu lǐliàng fāzhǎn gōngyè le. I hear that this agricultural area already has the capability to develop its industry.
- B: Jīn shínián lái, zhèige dìqū-de nóngyè shēngchǎn gāode bú cuò, shōurù bù shǎo, gǎole yìdiǎnr qīng gōngyè. Over the past ten years, agricultural production in this area has been good and income has been high, so some light industry was set up.
8. A: Tīngshuō èrshínián qián yǒu hěn duō niánqīng rén dào le nèige méiyǒu rén de qióng dìfang. I heard that twenty years ago a lot of young people came to that poor and unpopulated place.
- B: Shì a! Kěshì xiànzài zhèngfǔ kěyǐ fāngxīn le. Nèige dìfang yǐjīng suàn jiànshè de bú cuò le. Yes, but now the government need not worry anymore. That place can be considered to have been pretty well built up.
9. A: Zǒngde lái shuō ba, zhèige chéngshìde biànhuà shì hěn dàde. Generally speaking, the changes in this city have been great.
- B: Shì a, zhàn zài shì zhōngxīn-de dàlóushang kànkan, wǒ dōu bú rènshi le! Yes, standing on top of the building in the center of the city, looking out, I don't recognize anything anymore!
10. A: Xǔduō jīngjì lìliàng bǐjiǎo ruòde guójiā hěn gǎnxiè Zhōngguóde bāngzhǔ. Many countries with relatively weak economies are grateful for China's help.
- B: Wǒmen yě shì yíge fāzhǎn-zhōngde guójiā, kěshì wǒmen hěn gāoxìng bāng qí tā guójiā gāo jīngjì jiànshè. We're still a developing country, too, but we're happy to help other countries in economic construction.
11. hǎiwān gulf, bay
12. Guǎngdōng (a province, formerly Kwangtung)
13. Hēilóngjiāng (a province, formerly Heilongkiang)
14. Shǎnxī (a province, formerly Shensi, now officially spelled Shaanxi)
15. Sìchuān (a province, formerly Szechwan)
16. Tiānjīn (a municipality, formerly Tientsin)

Unit 5, Vocabulary List

ba	(marker of pause or hypothesis)
bāng	to help
biànhuà	change
biānjìng	border, frontier
chénglì	to establish
-chū	the beginning of (a time period)
fàng xīn	to be unworried, to be at ease
gǎnxiè	to be thankful, to be grateful
gè-	each, every, various, different
gōngchéngshī	engineer
Guǎngdōng	(province in south China)
guānxīn	to be concerned about, to care about
hǎiwān	bay; gulf
Hēilóngjiāng	(province in northeast China)
jìn	the past..., the last...
jīnshǔ	metal
kuàngqū	mining region
lìliàng (lìliang)	power, force, strength
méitàn	coal
niándài	decade of a century
qiáng	to be strong
qiángguó	powerful nation, a power
qǐmǎ	at least
qīng	to be light
qīng gōngyè	light industry
qióng	to be poor
qítā	other
-qū	area, region, district
ruò	to be weak
Shǎnxī	(province in north central China)
...(lǎi) shuō	...speaking
Sìchuān	(province in southwest China)
suàn	to be considered, to count as
Tiānjīn	(municipality southeast of Běijīng)
-wèi	place, position (rank)

xǔduō

many, much

yánhǎi

along the coast, coastal

zhòng

to be heavy

zhōngxīn

center, heart, core, hub

zīyuán

(natural) resources

zǒngde lái shuō

generally speaking, on the whole

Unit 5, Reference Notes

1. A: Zhōngguó méitàn zīyuán bù shǎo, chǎnliáng hěn gāo. China's coal resources are large and output is high.
- B: Shì, xiànzài Zhōngguó méitàn chǎnliáng zài shìjièshàng zhàn dìsānwèi. Yes, China's coal output now ranks third in the world.

Notes on No. 1

méitàn: "coal" In daily life (for coal is still used as a fuel in many homes in China), this is usually called simply méi. Tàn by itself means "charcoal" (charcoal is also called mùtàn, literally, "wood-charcoal"). Another word tàn, written with a different character but pronounced exactly the same, means the element "carbon."

Zhèige dìfāngde méitàn shēngchǎn qíngkuàng bù cuò. Coal production is doing very well in this place.

zīyuán: "resources" This is used in such phrases as zìrán zīyuán, "natural resources," and dìxià zīyuán, "underground resources."

Rìběn yǒu zīyuánde wèntí. Japan has a problem of resources. (refers to lack of resources)

bù shǎo: "not few," i.e., "many," "large" Remember that Chinese often uses bù to express the opposite of adjectives:

Shíjiān bù zǎo le. It's getting late.

Nǐ zhēn bù cōngmíng. You're really dumb.

Nèige guójiāde jīngjì fāzhǎnde bú mǎn. That country's economy is developing quite fast.

dìsānwèi: "third place" -Wèi is the same word you learned in Něiwèi shì Gāo Tóngzhì?, but here it means "place" or "position" in a statistical ranking. -Wèi also means "place" in mathematics: gèwèi, "the units place"; shíwèi, "the tens place"; bǎiwèi, "the hundreds place"; etc.

Use the pattern zhàn dì-...-wèi for "to rank in ... position":

Zhōngguó rénǔ zhàn shìjiè dìyíwèi. China's population ranks first in the world.

Yīndù dàozi chǎnliáng zài shìjièshàng zhàn dìjīwèi? How does India's rice production rank in the world?

2. A: Cóngqián Zhōngguóde shíyóu  
dǎbùfen zài lí biānjīng  
bù yuǎnde dìfang.

In the past, China's oil was  
mostly in places near the  
border.

B: Xiànzài yánhǎi yí dài de  
shíyóu yě fāzhǎnqilai le.

Now oil in the coastal region is  
starting to be developed, too.

Notes on No. 2

biānjīng: "(national) border"

Zài biānjīng dìqū shēnghuó, gōng-  
zuòde rén, yíding yào tèbié  
xiǎoxīn.

People who live and work in the  
border areas must be especially  
careful.

Zhèige chéngshì lí biānjīng hěn  
jìn.

This city is very near the border.

zài lí biānjīng bù yuǎnde dìfang: "was in places near the border" The  
main verb of the sentence is zài, "was in." The phrase lí biānjīng bù yuǎn  
goes with -de and describes dìfang. Here is a diagram of the structure:

Zhōngguóde shíyóu zài lí biānjīng bù yuǎn -de dìfang.

China's oil was in not far from the border places.

yánhǎi: "along the coast," "coastal" (Yán, which you will learn in  
Unit 7, means "along.")

Zhèizhǒng dōngxí shì yánhǎi  
dìqū cái yǒude.

This kind of thing is found only  
in the coastal regions.

Nèijǐge yánhǎi chéngshì jiàn-  
shède hěn kuài.

Those few coastal cities have been  
built up very quickly.

Yánhǎi yí dài is a very common way of saying "coastal region." You should  
also memorize the expressions yánhǎi gèshěng, "the (various) coastal prov-  
inces," and yánhǎi zīyuán, "coastal resources."

3. A: Zhèige kuàngqūde jīnshǔ  
gōngyè shì shénme shíhòu  
kāishǐ yǒude?

When did the metal industry in this  
mining area begin?

B: Bāshí niándài. Jīxiè gōngyè  
yě shì bāshí niándài cái  
yǒude.

In the eighties. There wasn't a  
machine industry until the eighties,  
either.

Notes on No. 3

kuàngqū: "mining area/region"

Kuàng is the word for "mine," as in

\*On the word gè, "various," see the Notes on No. 6.

méikuàng, "coal mine." -Qū means "area," "region," as in dìqū, "region," jīāoqū, "suburbs," and shìqū, "urban area."

Zhèige jīhua shì guānyú kuàng-qū jiànshède.

This plan has to do with the development of mining regions.

jīnshǔ: "metal," literally, "metal-category"

Zhèi shì jīnshǔde ma?

Is this (made of) metal?

Xiànzài wǒmen zuò zhèizhǒng dōngxī bú yòng jīnshǔ, dōu yòng zhǐ le.

Now we no longer make this kind of thing out of metal, we make it out of paper.

niándài: This has two meanings: (1) (as used in 3B) "a decade of a century," e.g., èrshí niándài, "the twenties"; (2) "period," "era"

Zhèige gùshi xiěde shì shénme niándàide shì?

What period is this story about?

Zhèipíng jiǔ shì shénme nián-dàide?

What vintage is this wine/liquor?

jīxiè: "machine," "machinery," "mechanical"

Wǒmen zhèlǐde shēngchǎn zhǔyào kào jīxiè.

Most of our production here is by machine.

Jīxiè is also pronounced jījiè.

Jīqì, "machine," which you learned in Unit 3, is different from jīxiè. Jīqì refers to individual machines; jīxiè is machines in general--machinery. Jīqì virtually always translates as "machine(s)." Jīxiè is basically "machinery," but may translate as "machine" in certain phrases, like jīxiè gōngrén, "machine worker," jīxiè gōngyè, "machine industry," etc.

4. A: Zài guò shínián, dào jiǔshí niándài chū, zhèige guójiā dàgài huì biànchéng yíge jīngjì qiángguó.

In another ten years, in the early nineties, this country will probably become an economic power.

B: Bù xíng, qǐmǎ děi zài guò èrshínián.

No, it will be at least another twenty years.

#### Notes on No. 4

zài guò shínián: "in another ten years," "after another ten years have passed" Here are some more examples of the use of (zài) guò (Amount of Time):

Zài guò jǐnián wǒ jiù xíguàn zhèrde shēnghuó le.

I'll get used to life here in another few years.

Guò jǐtiān tā jiù yào qù Yìdàlǐ     In a few days, he will be going  
zuò lǐngshǐ le.     to Italy to be consul.

-chū: "at the beginning of" a time period

Míngniánchū wǒ qù Shànghǎi.     At the beginning of next year I'm  
going to Shànghǎi.

Yuèchū zài shuō ba!     We'll see about it at the beginning  
of (next) month!

Zhèige yuè chū tiānqì kāishǐ  
nuǎnhuo le.     The weather started to get warmer  
at the beginning of this month.

Wénhuà Dà Gémìng chū wǒmen shéi  
dōu hái bù zhīdào shì zěnmé  
huì shì.     At the beginning of the Cultural  
Revolution, none of us knew what  
it was all about yet.

qiángguó: "strong-country," i.e., "a (world) power"

qǐmǎ: (1) "at least"

Tā xué Zhōngwén qǐmǎ yǒu wǔnián  
le, dànshì hái shuōde bù hǎo.     He has been studying Chinese for  
at least five years, but he still  
doesn't speak well.

Měitiān wǎnshàng wǒ qǐmǎ yào kàn  
liǎngge zhōngtóu shù cái néng  
shuì jiào.     Every evening I have to read at  
least two hours before I can  
go to sleep.

Zhèige rén zhēn néng pǎo, měitiān  
qǐmǎ pǎo shíèr yīnglǐ.     This guy can really run. Every day  
he runs at least twelve miles.

(2) "minimum, lowest (required to be acceptable), most basic, rudimentary"

Zhèige rén! Lián qǐmǎde lǐmào  
dōu bù dòng!     This guy! He doesn't even understand  
the most basic manners!

Nǐ lián zhè qǐmǎde dào lǐ dōu  
bù dòng?!     You don't even understand this basic  
principle (of conduct, life, etc.)?!

Similar expressions include qǐmǎde tiáojiàn, "the most basic conditions";  
qǐmǎde huánjìng, "the most basic environment(al conditions)"; qǐmǎde zhīshi,  
"the most rudimentary knowledge"; qǐmǎde shuǐpíng, "the minimum level."



5. A: Zhèiwèi zài guówài yǒu míngde gōngchéngshī, huí guó yǐhòu zěnmeyàng la? What happened when this engineer who was famous abroad went back to his country?
- B: Huí guó yǐhòu yǐzhí gāo zhòng gōngyè fāngmiànde jìshù gōngzuò. He has been doing technical work in heavy industry since he returned to his country.

Notes on No. 5

zěnmeyàng la?: "what happened (to him)" La is just a contraction of le and a. Here are more examples of the extremely useful word zěnmeyàng, "how is...", "what happened (to)...", or "do what":

- Ránhòu ne? Ránhòu zěnmeyàng? And then? Then what happened?
- Éi, hǎo jǐnián méi kànjian Xiǎo Wú le, tā zěnmeyàng le? Say, I haven't seen Xiǎo Wú for many years. What ever became of her?
- Yíge rén bù néng xiǎng zěnmeyàng jiu zěnmeyàng. A person cannot just do anything they feel like doing.
- Nǐ yàoshì bú gào su ta, tā huì duì nǐ zěnmeyàng ma? If you don't tell him, will he try to do anything to you?
- Tā bú huì zěnmeyàng. He won't do anything.
- A: Nǐ dǎsuan zěnmeyàng? What are you going to do?
- B: Nǐ xiǎng wǒ yīnggāi zěnmeyàng? What do you think I should do?
- A: Wǒ bù zhīdào, nǐ yào zěnmeyàng jiu zěnmeyàng. I don't know. Do whatever you want to do.

zhòng: "to be heavy," in several senses:

- Zhèige jīqì yǒu duō zhòng? How heavy is this machine?
- Gōngkè tài zhòng, zhēn lèi. I have too much homework; I'm really tired.
- Bú yào bǎ huà shuōde tài zhòng le. Don't put it too strongly.
- Tā shòule zhòng shāng, xiànzài zài yīyuànli. He was badly injured and is now in the hospital.

Zhòngliàng means "weight" (compare chǎnliàng, zhìliàng, shùliàng).

The opposite of zhòng is qīng, "to be light," which is introduced in No. 7, below.

6. A: Bú jiù shì Rìběn, xiànzài  
gèguó dōu hěn guānxīn  
Zhōngguó yánhǎide jīngjī  
jiànshè.

Not only Japan, all countries are  
now interested in the economic  
construction of China's coast.

B: Shì. Yǐjīng yǒu xǔduō guójiā  
xiǎng hé Zhōngguó yìqǐ zài  
nèi yídài chénglì xīnde  
gōngsī.

Yes, there are already many countries  
which are thinking of establishing  
new companies with China in that  
area.

Notes on No. 6

gèguó: "various countries" Gè-, "each and every," "various," is a specifier like zhèi-, "this," or nèi-, "that." You can prefix it to counters and to some nouns. Here are some examples:

Wǒmen zài quánquó gèdì cānguān  
yóulǎnle yíge yuè.

We visited and toured all over the  
country for one month. (Gèdì is  
"each place," "various places.")

Xiànzài gèrén zuò gèrénde, sì-  
diǎn zài kāi huì.

For now, everyone can do what they  
want. We will have the meeting  
at four. (Gèrén is "everybody.")

Gèwèi rúguǒ yǒu shénme wèntí,  
qǐng xiànzài tíchulai.

If you all have any questions, please  
bring them up now. (Gèwèi is a  
polite form of address for a group  
of people, e.g., an audience. -Wèi  
is the polite counter for people.)

Tāmen yòng gèzhǒng xiàndàihuàde  
jīqì.

They use all kinds of modern machines.  
(Gèzhǒng is "various kinds.")

When a gè- phrase is followed in the sentence by dōu, "all," it takes on the meaning "every," "all." Thus gèguó in sentence 6A is translated as "all countries."

guānxīn: "to be concerned about," "to care about," "to be interested in" the welfare of something.

Zhèrde lǎoshī hěn guānxīn xué-  
sheng.

The teachers here are very concerned  
about (care about) the students.

Tā hěn guānxīn kuàngqūde jiànshè,  
sānge yuèlǐ lái kànguó hǎo jǐ-  
cì.

He cares a great deal about the building  
up of the mining region; he came to  
see it many times in three months.

xǔduō: "many," "a great deal (of)," "lots (of)" This is a synonym of hěn duō, and used in the same ways.

chénglì: "to establish," "to found," "to set up"

Měiguó Diànhuà Diànbào Gōngsī  
shì nǎinián chénglìde?

In what year was AT&T established?

7. A: Tǐngshuō zhèige nóngyèqū yǐjīng yǒu lìliàng fāzhǎn gōngyè le. I hear that this agricultural area already has the capability to develop its industry.
- B: Jìn shínián lái, zhèige dìqū-de nóngyè shēngchǎn gāode bú cuò, shōurù bù shǎo, gāole yìdiǎnr qīng gōngyè. Over the past ten years, agricultural production in this area has been good and income has been high, so some light industry was set up.

Notes on No. 7

-qū: "area," "region," "district" This word, which you have already seen in dìqū, "area," "region," and in kuàngqū, "mining region," can combine with many other words, for example gōngyèqū, "industrial region," nóngyèqū, "agricultural region" or "farming region," shāngyèqū, "business district (of a city)," fēngjǐngqū, "scenic spot," shānqū, "mountainous district."

lìliàng: "power," "force," "strength" In 7A, this is translated idiomatically as "capability." Another example would be jīngjì lìliàng, "economic capability." Here are more examples (for the third one, you need to know tuánjié, "unity"):

Wǒmen de lìliàng bú gòu, méiyǒu bànfǎ bāngzhù nǐ. Our power is insufficient; there is no way we can help you.

Dǎ zìde shíhou, bù néng yòng tài dà lìliàng. When typing, one should not hit too hard.

Tuánjié jiù shì lìliàng. Unity is strength.

Shénme lìliàng yě bù néng bǎ wǒmen fēnkāi. No force can separate us.

jìn...lái: "during the last..."

Jìn sāntiān lái, Xiǎo Huá hǎoxiàng xīnlǐ hěn bù gāoxìng. For the last three days, Xiǎo Huá has seemed very unhappy.

Jìn jǐnián lái, tā biànhuà hěn dà. In recent years, she has changed a great deal.

Jìn bǎinián lái de Zhōngguó lìshǐ hěn yǒu yìsī. Chinese history of the past hundred years is very interesting.

qīng: "to be light" in weight

Xiāngzi bú zhòng, hěn qīng. The suitcase isn't heavy; it's light.

Qīng gōngyè gōngrén méiyǒu zhòng gōngyè gōngrende shōurù duō. Light industrial workers do not have as high wages as heavy industrial workers.

8. A: Tīngshuō èrshinián qián yǒu hěn duō niánqīng rén dào le nàige méiyǒu rén de qióng dìfang. I heard that twenty years ago a lot of young people came to that poor and unpopulated place.
- B: Shì a! Kěshì xiànzài zhèngfǔ kěyǐ fāngxīn le. Nàige dìfang yǐjīng suàn jiànshè de bú cuò le. Yes, but now the government need not worry anymore. That place can be considered to have been pretty well built up.

Notes on No. 8

èrshinián qián: Qián is a short form of yǐqián. You can often substitute qián for yǐqián when it comes at the end of a time phrase. Both words are commonly used in conversation and writing. More examples:

Wǒ lái Měiguó qián, shénme yě méi zhǔnbèi. Before I came to America, I didn't prepare anything.

Yíge yuè qián, zhèige dàlóu hái méi gǎiwán, xiànzài yǐjīng zhù rén le. A month ago, this building wasn't even finished yet, and now there are already people living in it.

qióng: "to be poor"

Qióng bú shì wèntí, lǎn cái shì wèntí. Being poor isn't a problem; it's being lazy that's a problem.

fāngxīn: "to be unworried," "to be at ease," "to put one's mind at ease" (literally, "put down the heart")

Nǐ bàn shì, wǒ fāngxīn. With you in charge (literally, "[If] you handle affairs"), I am at ease. (reportedly said by Máo Zédōng to Huà Guófēng before Máo died in 1976).

Nǐ fāngxīn hǎo le, wǒ huì xiǎng bànfade. Don't you worry. I'll think of a way.

Nǐ yíge rén qù, wǒ bú fāngxīn. I'll worry if you go alone.

suàn: "to be counted as," "to be considered as," "can be regarded as" This verb is used much more often than these English translations would seem to indicate. To really get the feel of what suàn means, you have to look at it in context. Here are some examples (the translations attempt to be idiomatic):

A: Hángzhōu suàn bu suan gōngyè chéngshì? Would you say that Hángzhōu is an industrial city?

B: Bú suàn, suàn yóulǎn chéngshì. No, it's a tourist city.

Zènme duō cài, sānshikuài qián bú suàn guǐ. Thirty dollars isn't expensive for so much food.

Nǐ děi zìjǐ huì shuō nǐ xiǎngde  
dōngxī cái suàn huì shuō  
Zhōngwén.

You have to be able to say what you  
want to say before you can be con-  
sidered to speak Chinese.

A: Tài xièxie le!

Thank you so much!

B: Nà suàn shénme! Péngyǒu ma!

It's nothing (literally, "What can that  
be considered")! We're friends,  
after all!

Fāzhǎn bǐjiào kuàide yào suàn  
méitàn gōngyè hé jīxiè gōngyè.

One would have to say the coal indus-  
try and the machine industry are  
the most rapidly developing  
industries.

Tiānjīn suīrán bú suàn zuì yǒu  
míngde chéngshì, dànshì měi-  
nián yě yǒu bù shǎo rén qù  
cānguān.

Although one would not call Tiānjīn  
a very famous city, quite a few  
people go there to visit every year.

Shuō zhèizhǒng huà hái suàn shì  
wàijiāoguān!

What kind of diplomat talks like that!  
(literally, "(In view of the fact  
that he) says such things, can he  
still be considered a diplomat?!)

Zhèi yě suàn Běijīng kǎoyā ma?  
bú duì ma!

They call this Peking duck? The  
flavor is all wrong!

Zài zhèi jǐge xuéshēnglǐ, tā hái  
suàn shì hǎode ne, kěshì dōu  
bú tài hǎo.

Of these students, I suppose he's  
the best, but none of them is  
very good.

9. A: Zǒngde lái shuō ba, zhèige  
chéngshìde biànhuà shì  
hěn dàde.

Generally speaking, the changes in  
this city have been great.

B: Shì a, zhàn zai shì zhōngxīn-  
de dàlóushang kànkan, wǒ  
dōu bú rènshí le!

Yes, standing on top of the build-  
ing in the center of the city,  
looking out, I don't recognize  
anything anymore!

### Notes on No. 9

zǒngde lái shuō: "generally speaking," "on the whole"

Zǒngde lái shuō, wǒmen xuéxiào  
xuéshēngde shuǐpíng dōu shì  
hěn gāode.

Generally speaking, our school's  
students are of a very high  
caliber.

Zǒngde lái shuō, nǐmende gōngzuò  
gāode bú cuò.

On the whole, you did a good  
job.

A similar phrase using the pattern ...lái shuō is yìbān lái shuō, which means

"generally speaking," "ordinarily":

Yìbān lái shuō, wǒ měige yuè qù  
kàn ta yíci. Generally speaking I go see him  
once a month.

Yìbān lái shuō, Huáshèngdùnde  
chūntiān hěn shūfu. Generally speaking, spring in Wash-  
ington is very comfortable.

Yìbān lái shuō, Zhōngguó rén  
zǒngshì hěn kèqì. Generally speaking, Chinese people  
are always polite.

ba: This is a new use of ba for you. It is used in colloquial speech to mark a pause in the sentence, setting off the topic which precedes it (in this case, zǒngde lái shuō).

Zhèige rén ba, bú shì zuò wài-  
jiāoguānde cáiliào. This guy--he isn't foreign service  
officer material.

biànhuà: "change(s)" This is only used as a noun.

Shínián bú jiàn, tā biànhuà hǎo  
dà. He hadn't seen her in ten years, and  
she had changed a great deal.

shì: "city," "municipality" Used mostly in reference to the official city level of government, e.g., Dàqīng shì, "the city of Dàqīng," Běijīng shì, "Běijīng municipality," shì bānde, "city-run," yánhǎi gèshěng, shì, "the coastal provinces and cities." Shì is also used in a few set phrases like shì zhōngxīn, "center of the city," "downtown."

zhōngxīn: "center," "heart," "core," "hub"

Běijīng shì Zhōngguóde zhèngzhì,  
wénhuà zhōngxīn. Běijīng is the political and  
cultural center of China.

Guǎngzhōu shì yíge shāngyè  
zhōngxīn. Guǎngzhōu is a commercial center.

Wǒmen hái méiyǒu tándào wèntíde  
zhōngxīn. We haven't yet touched on the  
core of the question.

Zhōngxīn can also be used before a noun to modify it. It then translates as "central":

Zhèixiē niánde zhōngxīn gōngzuò  
shì gāo jīngjī jiànshè. The central task now and in the  
coming years is to engage in  
economic construction.

10. A: Xūduō jīngjì lìliàng bǐjiǎo  
ruòde guójiā hěn gǎnxiè  
 Zhōngguóde bāngzhǔ. Many countries with relatively weak  
 economies are grateful for China's  
 help.
- B: Wǒmen yě shì yíge fāzhǎn  
 zhōngde guójiā, kěshì wǒ-  
 men hěn gāoxìng bāng qítā  
 guójiā gāo jīngjì jiànshè. We're still a developing country, too,  
 but we're happy to help other  
 countries in economic construction.

Notes on No. 10

ruò: "to be weak" (people or countries)

gǎnxiè: "to be grateful (for)"

Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ hěn gǎnxiè  
 wàiguó zhuānjiā duì Zhōngguó-  
 de bāngzhū. The Chinese government is very  
 grateful for the help foreign  
 experts give to China.

Tā fēicháng gǎnxiè péngyoumen  
 duì tāde guānxīn. He is very grateful for his friends'  
 concern.

Fēicháng gǎnxiè. Thank you so much. (formal)

bāng: (1) "to help, to assist" This is a less formal synonym of bāngzhū.

Bié jí, wǒ lái bāng nǐ. Take it easy, I'll help you.

(2) "for (someone)," "as a help to (someone)"

Nǐ qù bāng wǒ ná xìn, hǎo ma? Would you go get the mail for me,  
 please?

Bāng wǒ ná yíxià hǎo ma? Would you please hold this for me  
 a second?

In most cases, the context will clarify whether bāng is meant as "to help  
 someone do something" or as "to do something for someone," but ambiguity may  
 arise:

Tā bāng wǒ zuò fàn. She helps me cook.  
 OR She cooks for me.

Using yìqǐ, "together," can remove the ambiguity: Tā bāng wǒ yìqǐ zuò fàn  
 can only mean "She helps me cook," meaning that the two people make dinner  
 together; it could not possibly mean "She cooks for me."

qítā: "other," "else," "the rest"

Zhèixiē shū wǒ jiù kànle liǎng-  
 běn, qítā hái méi kàn. I've only read two of these books.  
 I haven't read the others yet.

Nǐ qù Shànghǎi, qítā rén ne? You're going to Shànghǎi; what about  
 the others?

Nǐ hái xiǎng qù shénme qítāde  
dìfang, wǒmen zài zuò ānpái.

If you want to go to any other places,  
we'll make more arrangements.

Chúle zhèige shì zhǔyào wèntí,  
qítā dōu méi guānxi.

Besides this, which is the main  
issue, the rest doesn't matter.

Wǒ zhǐ juéde bù hǎo yìsi, qítā  
méiyǒu shénme.

I just feel embarrassed, nothing  
else.



Unit 5, Review Dialogue

In the waiting room of Běijīng Railroad Station, an American engineer, Mr. Simms (A), is standing in front of the railroad map of China, trying to locate a city. Zhū Wényà (B) of the China Travel Service enters the room with a train schedule in her hand.

- B: Sāmǔsī Xiānsheng, nín yàode shí-  
jiānbǎo. Mr. Simms, the schedule you asked for.
- A: Ò, xièxie, xièxie. Yǒu Zhōngguó  
zì, yǒu pīnyīn, hǎojiē, nǐmende  
gōngzuò sùdù bǐ yǐqián kuàiduō le. Thank you, thank you. It has Chinese characters and Pinyin, that's great. You people are much faster on the job than you used to be.
- B: Lǚxíngshède gōngzuò yě děi xiān-  
dàihuà ma! Duì le, wǒ gāngcái jīn-  
laide shíhou, nín hǎoxiàng zài  
zhǎo shénme. Wǒ yěxǔ kéyǐ bāng  
nín zhǎoyizhǎo? The Travel Service has to modernize its work too, after all! Oh yes—just now when I came in, you seemed to be looking for something. Perhaps I could help you?
- A: Nǐ kàn, Dàqīng bú shì zài Hēi-  
lóngjiāng ma? Wǒ zěnmé zhǎole bàn-  
tiān méi zhǎodào ne? Look. Isn't Dàqīng in Hēilóngjiāng? How come I've been looking for it for so long and haven't found it?
- B: Ò, nín zài biānjīngshang zhǎo  
dāngrán zhǎobudào le, Dàqīng zài  
Hēilóngjiāngde zhōngxīn, zài zhèr  
ne! Oh, of course you won't find it if you look near the border. Dàqīng is in the center of Hēilóngjiāng. Here it is!
- A: Òu! Zài zhèr. Zài liùshí nián-  
dài, qīshí niándài, zhèr shì yíge  
bǐjiào tèbiéde jīngjī dìqū. Oh, here it is. In the sixties and seventies this was a rather special economic region.
- B: Nín shuōde duì. Zhèige dìfang  
jīngguòle chābuduō èrshínián  
jiànshè, fāzhǎchéngle yíge yǒu  
qīshíwàn rénǎokǒude gōngyè chéngshì.  
Bāshí niándài chū yǒu chénglìle  
Dàqīng Shì Rénmín Zhèngfǔ. That's right. It went through about twenty years of construction to develop into an industrial city of 700,000. Then in the early eighties they established the People's Government of the City of Dàqīng.
- A: Zài shì zhèngfǔde língdǎoxià,  
Dàqīngde jiànshè sùdù dàgài gèng  
kuài le. Zuìjìn qītiān de gōngyè yǒu  
méiyǒu shénme xīnde fāzhǎn? Under the leadership of the city government, Dàqīng is probably being built even faster. Has there also been growth in other industries recently?
- B: Fāzhǎn bǐjiào kuàide yào suàn  
méitàn gōngyè hé jīxiè gōngyè le. The coal industry and the machine industry would have to be counted among the more rapidly developing.
- A: Méitàn shēngchǎn zài Zhōngguóde  
zhòng gōngyèlǐ zhàn hěn zhòngyàode  
dìwei, Dōngběi yìzhí shì méitàn Coal production has a very important place in China's heavy industry. Manchuria has always had a very high

chǎnliàng hěn gāode dìqū.

coal output.

B: Duì, Dōngběi méitàn zīyuán bù shǎo, shì zhōngguóde kuàngqū. Sāmǔsī Xiānsheng, nín yìzhí hěn guānxīn wǒmende jīngjì jiànshè a!

Yes, Manchuria has very large coal reserves. It's an important mining region. You've always been concerned about our economic construction, Mr. Simms!

A: Shì a, wǒ shì gōngchéngshī, wǒ yìzhí fēicháng zhùyì Zhōngguó jīngjì jiànshède biànhuà, wǒ xīwàng Zhōngguó kuài yìdiǎnr jiànshèchéng yíge gōngyèhuàde guójiā.

Yes. I'm an engineer, and I've always paid attention to the changes in China's economic construction. I hope China will be built into an industrialized country very soon.

B: Xièxie nín. Xiànzài yǒu hěn duō wàiguo péngyou guānxīn wǒmende jiànshè, wǒmen shì fēicháng gǎnxiède. Zhōngguó hái shì yíge hěn qióngde guójiā, xūyào shǐjiè gèguó zhuānjiāmende bāngzhù.

Thank you. A lot of foreign friends are concerned about our construction now, and we're very grateful for it. China is still a poor country. We need help from experts of every country in the world.

A: Nín tài kèqì le, nǐmen gèfāngmiànde fāzhǎn sùdù hái shì xiāngdāng kuàide. Èrqiě, zhòngdiǎn fāzhǎnde dìqū yě bù shǎo, wǒ xiǎng, nǐmen yào zhòngdiǎn fāzhǎnde gōngyèqū qíma yǒu shíge.

You're too polite. You're still developing quite rapidly in all areas. And furthermore, you have quite a few key development regions. I believe there are at least ten industrial regions on which you are focusing development.

B: Shì, yǒu shíge.

Yes, there are ten.

A: Chule Běijīng, Tiānjīn, Shànghǎi, Dàqǐng yǐwài, Nèiměng, Shǎnxī, Sìchuān, zhèixiē dìfāng zài zuìjìn shíniǎnli dōu huì yǒu hěn dàde biànhuà, duì bu duì?

Besides Běijīng, Tiānjīn, Shànghǎi, and Dàqǐng, Inner Mongolia, Shǎnxī and Sìchuān will all experience great changes in the next ten years, don't you think?

B: Nín bié wàngle, wǒmende yánhǎi yídài, zuìjìn jǐniǎn jìnbù hěn kuài o! Tèbié shì Guǎngdōng.

Don't forget that our coastal regions have made rapid progress in the last ten years, especially Guǎngdōng.

A: Guǎngdōngde qīng gōngyè yìzhí shì bú huàide.

Guǎngdōng's light industry has always been pretty good.

B: Zuìjìn, nàrde shíyóu gōngyè yě gāode xiāngdāng bú cuò, nín méiyóu tīngshuō ma?

Recently, their petroleum industry has been doing rather well, haven't you heard?

A: Tīngshuō le. Wǒ zěnme huì wàngle Zhōngguó hǎiwānde shíyóu ne? Hǎi yǒu, Yúnnándè tèdiǎn shì shénme ne?

Oh, of course. How could I forget China's gulf oil? And what is the distinguishing feature of Yúnnán?

- B: Shi jīnshǔ gōngyè. The metal industry.
- A: Nǐ kànkàn, Zhōngguóde qīngkuàng bú cuò ma! Nánfāngde jīnshǔ gōngyè fāzhǎnde gèng kuài le. Look, China's situation is pretty. The metal industry of the south is developing even more quickly.
- A: Zhèi shì zhēnde. Suīrán wǒmen xiānzàide jīshù lìliang hái hěn ruò, kěshì wǒmen yídìng děi nǔlì jiākuài fāzhǎnde sùdù. That's true. Although our technical capability is still weak, we must work hard to speed our development.
- A: Méi wèntí, jīshínián yǐhòude Zhōngguó yídìng keyì biàncheng yíge jīngjì qiángguó. That's no problem. In a few decades I'm sure China will become an economic power.
- B: Xièxie nín, búguò yěxǔ xūyào gèng cháng yidiǎnrde shíjiān. Thank you, but perhaps it will take more time than that.
- A: Zhèi bù yídìng, yěxǔ bú yào tài chángde shíjiān. Bǐfāng shuō shíyóu ba! Yǐ jiǔ wǔ líng nián, nǐmende shíyóu chǎnliàng zài shìjièshàng zhàn dìèrshíjiǔwèi, xiānzài ne, xiānzài shì dìbāwèi la! Not necessarily, maybe it won't be too long. Oil, for example. In 1950 you were twenty-ninth in the world in oil production, and now--now you're in eighth place!
- B: Shíyóu gōngyè tèbié yidiǎnr, pǔbiānde lái shuō, wǒmen hái yǒu bù shǎo wèntí, zài xǔduō fāngmiàn wǒmen hái děi xué. The oil industry is a little special. Generally speaking, we still have a lot of problems. We still have to learn in a lot of areas.
- A: Bú yào kèqì, bù guǎn shì shénme jīshù wèntí, rúguǒ shì wǒ keyì bāng mángde jiù qǐng gàosu wǒ. Don't be polite. No matter what the technical problem, if it's something I can help with, please let me know.
- B: Tài xièxie nín le. Shàngcì nín bú shì shuō xiǎng duō cānguān jǐge gōngyèqū ma? Thank you so much. Remember you said last time that you would like to visit more industrial regions?
- A: Shì a, yǒu méiyǒu kěnéng? Right. Does it look possible?
- B: Yǒu, língdǎo zhèng zài ānpái. Nín fāngxiān ba! Yes, my superiors are arranging it right now. Don't worry!
- A: Tài xièxie nǐmen le. Thank you so much.
- B: Shíjiān bù zǎo le, wǒmen zhǔnbèi shàng chē ba! It's almost time. Let's get ready to board the train.
- A: Hǎo, zǒu! All right, let's go!

Unit 5, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, a Chinese engineer meets an American guest in the First Heavy-Duty Machine Factory in Fùlǎěrjī, Hēilóngjiāng.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

ràng nín jiǔ děng le	I've kept you waiting
zǒnggōngchéngshī	chief engineer
jiànli	to establish
Sūlián	Soviet Union
huā	to spend, to expend
chǎng	factory

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What does Mr. Sūn write about?
2. When was the factory founded?
3. How much money did the government spend on the factory?
4. When did Mr. Sūn work there?
5. What prediction does Mr. Sūn make about the factory?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

### Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American visitor talks to a young Chinese technician in his Běijīng Hotel room.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguó	the People's Republic of China
guómín jīngjì	national economy
gēnzhe	along with, in the wake of
jiù ná Sìchuān lǎi shuō	take Sìchuān, for example

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why did the American visitor want to talk to the Chinese technician?
2. How have light and heavy industry changed since 1949?
3. What is the policy with regard to agricultural modernization?
4. What economic problem did Sìchuān face in the seventies? Why?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

### Exercise 4

This dialogue takes place in Shànghǎi's Industrial Exhibition Hall. An American talks to an exhibit guide about light and textile industry.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

fǎngzhǐ gōngyè	textile industry
nílóng	nylon
huàxiān	synthetic fiber
nèidì	interior region (of a country)
Jiāngsū	(coastal province, formerly spelled Kiangsu)

Questions for Exercise 4

1. What does the the exhibit guide say about the development of the textile industry?
2. Where did China's light industry begin?
3. What industry has developed in Jiāngsū province?
4. What does the exhibit guide say will occur in the next few years?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

In the foreign visitors' reception room of the First Heavy-Duty Machine Factory in Fùlǎěrjī, Hēilóngjiāng, an American guest (A) is sitting on the sofa, leafing through a copy of the magazine China Reconstructs. A Chinese engineer (B) walks in, carrying a briefcase under his arm.

- B: Duìbuqǐ, duìbuqǐ, ràng nín jiù děng le.  
I'm sorry, I'm sorry, I've kept you waiting.
- A: Méi shenme, wǒ láile bú dào shí-fēn zhōng. Nǐ jiù shì Sūn Zǒng-gōngchéngshī ba?  
That's all right, I've been here less than ten minutes. You must be Chief Engineer Sūn?
- B: Wǒ jiù shì.  
That's right.
- A: Sūn Xiānsheng, hěn zǎo yǐqián wǒ jiù kànguo nín de wénzhāng, nín duì jīxiè gōngyè de yánjiū zài guówài shì hěn yǒu míngde. Jīntiān néng kàndào nín, kàndào nín de chǎng, wǒ hěn gāoxìng.  
Mr. Sūn, I read your writings a long time ago. Your research in the machine industry is very famous abroad. I'm very happy to be able to meet you today and see the factory.
- B: Xièxie nín. Zhèige chǎng shì wúshí niándài chū jiànli de.  
Thank you. This factory of ours was founded in the early fifties.
- A: Nà shì Xīn Zhōngguó chénglì yǐ-hòu bù jiǔ de shì.  
Then it wasn't too long after New China was established.
- B: Shìde, shì zài dìyíge wǔnián jīhuàzhōng jiànli de.  
Yes. It was set up during the first five-year plan.
- A: Shì Sūlián bāng nǐ men jiànshè de ma?  
Did the Soviet Union help you construct it?
- B: Bú shì, wánquán shì Zhōngguó rén-mín zìjǐ jiànshè de. Nèige shíhou zhèngfǔ yòngle liùge yì lái jiànshè zhèige chǎng.  
No, it was constructed completely by the Chinese people themselves. At that time the government spent six hundred million to construct this factory.
- A: Liùge yì?  
Six hundred million?
- B: Liù yì Rénmínbì. Nèige shíhou, wǒmen hěn qióng, Hēilóngjiāng yǒu shì yíge biānjiāng dìqū, wǒmen zhēn shì lián qīmǎ de jìshù tiáojiàn dōu méiyǒu. Kěshì zhèige chǎng jiù zài Dǎng de lǐngdǎo hé dàjiā de nǔlì xià, fāzhǎnqilai le.  
Six hundred million People's Currency. At that time we were very poor, and Hēilóngjiāng being a border region on top of that, we didn't even have the minimum technical conditions. But under the leadership of the Party and with the efforts of everyone, we are developing.

- A: Tǐngshuō zài wǔshí niándài hé liùshí niándài zhèige chǎng zài Zhōngguóde zhòng gōngyèlì zhàn hěn zhòngyàode dìwei. Nèige shíhou, nín zài zhèige chǎng ma?
- B: Zài. Cóng zhèige chǎng chénglìde nèi yìtiān yìzhí dào Yī jiǔ liù liù nián, wǒ dōu zài zhèige chǎng.
- A: Yǐhòu nín líkāi le?
- B: Shìde. Yìzhí dào Yī jiǔ qī qī nián wǒ cái huílai.
- A: Tǐngshuō nèige shíhou zhèige chǎngde máfan bù shǎo.
- B: Hēilóngjiāng suǐrán bú suàn máfan zuì duōde dìqū, dànshì Yī jiǔ qī qī niánde shíhou zhèige chǎngde shēngchǎn chàbuduō shì cóng líng kāishǐ.
- A: Nà yào huā hěn dàde lìliang.
- B: Yìdiǎnr yě bú cuò. Wǒmen huāle hěn dàde lìliang jiānshè kuāngqū, hé zhèige chǎng. Zài qítāde wèntíshàng wǒmen yě yǒngè bù shǎode lìliang.
- A: Shénmeyàngde wèntí ne?
- B: Dàjiāde shēnghuó wèntí, bǐfāng shuō zhǐ fān wèntí, zhù fángzide wèntí shenmede.
- A: Xiànzài zěnmeyàng le?
- B: Zǒngde lái shuō xiànzài dōu gāo-de bú cuò le. Wǒ xiǎng zài guò shínián, dào jiǔshí niándài, wǒmen zhèige chǎng huì zài quánguó gōngyè shēngchǎnzhōng zhàn gèng zhòngyàode dìwei.
- A: Hǎojíle.
- B: Xiànzài wǒ jiù péi nín qù cānguān ba, wǒmen yìbiān zǒu yìbiān tán, hǎo bu hǎo?
- A: Hǎo!
- I understand that in the fifties and sixties this factory held an important place in China's heavy industry. Were you here at that time?
- Yes. I was at this factory from the day it was established up until 1966.
- And then you left?
- Right. I didn't come back until 1977.
- I hear that at that time this factory had a lot of trouble.
- Hēilóngjiāng wasn't one of the regions with the most trouble, but in 1977 this factory had to start production just about from scratch.
- That must have taken a great effort.
- Absolutely. We put a lot of effort into building up mining areas and this factory. We also expended a lot of effort on other problems.
- What kinds of problems?
- Problems of everyday living, for example eating, housing, and so on.
- And how are things now?
- Generally speaking, things are pretty good now. I think in another ten years, by the nineties, our factory will occupy an even more important position in the nation's industrial production.
- That's great.
- Why don't I show you around now. We can talk as we go, all right?
- All right.



B: Qǐng.

After you.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American visitor (A) is reading in his room at the Běijīng Hotel when a young Chinese technician (B) who has been accompanying the American's tour group knocks at the door.

B: Kéyǐ jìnlai ma?

May I come in?

A: Qǐng jìn, kuài qǐng jìnlai zuò.

Come in, please come in and sit down.

B: Nín zhǎo wǒ yǒu shì?

Was there something in particular you wanted to see me about?

A: Yìdiǎnr xiǎo shì, wǒ xiǎng hé nǐ tántán. Wǒ kànle nǐmen zhèi-piān wénzhāng, tímu shì "Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguó de Sānshínián." Wǒ xiǎng jīngguòle zhèi sānshínián-de jiànshè, Zhōngguó jīngjì shuǐ-píng yǒule hěn dàde tígāo, biànhuà zhēnshì bù xiǎo.

Just a small matter I wanted to talk with you about. I've read that article of yours called "Thirty Years of the People's Republic of China." I think that after the last thirty years of construction, China's economic level has risen a great deal. The changes have been pretty big.

B: Biànhuà shì bù xiǎo, kěshì mùqián wǒmen de jīngjì lìliang hái shì bǐ xǔduō xiānjīn guójiā ruòde duō, hái yǒu hěn duō gōngzuò yào zuò.

The changes are big, but at present our economic power is still much weaker than many advanced countries. We still have a lot of work to do.

A: Wénzhānglǐ shuō, cǒng shēngchǎnshang kàn, Yī jiǔ sī jiǔ niǎnde qīng zhòng gōngyè zài guómín jīngjìlǐ zhǐ zhàn bǎifēnzhī sānshí, xiānzài yǐjīng zhàn bǎifēnzhī qīshíwǔ. Zhèiyang fāzhǎnxiàqù, nóngyè, qīng gōngyè, zhòng gōngyède guānxi zěnmeyàng ne?

In the article it says that from the point of view of production, in 1949 light and heavy industry only occupied thirty percent in the national economy, but now they occupy seventy-five percent. If things keep developing this way, what will happen to the relationship between agriculture, light industry, and heavy industry?

B: Zhèiyìdiǎn, wǒmen hěn fāngxīn. Xiānzài, gāohǎo Sìge Xiàndàihuà shì quán guó rénmin de zhōngxīn gōngzuò. Zài Sìge Xiàndàihuàlǐ, nóngyè xiàndàihuà shì dìyíjiàn dà shì.

We're not at all worried about that. Right now, doing a good job of the Four Modernizations is the central task of the people of the whole country. In the Four Modernizations, agricultural modernization is the first big job.

A: Zhèige zhèngcè shì duìde. Jìn jīnián lái nóngyè yǒule fāzhǎn, qīng gōngyè, zhòng gōngyè cái néng gēnzhe fāzhǎn. Nóngyè xiàndàihuà

That policy is right. It has only been because there has been development in agriculture in the last few years that light and heavy industry

shì yíge jīngjì qiángguó zuì qǐmǎ-de tiáojiàn.

have been able to develop along with it. Agricultural modernization is the minimum requirement for an economic power.

B: Shì a! Jiù nà Sìchuān lái shuō, zīyuán nàme duō, kěshì zài qīshí niándài, gōngyè shēngchǎn jiù shì shàngbùqǐ, hái bù shì yīnwèi nóng-yè shēngchǎn yǒu wèntí.

That's right. Take Sìchuān, for example. It's so full of resources, yet in the seventies, industrial production just couldn't go up: again, it was on account of problems with agricultural production.

A: Shì ma. Sìchuān rénǔ zài quán-guó zhàn dìyīwèi, zhǐ fàn wèntí shì ge dà wèntí.

Sure. The population of Sìchuān is in first place in the whole country. The food problem is a big one.

B: Jīn jīnián, Sìchuān qíngkuàng biànhuà hěn dà. Nín zhèicì yǒu jīhuì qù Sìchuān ma?

In recent years there have been big changes in the situation in Sìchuān. Will you have the chance to go to Sìchuān this trip?

A: Yǒu, nín ne, nín yǒu méiyǒu shíjiān qù?

Yes, and you? Do you have the time to go?

B: Lǐngdǎo hái méi shuō, búguò wǒ xiǎng dàgài yǒu jīhuì, cóngqián wǒ zài Sìchuān gōngzuòguo liǎngnián, yěxǔ wǒ kěyǐ gěi nimen jièshào jièshào.

The leadership hasn't said yet, but I think I'll probably have the chance. I once worked in Sìchuān for two years. Maybe I could fill you in on it.

B: Nà tài gǎnxiè le. Guānyú wǒ gāngcái kànde nàipiān wénzhāng, wǒ juéde hěn yǒu yìsi, búguò chángcháng yǒu xiǎode wèntí, děi máfan nimen.

We'd be so grateful if you could. About that article I just read: I find it very interesting, but I often have little questions I have to bother you with.

B: Méi wèntí, wǒ hěn gāoxìng hé nín duō tántan.

That's no problem. It's my pleasure to talk with you.

#### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

This conversation takes place in the Shànghǎi Industrial Exhibition Hall. An American (A) visiting the Hall of Light Industry and Textile Industry talks with one of the exhibit guides (B).

B: Nín hái yǒu shénme wèntí ma?

Do you have any more questions?

A: Yǒu yíge xiǎo wèntí. Shànghǎide jīqì fǎngzhī gōngyè shì shénme shíhòu kāishǐde?

I have one small question. When did Shànghǎi's machine textile industry first come into being?

B: Hěn zǎo yǐqián jiù yǒule.

It started a long time ago.

A: Nàme, zhème duō nián lái, zài jìshù fāngmiàn de fāzhǎn shì bu shì hěn kuài ne?

Well, over all these years, has the technological development been very rapid?

B: Wǒ xiǎng chuántǒng fāngzhī gōng-yè fāzhǎn de bú màn, kěshì nǐlóng, huàxiān yǐlèide, fāzhǎn de bú gòu kuài.

I'd say the traditional textile industry has developed rather rapidly, but such things as nylon and synthetic fibers haven't developed fast enough.

A: Wǒ tīngshuō, Zhōngguó de qīng gōngyè guòqù dōu zài yánhǎi, xiàng Tiānjīn, Shànghǎi, Guǎngdōng yídài. Xiànzài nèidì de qīngxíng shì bu shì biànhuà yě hěn dà le ne?

I understand that China's light industry used to be all on the coast, for example in the region of Tiānjīn, Shànghǎi, and Guǎngdōng. Has the situation in the interior also changed a great deal now?

A: Shìde, gèdì qīngkuàng bù tóng, búguò yǒu yíge qīngkuàng shì gèdì dōu yǒude.

Yes. The situation differs from place to place, but there's one thing that's the same everywhere.

A: Shénme qīngkuàng?

What's that?

B: Cóngqián shì nóngyèqū de dìfang, xiànzài yǒu hěn duō dōu fāzhǎn-qilai le, yǒule qīng gōngyè, yǒude hái yǒule zhòng gōngyè.

A lot of places that used to be agricultural regions have now started to develop, and have light industry, or even heavy industry.

A: Shì a! Jiāngsū yě shì yíyàng ma, dàde jīnshǔ gōngyè yě fāzhǎnqilai le.

Yes! Jiāngsū is the same. A large metal industry has developed there.

B: Zài guò jǐnián hǎiwān shíyóu gōngyè dà fāzhǎn, Shànghǎi, Tiānjīn, Guǎngdōng, Guǎngxī yídài jiù gèng rènao le.

In another few years the gulf oil industry will develop greatly. Then Shànghǎi, Tiānjīn, Guǎngdōng, and Guǎngxī will be even busier.

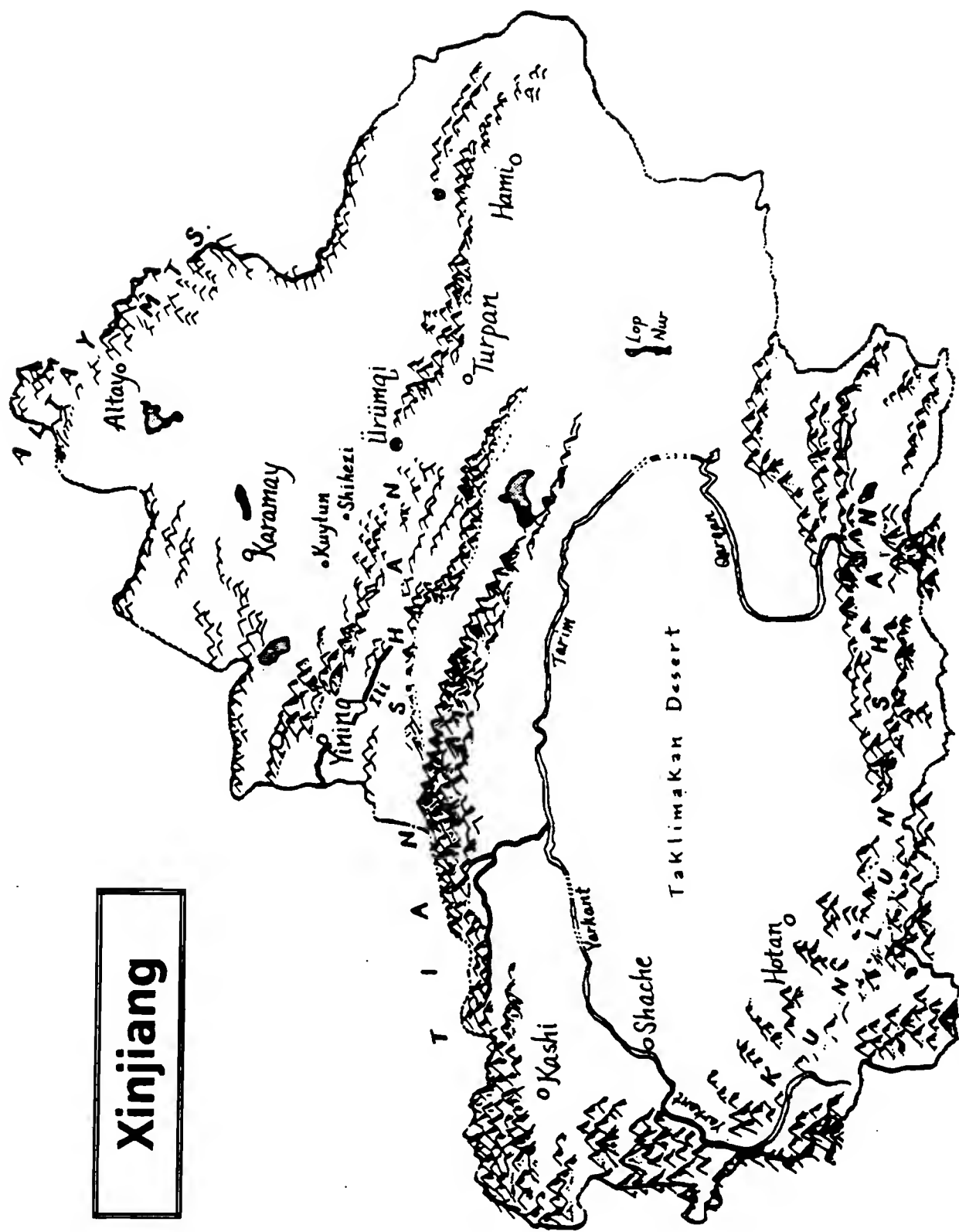
A: Zhēnde, dào nèige shíhou, Shànghǎi jiù gèng piàoliang le. Wǒ yíding yào zài lái cānguān.

Really, when that time comes, Shànghǎi will be even prettier. I have to come back to visit it again.

B: Hǎo a! Huānyíng nín zài lái!

Fine! You'll be most welcome!

# Xinjiang



Unit 6, Reference List

1. A: Hànyǔ hěn fùzá, xuéqilai  
dàgài hěn nán?!

Chinese is very complicated. It must be very difficult to study?!

B: Fàngxīn ba! Wǒ xiāngxìn  
nǐ kéyǐ xuéde hěn hǎo.

Don't worry! I'm convinced you can learn it very well.

2. A: Zhōngdōngde Yísīlánjiào hé  
Xīnjiāngde Yísīlánjiào  
shì bu shì hěn bù yíyàng?

Is the Islam of the Middle East very different from the Islam of Xīnjiāng?

B: Zhèi shì yíge xiāngdāng  
fùzáde wèntí, wǒmen kéyǐ  
tǎolùn tǎolùn.

This is a very difficult question. We can discuss it.

3. A: Xīnjiāng hé nèidì shì  
shénme shíhou tǒngyīde?

When was Xīnjiāng united with the interior?

B: Ng...dìyíci tǒngyī chābuduō  
shì gōngyuán qián liùshí-  
niǎnde shíhou.

Uh...the first time they were unified was in about 60 B.C.

4. A: Jiěfàng Zhànzhēngde shíhou,  
Jiěfàngjūn jiěfàngle  
Xīnjiāng, shì bu shì?

During the War of Liberation, the PLA liberated Xīnjiāng, right?

B: Xīnjiāng shì héping jiěfàng-  
de, Jiěfàngjūn shì sìjiǔ-  
nián dào Xīnjiāng qùde.

Xīnjiāng was peacefully liberated. The PLA went to Xīnjiāng in 1949.\*

5. A: Wǔge zìzhìqūde shēnghuó  
qíngkuàng hé nèidì chà  
hěn duō ma?

Are living conditions in the five autonomous regions very different from those in the interior?

B: Ng, zhǔyào shì jiāotōng bù  
fāngbiàn. Biéde shēnghuó  
fāngmian me, yě chà  
yídiǎnr.

Well, it's mainly that transportation is difficult. As for other aspects of daily life, they're somewhat below standard too.

6. A: Tāmen shì dào Shànghǎi qù  
chū chāi ma?

Did they go to Shànghǎi on business?

B: Bù, bú shì fàng jià le ma?  
Yǒude gānbude jiā zài  
Shànghǎi, tāmen huí jiā  
qù kànkàn.

No. We're on vacation now, remember? Some of the cadres' families are in Shànghǎi, so they went home to visit.

\*The tapes for this unit incorrectly give the date as 1950. The PLA entered Xīnjiāng in October 1949, and the whole province was "liberated" by April 1950.

7. A: Tz! Zhèitiáo dītǎn zhēn měi! Shì Wéiwúěr dītǎn ma? Ah! This carpet is just beautiful! Is it a Uygur carpet?
- B: Shì. Jiù shì zài nǐ zuótiān cānguānde nèige gōngchǎng zuòde. Yes. It was made in the factory you visited yesterday.
8. A: Nǐ kàn, tiān gāng liàng, Wéiwúěr nóngmín jiù kāishǐ gōngzuò le. Look, it just got light and the Uygur peasants have already started to work.
- B: Gèzú rénmin dōu zài dà gāo shèhuìzhǔyì ma! Sure, the people of all nationalities are going all out with socialism!
9. A: Tīngshuō jǐwèi gōngren jiāo gěi zhèngfǔ jǐběn hěn lǎode shū, nimen kànguo le ma? I hear that some workers handed a few very old books over to the government. Have you seen them?
- B: Kànguo le. Dōu shì guānyú zhōngzú wèntí, lìshǐ wèntíde, hěn yǒu yìsi. Yes. They're about racial and historical problems. They're very interesting.
10. A: Zhèige dìqūde xùnyè nàme fādá! This region's livestock farming is so well developed!
- B: Suóyǐ wǒmen zài zhèr bànle hǎojǐge dītǎnchǎng. That's why we've set up a lot of carpet factories here.
11. A: Nǐmende wénzì nàme nán! Gāo wénhuà jiāoliú duō bù róngyì. Your system of writing is so hard! It makes cultural exchange so difficult!
- B: Shéi shuōde, wǒmende wénzì bú shì zài gǎi ma? Yuè gǎi yuè jiǎndān ma! Says who! Aren't we changing our writing? The more we change it the simpler it is.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on tape)

12. biānjiāng border area; borderland; frontier; frontier region

Unit 6, Vocabulary List

biānjiāng	border area; borderland; drontier; frontier region
chà	to differ; to be inferior, to be poor, to be not up to standard
chǎng	factory, plant
chū chāi	to go away on business
fàng jià	to have vacation
fùzá (fǔzá)	to be complicated
gānbu	cadre
gōngchǎng	factory, mill, plant, works
gōngren	worker
gōngyuán	the common era; A.D.
gōngyuánhòu	A.D.
gōngyuánqián	B.C.
Hànyǔ	the Chinese language
héping	peace; to be peaceful
jiāo	to hand over, to give
-jiào	religion, church (bound form)
jiāoliú	to exchange; exchange
jiāotōng	traffic; transportation; travel
Jiěfàngjūn	(People's) Liberation Army, P.L.A.
liàng	to be light, to be bright
me (ma)	(pause marker)
měi	to be beautiful
nèidí	interior (of a country)
nóngmín	peasant
shāmò	desert
tǎolùn	to discuss
tiān liàng	daybreak, dawn; to become light
tōngyī	to unite, to unify
Tz!	Tsk (clicking sound with several different uses: disappointment, admiration, hesitation, etc.)
Wéiwú'ěr	the Uygur (Uighur) nationality
wénzì	writing, script
xiāngxìn	to believe (in); to trust, to be convinced (that)
xùnyè	livestock farming, animal husbandry
Yísilánjiào	the Islamic religion, Islam

zhànzhēng  
Zhèjiāng (Zhéjiāng)

Zhōngdōng

zhǒngzú

-zhǔyì

zìzhìqū

-zú

war

(province in eastern China,  
formerly spelled Chekiang)  
the Middle East

race

-ism, principle (bound form)

autonomous region

nationality (bound form)



Unit 6, Reference Notes

1. A: Hànyǔ hěn fùzá, xuéqilai dāgài hěn nán?! Chinese is very complicated. It must be very difficult to study?!
- B: Fàngxīn ba! Wǒ xiāngxìn nǐ keyi xuéde hěn hǎo. Don't worry! I'm convinced you can learn it very well.

Notes on No. 1

Hànyǔ: "Chinese language" This is more formal than Zhōngwén.

Shuō Zhōngguó huà bú tài nán, kěshì yào xuéhǎo Hànyǔ jiu bǐjiǎo nán le. It isn't too hard to speak Chinese, but if you want to master the Chinese language, it is more difficult.

Wǒ liǎngdiǎn zhōng yǒu Hànyǔ kè. I have Chinese class at two.

fùzá: "to be complicated, to be complex" Also pronounced fùzá.

Nà shì yíge fùzáde wèntí. That's a complicated question.

xiāngxìn: (1) "to believe in, to have faith in"

Tā xiāngxìn yíge hěn qíguài de zōngjiào. He believes in a very strange religion.

Wǒ bù xiāngxìn! I don't believe it!

Yǐqián rénmen bù xiāngxìn zhèi-zhǒng shuōfǎ, xiànzài xiāngxìn le. People didn't used to believe in this explanation, but now they do.

(2) (as used in 1B) "to be convinced, to be certain, to trust that..."

Wǒ xiāngxìn tā yíding zuòde hǎo. I'm certain that he will do a good job.

2. A: Zhōngdōngde Yísilánjiào hé Xīnjiāngde Yísilánjiào shì bu shì hěn bù yíyàng? Is the Islam of the Middle East very different from the Islam of Xinjiang?
- B: Zhèi shì yíge xiāngdāng fùzáde wèntí, wǒmen keyi tǎolùn tǎolùn. This is a very difficult question. We can discuss it.

Notes on No. 2

Zhōngdōng: "the Middle East"

Zhōngdōng dìqū yǒu hǎn duō  
guójiā dōu dúlì le.

The Middle East region has many  
countries which have become  
independent.

Yisilánjiào: "Islam" -Jiào, "religion," goes on the end of words for  
different religions. The following examples are for comparison, not for  
memorization:

Tiānzhǔjiào  
("heaven-lord-religion")  
Xīnjiào ("New-religion")  
Yóutāijiào  
Fójiào  
Dàojiào

Catholicism  
Protestantism  
Judaism  
Buddhism  
Taoism (the popular religion, not  
the philosophy)

Xīnjiāng: The Xīnjiāng Uygur Autonomous Region, formerly known as  
Sinkiang or Chinese Turkestan, is China's westernmost area. The largest  
of the country's autonomous regions and provinces, Xīnjiāng makes up one  
sixth of China's total area. In this vast land of great natural beauty and  
sharp geographical contrasts, plentiful resources make conditions ideal for  
the development of industry, agriculture, and livestock farming.

Xīnjiāng has held an important place in China's politics and economy  
since ancient times. In the days before the large-scale navigation of the  
seas, Xīnjiāng was crossed by the famous "Silk Road," by which economic and  
cultural ties were maintained between China and other Asian and European  
countries. During the Western Hān period over two thousand years ago, incur-  
sions by the Xiōngnú (Hsiungnu) led the Chinese central government to a pol-  
icy of occupying the oasis cities of southern Xīnjiāng as garrison posts.  
Xīnjiāng has been intimately connected with China ever since that time,  
although their relations have often been turbulent. The Qīng dynasty made a  
province of Xīnjiāng (the name means "the New Dominion") in 1884. From the  
Chinese revolution in 1911 until 1949, Xīnjiāng remained under authoritarian  
Chinese control at the same time that local nationalist forces were also at  
work. Communist Chinese forces "liberated" Xīnjiāng from late 1949 until  
the spring of 1950. Xīnjiāng became an autonomous region on October 1, 1955.

Xīnjiāng is surrounded by mountains: the Altay in the north; the Kunlun  
in the south and west; and the Tianshan Range, over 200 kilometers wide, which  
cuts across the center from east to west. Between these mountain ranges are  
basins of varying sizes. Southern Xīnjiāng has the Tarim Basin and northern  
Xīnjiāng the Dzungarian Basin. In addition there are smaller basins such as  
the Hami and Turfan Basins. All are well-suited to agriculture and livestock  
farming. Xīnjiāng fine-wool sheep and Yǐlí horses are famous throughout  
China. Despite a harsh seven-month winter, the north has its herdsmen who  
put their horses and sheep to graze on the wide grasslands for the brief  
summer. In the arid south, too, livestock herding is a major occupation.  
In agricultural areas, the dry climate makes irrigation indispensable; a full  
ninety percent of Xīnjiāng's farmland is irrigated. The areas around Turpan  
and Hami are famous for their "karez" (kǎnrjǐng) irrigation, a system for  
conveying water from sources under mountain slopes to farmland by means of  
man-made underground channels. Crops include winter and spring wheat, cotton,

corn, rice and silkworms. But Xīnjiāng is most celebrated for its fruits--cantaloupe melons (hāmiguā) from Shànshàn and seedless grapes from Turpan are available in season in Běijīng's markets. The Tiānshān and Altay Mountains, covered with evergreen forests, are rich in wildlife and in precious herbs which go into the making of Chinese medicines. Xīnjiāng has important deposits of petroleum (especially at Karamay [Kèlāmǎyī]), coal, iron, gold, jade, and uranium (in the Altay Mountains). The main industries are petroleum, metallurgy, coal, electric power, chemicals, construction materials, textiles, and sugar refining.

About half the population of Xīnjiāng is of the Uygur (Uighur) nationality (see the note on Wēiwúěr, "Uygur," under number 7), and over forty percent are Hànn Chinese. The rest of the population belongs to one of these ethnic groups: Kazak (Kazakh), Hui (Chinese Moslem), Mongol, Kergez (Kirghiz), Xibo (Sibo), Tajik (Tadzhik), Uzbek, Manchu, Daur (Tahur), and Tartar (Tatar). There are also several hundred Russians. In the north of Xīnjiāng there is a Hànn majority, and in the south, a Uygur majority. The capital Ūrūmqi (Wūlūmqí), with a population of 800,000 (1980, est.), is the region's center for industry, commerce, and transportation. Xīnjiāng University in Ūrūmqi has departments of Chinese, government, history, foreign languages, math, physics, chemistry, biology, and geography. Kashgar (Chinese Kāshí), ancient gateway of the silk trade, is still a commercial and craft center. Kuldja (Chinese Yīníng) is a commercial center which produces leather and tobacco, and also has metallurgical and textile industry. Other cities of note are Kuytun (Chinese Kuītún), Hotan (Hétián), Shíhézi, and Yarkand (Shāchē).

tǎolùn: A verb, "to discuss," or a noun, "discussion."

Rénmen chángcháng tǎolùn shì-  
jièshang yìxiē yǒu yìside  
wèntí, kěshì shéi yě bù zhī-  
dào zhèizhǒng tǎolùn yǒu  
shénme yòng.

People often discuss some very interesting questions about the world, but no one knows of what use this kind of discussion is.

Nèige rén bú ài shuō huà,  
cónglái bù cānjiā tǎolùn.

That person doesn't like to talk.  
He never takes part in discussion.

Tǎolùnhuì ("discussion-meeting") is a "symposium."

3. A: Xīnjiāng hé nèidì shì  
shénme shíhòu tǒngyīde?

When was Xīnjiāng united with the interior?

B: Ng...dìyīcì tǒngyī chàbudoō  
shì gōngyuán qián liùshí-  
niánde shíhòu.

Uh...the first time they were unified was in about 60 B.C.

### Notes on No. 3

nèidì: "the interior" of a country; modifying a noun, nèidì can be translated as "inland." e.g., nèidì chéngshì, "inland city."

From the point of view of Xīnjiāng, a border region, nèidì refers to China proper; but from the point of view of Běijīng, Shànghǎi, or Guǎngzhōu,

nèidì refers to inland regions such as Sìchuān.

Zhōngguó dàbùfēn nèidì chéng-  
shìde gōngyè méiyǒu yánhǎi  
chéngshìde nàme fādá.

In most inland cities of China,  
industry is not as developed as  
in the coastal cities.

tōngyī: As a process verb, "to become united":

Yuènnán xiànzài tōngyī le.

Vietnam has now been united.

As an action verb, "to unite, to unify, to integrate":

Qín Shǐhuáng tōngyīle Zhōngguó.

Qín Shǐhuáng united China.\*

gōngyuán and gōngyuán qián: "A.D." and "B.C." Literally, gōngyuán is  
"common era" and gōngyuán qián "before the common era."

gōngyuán qián èrbǎièrshìèrnián

222 B.C.

gōngyuán sìbǎisānshíliùnián

A.D. 436

gōngyuán chū

the beginning of the Christian era

4. A: Jiěfàng Zhànzhēngde shíhou,  
Jiěfàngjūn jiěfàngle  
Xīnjiāng, shì bu shì?

During the War of Liberation,  
the PLA liberated Xīnjiāng,  
right?

B: Xīnjiāng shì héping jiěfàng-  
de, Jiěfàngjūn shì sījiǔ-  
nián dào Xīnjiāng qùde.

Xīnjiāng was peacefully liberated.  
The PLA went to Xīnjiāng in  
1949.

#### Notes on No. 4

Jiěfàngjūn: "the Liberation Army," short for Zhōngguó Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn,  
the Chinese People's Liberation Army, which in English is usually called the  
PLA.

héping: "peace" (For the first example, you need to know yǔ, a formal  
word for "and.")

Zhànzhēng yǔ Héping shì yíběn  
hěn hǎode xiǎoshuō.

War and Peace is a very good novel.

Shìjiè hépingde wèntí shì gèguó  
rénmín guānxīnde wèntí.

World peace is a question of concern  
to the people of all nations.

In some idioms, héping can be used to modify a noun or a verb. Héping jiěfàng,  
"peacefully liberate," is an example.

---

\*In 221 B.C.

5. A: Wǔge zìzhìqūde shēnghuó qíngkuàng hé nèidì chà hēn duō ma?

Are living conditions in the five autonomous regions very different from those in the interior?

B: Ng, zhǔyào shì jiāotōng bù fāngbiàn. Biéde shēnghuó fāngmian me, yě chà yídiǎnr.

Well, it's mainly that transportation is difficult. As for other aspects of daily life, they're somewhat below standard too.

Notes on No. 5

zìzhìqū: "autonomous region"

Zhōngguó dàlù yǒu wǔge zìzhìqū.

The Chinese mainland has five autonomous regions.

Zìzhìqūde rénmin dàbùfen shì shǎoshù mínzú.

The people of the autonomous regions are mostly minority nationalities.

chà: (1) (as used in 5A) "to differ," as in

Běijīng shíjiān gēn Niǔ Yuē shíjiān chà shí sānge zhōngtóu.

Běijīng time and New York time differ by thirteen hours.

(2) (as used in 5B) "to be inferior, to be poor, to be not up to standard":

Wǒde Hànyǔ fāyīn bǐ tāde fāyīn chà yídiǎn.

My Chinese pronunciation is a little worse than his.

Zhìliàng chà yídiǎn, bú shì wǒmende zérèn.

It's not our responsibility that the quality is inferior.

Nèige dìfāngde qíngkuàng bǐ zhèr chàde duō.

Conditions in that place are much worse than here.

Wǒmende gōngzuò hái chàde yuǎn ne.

Our work is a long way from what it should be.

(3) "to lack"

Bú gòu, hái chà sānge.

There aren't enough. There are still three too few.

\*The five autonomous regions (AR) are

Nèiměnggǔ Zìzhìqū

the Inner Mongolia (or Nei Monggol) AR

Níngxià Huízú Zìzhìqū

the Níngxià Huí AR

Xīnjiāng Wéiwú'ěr Zìzhìqū

the Xīnjiāng Uygur AR

Guǎngxī Zhuàngzú Zìzhìqū

the Guǎngxī Zhuàng AR

Xīzàng Zìzhìqū

the Tibet AR

jiāotōng: "traffic," "transportation"

Zhèlǐde jiāotōng bù ānquán,  
qìchē tài duō, kāide tài  
kuài.

The traffic here isn't safe. There  
are too many cars, and they go  
too fast.

Qǐng nǐ zhǎo yíge jiāotōng  
jǐngchá lái.

Please go get a traffic officer.

zhǔyào shì...: "it's mainly that..." or "it's mainly because..."

Zhǔyào shì Zhōngguóde lǐngdǎo  
rén bù dǒng jīngjì, gōngyè  
fāzhǎn cái nǎme màn.

It's mainly because China's leaders  
do not understand economics that  
industrial development has been  
so slow.

me (also pronounced ma): "as for," "...well,..." This colloquial word marks a pause and sets off the topic of a sentence. It is often used when the speaker is hesitating about exactly what to comment on the topic.

Tā zài wénxué fāngmiàn me...  
kéyǐ shuō hěn bú cuò, kěshì  
shùxué fāngmiàn kě zhēn chà.

In the area of literature...he can  
be said to be quite good, but he's  
really poor in mathematics.

Zhōngguóde zhòng gōngyè jiànshè  
me...zhèi jǐnián hái suàn  
kéyǐ le.

As for China's heavy industrial  
construction...it has not been  
too bad the past few years.

Rúguǒ tā bú yuànyì me, nà jiù  
suàn le.

If he's unwilling, well, then let the  
matter drop.

6. A: Tāmen shì dào Shànghǎi qù  
chū chāi ma?

Did they go to Shànghǎi on  
business?

B: Bù, bú shì fàng jià le ma?  
Yǒude gānbude jiā zài  
Shànghǎi, tāmen huí jiā  
qù kànkan.

No. We're on vacation now,  
remember? Some of the cadres'  
families are in Shànghǎi, so  
they went home to visit.

# Notes on No. 6

chū chāi: "to go/be away on official business" (For this example, you need to know Sū-Háng, an abbreviation for Sūzhōu and Hángzhōu.)

Dàjiā dōu xǐhuan chū chāi qù  
Sū-Háng yí dài, kéyǐ duō yíxiē  
jīhuì yóulǎn.

Everyone likes to go on business to  
the Sūzhōu-Hángzhōu region, (because)  
one can have more opportunities to  
do sightseeing.

fàng jià: "to let out for vacation" or "to have vacation, to be on vacation" Here are examples of the first meaning:

Nǐmen xuéxiào nǎitiān fàng jià?      What day does your school let out for vacation?

Fàng jià le, nǐ zěme hái qù shàng bǎn?      Vacation has started; why are you still going to work?

Here are examples referring to the state of being on vacation:

Zhèige líbài wǒmen zài fàng jià ne.      This week we are on vacation.

Fàng jiàde shíhou wǒmen cái néng zài yìqǐ.      We can only be together when we are on vacation.

The length of time the vacation lasts is expressed by a time phrase modifying the object jià:

Qùnián wǒmen fàngle sānge lǐ-bàide jià, jīnnián zhǐ fàng liǎngge líbài.      Last year we had three weeks of vacation, but this year we only have two weeks.

Shíyuè yīhào, xuéxiào fàng yìtiān jià.      Schools have one day of vacation on October 1.

bú shi...ma?: This has both a literal and a rhetorical use. In 6B you see the rhetorical use.

(1) Literal use: "isn't...?, don't...?", etc.

(2) Rhetorical use: "you know, you will recall, remember" Use this to remind the listener of a fact you know he is aware of (although he may have forgotten it).

Contrast the literal and rhetorical use of this pattern:

LITERAL:	Nǐ bú shi yǒu yíge mèimei zài Shànghǎi ma?	Don't you have a younger sister in Shànghǎi? (CHECKING INFORMATION)
RHETORICAL:	Wǒ bú shi yǒu yíge mèimei zài Shànghǎi ma?	You'll recall that I have a younger sister in Shànghǎi. (REMINDING)

Further examples:

(LITERAL)

Nǐ bú shi shuō yào qù ma? Zěme yǒu bú qù le ne?      Didn't you say you were going to go? How come you aren't going now?

(RHETORICAL)

Wǒ bú shi yǐjīng xiěwánle ma? Wèishénme hái ràng wo xiě?      I've finished writing it, you know. Why do you still want me to write?

Wǒ bú shì gēn nǐ shuōguo ma?  
Wǒ xiǎowǔ yào kāi huì, méi  
shíjiān.

Haven't I told you? I have a meeting  
this afternoon and don't have time.

Xiàle diàntī, wǎng yòu zǒu, bú  
shì yǒu ge cāntīng ma? Wǒmen  
jiù zài nàr jiàn miàn, hǎo  
bu hǎo?

When you get off the elevator and go  
to the right, there's a restaurant,  
you know? We'll meet there, okay?

Bú shì ma? may also be put onto the end of a sentence:

Wǒmen fàng jià le, bú shì ma?

We're on vacation, remember?

7. A: Tz! Zhèitíáo dītǎn zhēn  
měi! Shì Wéiwúěr dītǎn ma?

Ah! This carpet is just beauti-  
ful! Is it a Uygur carpet?

B: Shì. Jiù shì zài nǐ zuótiān  
cānguānde nèige gōngchǎng  
zuòde.

Yes. It was made in the factory  
you visited yesterday.

### Notes on No. 7

Tz!: This sound is just like the clicking of the tongue sometimes written in English as "Tsk." As in English, it can be used to express disappointment or chiding, but in Chinese it can also be used to express admiration, as when describing a beautiful house, a dish of food, or a smartly dressed person.

měi: "to be beautiful"

Xià dà xuě le, nǐ kàn wàibian  
duó měi.

It has snowed a lot. Look at how  
beautiful it is outside.

Zhàopiànshang tā zhēn měi.

She looks beautiful in the photograph.

Wéiwúěr: The Uygur, or Uighur, a Turkic people who, with a population of six million, constitute one of China's largest national minorities. Their early history, like that of other peoples of central Asia, is unrecorded. Some scholars have hypothesized that their origins were Indo-European rather than Turkic. At any rate, they emerge into the light of history in the Táng dynasty. At that time, they were a nomadic people well known to the Chinese; in fact, they helped the Táng overthrow a hostile Turkic empire in Mongolia in 744. The Uygurs, in turn, established an empire in the area, but this lasted only until 840, when the wild Kerkez sacked their capital and killed their khan. A portion of their population then migrated westward to the oases of the Tarim Basin. There, they mixed with the local Turkic population, and although the Uygur racial strain dominated, they adopted the Turkic language and no longer called themselves Uygurs. Gradually, their occupation shifted from nomadic herding to farming. The resulting stability allowed a great development in their literature and arts, especially song and dance. In the tenth century, closer contact with merchants, travelers, and settlers from the Middle East stimulated their conversion to Islam, a process which took several centuries to complete.



Modern times have witnessed the emergence of Uyghur nationalism, reflected in their official readoption of the historical name "Uyghur" earlier in this century. Uyghur leaders have often resisted control by outside powers, and even attempted to establish an independent republic in the region. Under Chinese authority today, the Uyghurs, who remain for the most part a farming people living and marrying within the village unit, have a limited degree of regional autonomy and are guaranteed cultural freedom and linguistic rights by the PRC Constitution.

8. A: Nǐ kàn, tiān gāng liàng,  
Wéiwúěr nóngmín jiù kāishǐ  
gōngzuò le. Look, it just got light and the  
Uyghur peasants have already  
started to work.
- B: Gèzú rénmin dōu zài dà gǎo  
shèhuìzhǔyì ma! Sure, the people of all national-  
ities are going all out with  
socialism!

Notes on No. 8

liàng: "to be bright, to be light" or "to be shiny"

Zhèige dēng bú liàng le. This light won't go on.

Nǐde xīn chēzi zhēn liàng a! Your new car is really shiny!

Tiān liàng means "to get light out" or "daybreak, dawn":

Tiān liàng yǐhòu, jiēshang jiù  
rè'naoqilai le. After it got light out, the streets  
started to liven up.

Tiān liàng yǐqián néng dào ma? Can we get there before dawn?

gāng...jiù...: "just (hardly)...and already..."

Tā gāng dàxué bìyè jiù dào  
Xībēi qù le. He went to the Northwest when he  
had just graduated from college.

Zhèige háizi gāng lái Měiguó  
sānge yuè, jiù huì shuō bù  
shǎo Yīngwén le. It has been barely three months  
since this child came to the U.S.,  
and already she can speak a lot  
of English.

Zhèige xuéqī gāng kāishǐ, wǒmen  
jiù juéde hǎoxiàng guòle hěn  
cháng shíjiān le. The semester had barely started when  
we felt as if a long time had  
already passed.

nóngmín: "peasant," as contrasted with non-ideological terms like nóngfū,  
"farmer," or nóngyè gōngren, "agricultural worker."

Zhōngguóde nóngmín zhàn quānguó  
rénkǒude bǎifēnzhī bāshí. China's peasants make up 80 percent  
of the population of the whole  
country.

-zú: "nationality," as in Wéiwú'ěrzú, "the Uygur nationality," Hànzú, "the Han nationality," Měnggǔzú, "the Monggol (Mongolian) nationality."

-zhǔyì: "doctrine" or "-ism," as in Gòngchǎnzhǔyì, "Communism"; hépingzhǔyì, "pacifism"; mínzúzhǔyì, "nationalism"; Dǎiwénzhǔyì, "Darwinism."

dà gǎo shèhuìzhǔyì: "go all out with socialism; engage in socialism in a big way" The adjectival verb dà, "to be large," is used here as an adverb. [Adverbs modify verbs or other adverbs.] When so used, it means "in a big way" or "go all out with (doing something)":

Jiēhūnde shíhou yě bú yào dà  
chǐ dà hē.

Even when one gets married, one  
shouldn't put on a great feast.

"Dà Bàn Nóngyè."

"Make Great Efforts to Develop  
Agriculture." (slogan)

9. A: Tīngshuō jǐwèi gōngren jiāo  
gěi zhèngfǔ jǐběn hěn lǎode  
shū, nǐmen kànguo le ma?

I hear that some workers handed a  
few very old books over to the  
government. Have you seen them?

B: Kànguo le. Dōu shì guānyú  
zhōngzú wèntí, lìshǐ  
wèntíde, hěn yǒu yìsi.

Yes. They're about racial and  
historical problems. They're  
very interesting.

#### Notes on No. 9

gōngren: This is the general term for "worker" in the sense of a wage-earning laborer. (Gōngzuòzhě, which you learned in Unit 4, does not imply manual labor; it simply means someone who works in a particular field, such as education or archeology.) Examples: shíyóu gōngren, "oil worker"; nóngyè gōngren, "agricultural worker," for example, a wage-earning worker on a state farm; tiělù gōngren, "railroad worker."

jiāo: "to hand over, to give" Jiāo qiǎn is "to pay" (a fee or bill, especially one which is due regularly).

Wǒ hái méi jiāo zhèige yuède  
fángzū.

I haven't paid this month's rent  
yet.

Jiāo gěi wǒmen ba! Nǐ fàngxīn  
hǎo le!

Leave it to us! Don't worry about  
it! (Here jiāo refers to turning  
over a task to someone.)

zhōngzú: "race" or "racial" Examples are Huángzhōngrén, "people of the yellow (Oriental) race," Hēizhōngrén, "people of the black race," and Báizhōngrén, "people of the white race."

10. A: Zhèige dìqūde xùnyè nàme fāfā!  
This region's livestock farming is so well developed!
- B: Suǒyī wǒmen zài zhèr bànle hǎojǐge dītǎnchǎng.  
That's why we've set up a lot of carpet factories here.

Notes on No. 10

Suǒyī . . . : Notice that when stressed at the beginning of a sentence, suǒyī is translated as "That's why . . . ."

chǎng and gōngchǎng: Gōngchǎng (introduced in No. 7 above) is the generic term for a factory or plant. If you were talking about the installations in an area and wanted to say that there were schools, factories, and hospitals, you would use gōngchǎng. Chǎng, on the other hand, is only used in specific contexts. If you are talking about a specific factory, you can say chǎnglǐ for "in the factory." A worker can say wǒmen chǎng for "our factory." You can also use chǎng in certain compound nouns which specify what the factory makes, as in dītǎnchǎng.

11. A: Nǐmende wénzì nàme nán!  
Gǎo wénhuà jiāoliú duō bù róngyì.  
Your system of writing is so hard!  
It makes cultural exchange so difficult!
- B: Shéi shuōde, wǒmende wénzì bú shì zài gǎi ma? Yuè gǎi yuè jiǎndān ma!  
Says who! Aren't we changing our writing? The more we change it the simpler it is.

Notes on No. 11

wénzì: "writing," "written language," "script," "system of writing" For example, a member of China's Committee for Reform of the Written Language would be a wénzì gōngzuòzhě, "written language worker."

jiāoliú: "to exchange" or "an exchange," "interchange" This is only used to refer to a back-and-forth flow of culture, technology, experience, thought, and so forth. "To exchange" one thing for another is huàn [or jiāohuàn in formal contexts such as the exchange of views or of prisoners].

shéi shuōde: "Says who!" This is strictly informal and could be taken as impolite if used in an inappropriate context.

zài gǎi: "in the process of changing"

bú shì . . . ma?: This is another example of the rhetorical use of this pattern (see the Notes on No. 6): "We're changing our writing, aren't we?"

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

12. biānjiāng

border area; borderland; frontier;  
frontier region

biānjiāng: "frontier region, border region" This refers to the area inside the border. Biānjiè refers more specifically to the border or boundary itself.

Unit 6, Review Dialogue

In a soft berth car on the express train from Běijīng to Ūrūmqi (Wūlǔ-mùqí) in the Xīnjiāng Uygur Autonomous Region, an American ethnologist, Gail Griffith (G), is standing in the corridor looking out the window at the passing scenery. Lǐ Míng (L), a cadre in the Ministry of Foreign Trade, steps out of the neighboring compartment, a glass of tea in his hand.

- L: Zǎoshang hǎo! Good morning!
- G: Zǎoshang hǎo! Nín guǎixìng? Good morning! May I ask your name?
- L: Wǒ xìng Lǐ, zài Běijīng wǒ jiànguó nín. My name is Lǐ. I met you in Běijīng.
- G: Zài Běijīng? Shénme dìfāng? In Běijīng? Where?
- L: Qīyuè sìhào wǎnshang, zài Měiguó Dàshìguǎn. On the evening of July fourth, at the American Embassy.
- G: À! Qīyuè sìhào, nèitiān yǒu nàme duō rén, wǒ bú jìde le. Nín zài nǎr gōngzuò a? Ah! July fourth. There were so many people that day, I don't remember. Where do you work?
- L: Wàimàobù. Nèitiān, Wàimàobùde gānbu qǐle bù shǎo, nín bú huì jìde le. Wǒ hǎoxiàng jìde nín shì gāo yǔyánxuéde. The Ministry of Foreign Trade. That day, a lot of cadres from the Ministry of Foreign Trade went; you wouldn't remember. I seem to remember that you are in linguistics.
- G: Bù zhǐ shì yǔyánxué, wǒ hái yánjiū mínzú wèntí, zhōngzú wèntí. Not only linguistics. I also study national and racial issues.
- L: Ò! Dào Xīnjiāng qù yánjiū mínzú wèntí ma? Oh! Are you going to Xīnjiāng to do research on nationalities?
- G: Bù, wǒ shì xiǎng duō liǎojiě yìdiǎnr Wéiwú'ěr wénhuà hé Zhōngdōng wénhuàde guānxì. No. I want to get a better understanding of the relationship between Uygur culture and Chinese culture.
- L: Ò! Zhèi kě shì yíge fùzáde wèntí, wǒ bú shì lìshǐ xuéjiā, guānyú zhèige me, wǒ zhīdaode bú tài duō. Oh! That's certainly a complex question. I'm not a historian. On that topic...I don't know very much.
- G: Nǐmen zǒng bǐ wǒmen zhīdaode duō, jiù qǐng nín jiǎngjiang ba. But you know more than we do, in any case, so please tell me about it.
- L: Wǒ zhīdao cóngqián Wéiwú'ěr rén yòngde wénzì shì Zhōngdōngde, yìzhī dào xiànzài, zài Xīnjiāng Wéiwú'ěr Zìzhìqūde xuéxiàoli hái shì jiāo Wéiwú'ěr wén. I know that the writing which the Uygurs used to use was Middle Eastern. Even now, they still teach the Uygur language in the schools in the Xīnjiāng Uygur Autonomous Region.

- G: Nàme yǒu duōshǎo Wéiwú'ěr rén dǒng Hànyǔ ne? Then how many Uygurs understand Chinese?
- L: Dàgài bú dào bǎifēnzhi èrshí. Probably fewer than twenty percent.
- G: Ng, hěn yǒu yìsi, nàme zhèngfǔ zài zìzhìqūde zhèngcè hé nèidì hěn bù tóng ma? Hm, very interesting. Then is the government's policy in the autonomous region very different from in the interior?
- L: Wéiwú'ěr rén dàbùfen xiāngxìn Yī-sīlǎn jiào. Zhōngguó yě shì zōngjiào zìyóude guójiā, suǒyǐ zài zhèngcèshàng huì yǒu yìxiē hé nèidì bù tóngde bànfǎ. Most Uygurs believe in Islam. China is a country with freedom of religion, too. So in the area of policy, some ways of doing things are different from in the interior.
- G: Ng, wǒmen zài huì dào wénzì wéntíshàng hǎo bu hǎo? Mm. Could we go back to the question of the writing?
- L: Hǎo a! Sure!
- G: Tīngshuō xiànzài Wéiwú'ěrwén yǒule xīn wénzì le. I understand that the Uygur language now has a new orthography.
- L: Yǒu, xīn wénzì shì Yī jiǔ qī wǔ nián kāishǐ yòngde. Zhèizhǒng xīn wénzì xiěqilai bǐjiào róngyi, cóng nèidì lái Xīnjiāngde rén xuéqilai yě róngyide duō. Yes, the new orthography began to be used in 1975. It's easier to write, and for people who come to Xīnjiāng from the interior, it's much easier to learn.
- G: Yǒule xīn wénzì yǐhòu Wéiwú'ěrzú rén juéde zěnmeyàng? Tāmen hěn gāoxìng ma? What do the Uygur people think now that they have the new orthography? Are they very happy?
- L: Zhōngguó shì yíge duō mínzúde shèhuìzhūyì dà jiātíng, Wéiwú'ěr rénmin yě shì yào tóngyide ma! Yǒule xīn wénzì, Hànzú hé shǎoshù mínzúde wénhuà jiāoliú yě róngyìduō le ma! China is a socialist family of many nations. The Uygurs want to be unified, too! With the new orthography, cultural exchange between the Hans and the minority nationalities has also become much easier!
- G: Nǐ shuōde yǒu dào lǐ. Duì le, nǐ kě bu kéyǐ gāosu wǒ Xīnjiāng rén-kǒude qíngkuàng? You are right. Oh yes--can you tell me about the population of Xīnjiāng?
- L: Xiànzài Xīnjiāng yǒu jiǔbǎiwàn rén zuǒyòu, yǐhòu huì gèng duō. Xīnjiāng now has approximately nine million people, and there will be even more in the future.
- G: Shǎoshù mínzú yǒu duōshǎo ne? How many of that number are minority nationalities?
- L: Chàbuduō qībǎiduō wàn, érqǐ zhèi Somewhere over seven million. And

qībǎiduō wàn rén lǐ yǒu shí sān ge  
mín zú.

among these seven million people there  
are thirteen nationalities.

G: Ōu. Xīnjiāng shǎoshù mín zú gēn  
Hàn zú de jiāoliú yǒu duō jiǔ le?

Oh. How long has there been inter-  
change between the minority nationali-  
ties of Xīnjiāng and the Han people?

L: Xīnjiāng dìqū hé nèidì de jīngjī  
jiāoliú yǐjīng yǒu jǐqiānnián de  
lìshǐ le, yòng wénzì xiěxiàláide  
jīngjī wénhuà jiāoliú shì cóng  
gōngyuán qián liùbǎi nián zuǒ-  
yòu kāishǐ de. Gōngyuán qián liù-  
shí nián jīngguò jǐcì zhànzhēng yǐ-  
hòu Xīnjiāng hé nèidì tóngyī le,  
wénhuà, yìshù de jiāoliú yě jiù yuè  
lái yuè duō le.

Economic interchange between the  
Xīnjiāng region and the interior has  
been going on for several thousand  
years. Economic and cultural inter-  
change which was put down in writing  
began around 600 B.C. In 60 B.C.,  
after several wars, Xīnjiāng was united  
with the interior, and there began to  
be more and more cultural and artistic  
interchange.

G: Wǒ tīngshuō jiěfàng yǐhòu yǒu  
hěn duō rén bān dào Xīnjiāng lái  
zhù le.

I understand that many people have  
moved to Xīnjiāng since liberation.

L: Yǐ jiǔ wǔ líng nián, Xīnjiāng hé-  
píng jiěfàng. Jiěfàngjūn dào le  
zhèlǐ yǐhòu jiù hé zhèige dìfāng de  
nóngmín yìqǐ gāo jīngjī jiànshè.  
Yǐ jiǔ liù èr nián yǐhòu měinián  
dōu yǒu hěn duō niánqīng rén dào  
zhèlǐ lái, nèi shíhòu biānjiāng de  
shēnghuó bǐ nèidì chà de duō, xiān-  
zài jiànshè de bú cuò le.

In 1950, Xīnjiāng was peacefully  
liberated. After the PLA arrived here,  
they carried on economic construction  
with the peasants. Since 1962, every  
year, a lot of young people have come  
here. Back then, life in the border  
region was much worse than in the  
interior; but now, construction has  
been pretty well carried out.

G: Nàme zhèixiē jiànshè biānjiāng de  
niánqīng rén dōu shì cóng nǎr lái de  
ne?

And where have all these young  
people who are carrying on the con-  
struction of the borderlands come  
from?

L: Duōbàn shì Tiānjīn, Běijīng,  
Shànghǎi, Zhéjiāng de qīngnián.

Most of them are youth from Tiānjīn,  
Běijīng, Shànghǎi, and Zhéjiāng.

G: Tāmen hái keyi huí dà chéngshì  
ma?

Can they still go back to the big  
cities?

L: Xiànzài jiāotōng fāngbiàn, fāng-  
jià de shíhòu tāmen keyi huí lǎojiā  
kànkan. Duōbàn de niánqīng rén  
zài zhèlǐ jiēle hūn, yǒule hái zi  
tāmen yǐjīng shì Xīnjiāng rén le!

Now, transportation is convenient,  
so when they have vacation, they can  
go back to visit their original home.  
Most of the young people have married  
here and have children; they have  
already become Xīnjiāng natives!

G: Tāmen zài zhèlǐ zuò shénme? Jiù  
gāo nóngyè ma?

What do they do here? Just farming?

- L: Ô! Bù dōu shì gǎo nóngyè. Yě yǒude shì gōngren, yě yǒude gǎo wénhuà jiàoyu gōngzuò, hái yǒude gǎo xùnyè..
- G: Duì le, suǐrán Xīnjiāng yǒu hěn dàde shāmò, kěshì xùnyè hái shì hěn fāfāde.
- L: Nǐ jiànguo Xīnjiāngde dìtǎn meiyǒu?
- G: Zài zhǎnlǎnhuìshang jiànguo. Tz! Zhēn měi! Duó měide dìtǎn!
- L: Měinián Xīnjiāng dìqū jiāo gěi guójiā bù shǎo dìtǎn. Tāmende shēngchǎn qíngkuàng bú cuò, shùliang bù shǎo, zhǐliàng yě hěn gāo, wàiguo péngyou hěn xǐhuan mǎi.
- G: À! Wǒ zhīdao le, nǐ shì dào Xīnjiāng qu chūchāide ba!
- L: Duì le. Qù hé jǐge dìtǎnchǎng tāolùn míngniánde shēngchǎn jìhua.
- G: Zhèixiē dìtǎnchǎng kě bu keyi cānguān na?
- L: Zěnmē bù keyi? Huānyíng huānyíng! Nín hé Lǚxíngshè tányitán, tāmen huì ānpaide.
- G: Duìbuqǐ, nǐde biǎo xiànzài jǐdiǎn le? Wǒde biǎo hǎoxiàng kuài le ma.
- L: Zhōngwǔ shíèrdiǎn.
- G: Wǒ zěnmē juéde tiān liàngle bù jiǔ a.
- L: Nín bié wàng le, zhèrde shíjiān hé Běijīng chà sìge zhōngtóu ne!
- G: Zěnmē chà sìge zhōngtóu?
- Oh, not all of them. Some are workers, some do cultural and educational work, and some do livestock farming.
- Oh, yes; although Xīnjiāng has a big desert, livestock farming is still very well developed.
- Have you ever seen Xīnjiāng carpets?
- At an exhibition. Gee! They're really beautiful! Such beautiful carpets!
- Every year the Xīnjiāng region hands over quite a few carpets to the state. They are doing well in production; they produce quite a number of carpets, and the quality is also very high. Foreign friends love to buy them.
- Ah! Now I know: I bet you're going to Xīnjiāng on business!
- Right. I'm going to discuss next year's production plan with a few carpet factories.
- Can one visit these carpet factories?
- Of course! You are very welcome to visit! Talk to the Travel Service about it, and they'll make the arrangements.
- Excuse me--what time do you have? My watch seems to be fast.
- Twelve noon.
- How come I feel as if it's only been light out for a little while?
- Don't forget, there's a four-hour time difference between here and Běijīng!
- How is that?



L: Zài Běijīng qīdiǎn zhōng tiān jiù liàng le, zài zhè Běijīng shíjiān shíyīdiǎn tiān cái liàng ne!

In Běijīng it gets light at seven o'clock. Here, it doesn't get light until eleven o'clock Běijīng time!

G: Duìle, duìle...óu, quánguó dōu tōngyīde yòng Běijīng shíjiān ma? Zhèi hé Měiguó bù yíyàng, Měiguó yǒu sìge shíjiān ne....

I see, I see...hm, Běijīng time is used throughout the country? That's different from America. America has four times....

Xiānzài wǒmen yǐjīng zài huǒchēshàng guòle qīshíge zhōngtóu le! Shénme shíhòu kěyǐ dào Wūlǔmùqí ya?

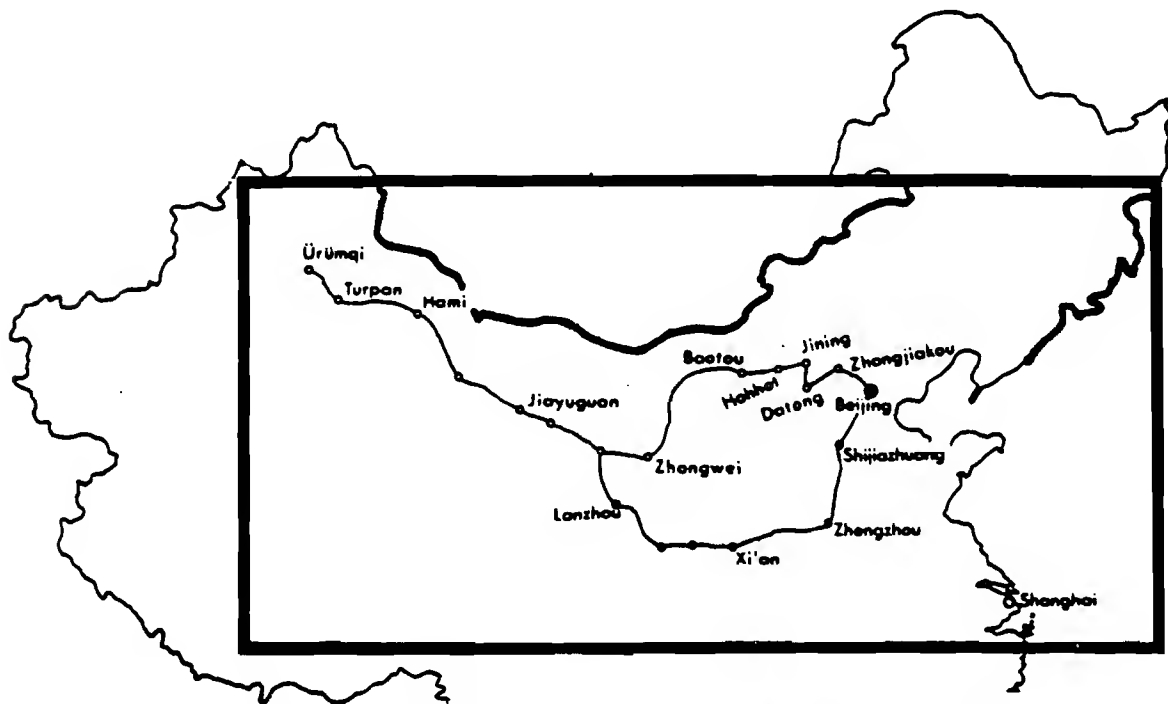
Now we've already spent seventy hours on the train! What time will we get to Ürümqi?

L: Hái yǒu bāge zhōngtóu ne. Hǎo le, zhānlǐ le ba, wǒ gāi huíqu xiūxi yīhuǐr le. Huí tóu jiàn!

We still have another eight hours. Well, you must be tired of standing up. I should go back and rest a bit. See you later!

G: Huí tóu jiàn, Lǐ Xiānsheng.

See you later, Mr. Lǐ.



Railroad routes from Beijing to Ürümqi

Unit 6, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American visits the Central Nationalities Institute in Běijīng and talks with a Uygur student.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

xuéyuàn	academy, institute
Túěrqí	Turkey, Turkish
Ālābó	Arab, Arabic
Lādīng zìmǔ	Latin (Roman) alphabet
sīxiǎng	thought, ideas
xìn jiào	to believe in a religion
zuò lǐbài	to worship; to attend a religious service
qīngzhēnsī	mosque

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Are the minority nationality languages used in schools in Xīnjiāng?
2. What does the Uygur student say his native language is like?
3. Do more Uygurs understand Chinese or Russian?

4. What is the Uygur student's religious background?
5. Now that she is in Běijīng, is the Uygur student able to attend religious services?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

### Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American tourist talks with a China Travel Service worker on the train from Běijīng to Hohhot, Inner Mongolia.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

Jīníng (Jìníng)	(city in Inner Mongolia)
sàn bù	to go for a walk
huángtǔ gāoyuán	loess plateau (see map at the end of this unit)
mínzú zhījiān	between nationalities
Xīfāng	the West
yāoqiú	to require
gǎishàn	to improve
Dàtóng	(city in Shānxī province)
chēxiāng	car (of a train)

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. In history, was the Jīníng region a peaceful one?
2. What is the China Travel Service worker's attitude toward the national minorities of China?

3. How might you respond to questions about racial difficulties in the U.S.? (Use several sentences from the dialogue, or prepare answers in your own words.)

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you practice saying the answers you have prepared.

#### Exercise 4

This is a conversation between an American tourist and a young Chinese woman who meet at the Museum of Chinese History in Běijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

náikāi	to take away, to move (something) out of the way
gǔdàishǐ	ancient history
huángdì	emperor
Qīnghǎi	(name of a province)
dāng	to act as, to be
hánshòubān	correspondence course
kǎoshàng	to pass (an examination)
zìxué	to study by oneself
ànshí	on time
zuǒyè	homework
chénggōng	to succeed

#### Questions for Exercise 4

1. Why is the young woman taking down notes?
2. How are living conditions in Qīnghǎi?
3. What does the young woman do for a living in Qīnghǎi?
4. What other kinds of work has she done before?
5. Why does she want to go to college?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

An American (A) visits the Central Nationalities Institute in Běijīng and talks with a Uygur student (U).

- U: Nín hǎo! Huānyíng nín lái wǒmen xuéyuàn cānguān. Hello! Welcome to the Institute.
- A: Nǐde Hànyǔ hěn hǎo ma, shì zài Běijīng xuéde ma? Your Chinese is very good! Did you learn it in Běijīng?
- U: Zhǔyào shì zài Běijīng xuéde, kěshì bú shì zài Běijīng kāishǐ xuéde. Mainly, but I wasn't in Běijīng when I started learning it.
- A: Ò, zài Xīnjiāng Wéiwúěr Zìzhìqūde xuéxiàoli yě jiāo Hànyǔ, shì bu shì? Oh. They teach Chinese in schools in the Xīnjiāng Uygur Autonomous Region, do they?
- U: Zài zìzhìqūde zhōng- xiǎoxuéli chúle Hànzú xuéxiào yǐwài dōu jiāo shǎoshù mínzú wénzì, tèbié shì Wéiwúěr wénzì. Except for the Hān nationality schools, secondary and primary schools in the autonomous region teach the minority nationality languages, especially the Uygur language.
- A: Wéiwúěr wénzì hé Zhōngdōngde wénzì yǒu shénme guānxì ma? Is the Uygur language related to the languages of the Middle East?
- U: Yǒu, Wéiwúěryǔ hé Tǔrǔqíyǔ bǐjiào jìn, lǎo Wéiwúěrwén jībenshang shì Ālābówén, xīn wénzì yòngde shì Lǎdīng zìmǔ. Yes. Uygur is rather close to Turkish. The old Uygur writing system was basically an Arabic writing system. The new writing system uses the Roman alphabet.
- A: Nàme xiàng "Gòngchǎndǎng," "Shèhuìzhǔyì" zhèixiē zì zěnmē bàn ne? Well, how do they handle words like "the Communist Party" and "socialism"?
- U: Zhèixiē zìde fāyīn duōbàn xiàng Hànyǔ, huòzhě xiàng Èyǔ. The pronunciation of words like that is mostly like Chinese, or like Russian.
- A: Duìbuqǐ, Wéiwúěr rén dǒng Hànyǔde duō ne, hái shì dǒng Èyǔde duō ne? I'm sorry: Do more Uygurs understand Chinese or Russian?
- U: Yìbānde lái shuō, hái shì dǒng Èwénde rén duō. Generally speaking, there are still more who understand Russian.
- A: Duì le--nǐ gāngcái bú shì shuō nǐde Hànyǔ bú shì zài Běijīng kāishǐ xuéde ma? Oh--you just said that you didn't begin studying Chinese in Běijīng, right?
- U: Wǒmen lái Běijīng niàn dàxuéde shǎoshù mínzú xuésēng dōu kényī zài zìzhìqūde Hànzú xuéxiàoli xiān xué yìnián Hànyǔ. Zài xué Hànyǔ All of us minority students who come to Běijīng to attend college can take a year of Chinese language beforehand in a Hān nationality school in

- yǐqián, wǒ lián yíge Hànzì dōu bù zhīdào.
- A: Hànyǔ shì hěn fùzáde, xuéqilai dàgài hěn nán.
- U: Bù juéde zěnmé tài nán, xuéle yínián yǐhòu wǒmen hé nàrde Hànzú gōngren, gānbu, yòng Hànyǔ tāolùn wèntí, jiāoliú síxiǎng dōu méiyǒu shénme wèntí le.
- A: Tz! Nà zhēn bú cuò. Duì le-- wǒ hái yǒu zuǐhòu yíge xiǎo wèntí. Nǐmen xìn jiào ma?
- U: Wǒmende fùmǔ, zǔfùmǔ dōu xiāngxìn Yísīlǎnjiào.
- A: Nǐmen zìjǐ ne?
- U: Wǒmen zìjǐ me, yǒude xìn, yǒude bú tài xìn, wǒ hái shì xiāngxīnde.
- A: Zài Běijīng yě keyi zuò lǐbài ma?
- U: Keyi. Zhèr yǒu hěn dàde qīng-zhēnsì, wǒ měige xīngqī dōu qù.
- A: Tài xièxie nǐ le, gěi wo jièshào-le zhème duō yǒu yìside qíngkuāng.
- U: Hěn gāoxìng nín lái cānguān. Zàijiàn.
- A: Zàijiàn.
- the autonomous region. Before I started studying Chinese, I didn't even know one Chinese character.
- Chinese is very complicated. It must be very hard to study.
- I don't find it terribly difficult. After one year, we didn't have any problem having discussions and communicating ideas in Chinese with the Chinese workers and cadres there.
- Gee, that's really great. Oh yes-- I have one last small question. Do you profess a religion?
- Our parents and grandparents believe in Islam.
- What about you yourselves?
- We ourselves...well, some of us believe, and some of us don't really believe. I still believe.
- Can you worship in Běijīng?
- Yes. There's a big mosque here. I go every week.
- Thank you so much for telling me about so many interesting things.
- It was nice to have you here. Good-bye.
- Good-bye.

### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

- On the train from Běijīng to Hohhot, Inner Mongolia, an American tourist (A) talks with a China Travel Service worker (B).
- B: Tiān gāng liàng nín jiù qǐlai le? Bù duō shuǐ yíhuǐr? You're up so soon after dawn? Don't you want to get some more sleep?
- A: Bù xiǎng shuǐ le. Xiàmiàn yízhàn shì nǎr le? I don't feel like sleeping. What's the next stop?
- B: Jíning, zhèi shì yíge dà zhàn, huǒchē zài zhèr tíng èrshífēn Jíning. It's a big stop. The train will stop there for twenty minutes.

zhōng. Wǒmen kěyǐ dào zhàntái-shang qu sànsan bù.

We can go out for a walk on the platform.

A: Jīníng<sup>\*</sup> yídài shì yíge zhōngyàode dìqū.

The Jíning area is an important region.

B: Cōng dìxíngshang kàn, Jíning běibiān shì dà shāmò, nánbiān shì huángtǔ gāoyuán. Gōngyuán qiánhòu zài zhèige dìqū bù zhīdào yǒuguo duōshǎo cì zhànzhēng.

As far as terrain is concerned, to the north of Jíning is a big desert, and to the south is the loess plateau. Before and during the Christian era there have been I-don't-know how many wars in this region.

A: Xiànzài héping le, biānjiāng hé nèidì bú huì yǒu zhànzhēng le.

But now it's at peace. The border regions and the interior won't have any more wars.

B: Nín shuōde duì, Zhōngguó shì yíge duō mínzúde, tóngyíde shèhuìzhūyì dà jiātíng, mínzú zhījiān de zhànzhēng dòu yǐjīng shì lìshǐ le. Tǐngshuō, zài Xīfāng, zhōngzú wèntí, mínzú wèntí hái shì hěn máfānde wèntí a? Shǎoshù mínzúde shēnghuó hé dīwei hái hěn chà?

That's right. China is a unified socialist family made up of many nationalities. War between these groups is already a thing of the past. I hear that in the West, racial and ethnic problems are still very troublesome, and that the living conditions and status of minorities are still very inferior.

A: Wǒ xiǎng zài yībǎinián yǐqián de shíhòu, zhōngzú wèntí shì yíge bǐjiǎo dàde wèntí, xiànzài qíngkuāng yǐjīng yǒule hěn dàde gǎibiàn.

I think that the race problem was bigger a hundred years ago. The situation has already changed quite a lot.

B: Shì ma?

Is that so?

A: Wǒmen de zhèngrǔ yāoqiú zhèngrǔ gōngzuò rényuán dēi yǒu yíding shùliàngde shǎoshù mínzú. Zài wǒmen de xuéxiàoli duì shǎoshù mínzú yě yǒu tèbiéde bāngzhū.

Our government requires that their employees include a certain number of minority individuals. In our schools minorities are also given special help.

B: Nàme nǐ xiǎng zài jiàoyù shuǐpíng, gōngzuò jīhuì, shēnghuó shuǐpíng fāngmian shǎoshù mínzúde qíngkuāng dòu gǎishàn le?

Then as far as levels of education, job opportunities, and standard of living are concerned, do you think that the minority situation has improved in all these areas?

A: Wǒ xiǎng mínzú wèntí, zhōngzú wèntí yǒu lìshǐde yuányīn, yě yǒu zhèngzhì, jīngjì, wénhuà gèfāng-

I think that ethnic and racial problems have historical causes, as well as political, economic, and cultural

\*Speaker A on the tape says Jīníng, which is another pronunciation. The dictionary pronunciation is Jíning.



miànde yuányīn, xǔduō guójiā dōu  
hǎi yǒu zhèizhǒng wèntí. Zài Měi-  
guó, wǒmen zhèngfǔ hé rénmin dōu  
zài nǚlǐ tígāo shǎoshù mínzúde dì-  
wei. Shǎoshù mínzúde qíngkuàng  
yíding huì yuè lái yuè hǎo.

ones. Many countries still have this  
kind of problem. In America, our  
government and people are making an  
effort to raise the status of our mi-  
norities. The situation is sure to  
get better and better for them.

B: Hǎojíle. Wǒmen dōu xīwàng gè  
mínzúde shēnghuó yuè guò yuè hǎo.  
Jíning zhān dào le, wǒmen xiàqu  
kànkan ba!

Great. We all hope that life will  
improve for all peoples. We've  
arrived at Jíning station. Let's get  
off and have a look around.

A: Hǎode. Zhèr yǐjīng shì Nèi Měng-  
gǔ le, bǐ Dàtóng lěngde duō, wǒ qù  
chuān jiàn máoyī jiù lái.

All right. This is already Inner  
Mongolia, and it's much colder than  
Dàtóng. I'm going to go put on a  
sweater and I'll be right back.

B: Hǎode, wǒ zài chēxiāng ménkǒu  
děng nǐ.

Okay. I'll wait for you at the  
door of this car.

#### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

At an exhibition on general Chinese history in Běijīng's Museum of Chinese History, a young woman (B) is sitting on a bench taking some notes. When an American tourist (A) walks by, the young woman gets up to let him have her seat.

A: Nǐ zài xiě dōngxì, kuài qǐng zuò-  
xia, bú yào kèqì.

You're writing, please sit down.  
Don't be polite.

B: Wǒ lái bǎ zhèi jǐběn shū nákāi,  
nín zuòxia xiūxiu.

I'll move these books away and you  
can sit down and rest.

A: Zhèiběn Zhōngguó Gǔdàishǐ shì  
nǐde ma?

Is this History of Ancient China  
yours?

B: Shì wǒde. Zhèiběn shūlǐ guānyú  
yíwèi Tángcháo huángdìde gùshì hé  
zhèige zhǎnlǎnhuìshàng shuōde bú  
tài yíyàng, suǒyǐ wǒ bǎ tā xiěxi-  
lai dàihuìqu kànkan.

Yes, it is. There are some differ-  
ences between the version of a story  
about a Táng dynasty emperor in this  
book and the version given in the  
exhibit, so I'm writing it down to  
take home and read.

A: Nǐ shì Běifāng rén ma?

Are you from the north?

B: Wǒ lǎojiā zài Zhéjiāng, xiānzài  
zài Qīnghǎi gōngzuò, zhèicì shì lái  
Běijīng chūchāide.

Originally I'm from Zhéjiāng, but  
now I work in Qīnghǎi. This time I'm  
in Běijīng on business.

A: Qīnghǎide xùmù yě hěn fāfā ba?

Qīnghǎi's livestock farming is very  
developed, isn't it?

B: Xùnyède qíngkuàng bú cuò, búguò méiyǒu Nèiměng, Xīnjiāng nàme hǎo.

Livestock farming is doing well, but the situation isn't as good as in Inner Mongolia and Xinjiang.

A: Rénmínde shēnghuó shuǐpíng zěnmeyàng?

How is the people's standard of living?

B: Chīde chà yídiǎnr, zhǔyào shì jiāotōng bù fāngbiān, biéde shēnghuó fāngmiàn me, yě méiyǒu nèidì hǎo.

The food is rather poor, but the main thing is that transportation is difficult. As for other aspects of life, well, they aren't as good as in the interior either.

A: Nǐ zài Qīnghǎi gōngzuò, zuò shénme ne?

What is your work in Qinghai?

B: Dāngguo nóngmín, yě dāngguo Jiěfàngjūn, xiànzài zài yíge jiànzhù cáiliàochǎng dāng gōngren.

I've been a peasant and I've been in the P.L.A. Now I'm a worker in a construction materials factory.

A: Ng, nǐ zuòguo bù shǎode shìqíng.

Mm, you've done a lot of things.

B: Xiànzài bù shǎo niánqīng rén dōu shì zhèiyàngde. Kěshì wǒ zuì yǒu xìngqude hái shì lìshǐ.

These days a lot of young people are like that. But I'm still most interested in history.

A: Nǐ yào shàng dàxué niàn lìshǐ ma?

Do you want to go to college to study history?

B: Yào. Duì le, nín kàn Zhōngwén bào ma?

Yes, I do. Oh, do you read the Chinese newspapers?

A: Kàn.

Yes.

B: Zhèi liǎngtiānde Rénmín Rìbào nín kànguo ma?

Have you been reading the People's Daily the last couple of days?

A: Kànguo le. Bàoshang shuō hěn duō dàxué yào bàn hánshòubān le.

Yes. It said in the paper that a lot of colleges are going to start correspondence courses.

B: Duì le, suǒyǐ wǒ zài zhèr zhǔnbèi kǎoshì.

Right, so I'm preparing to take the exams here.

A: Zhèizhǒng dàxué zěnmeyàng niàn ne?

How do you go about attending these colleges?

B: Kǎoshàngle yǐhòu, xuéxiào jǐ gei wǒmen shū hé biéde xuéxí cáiliào, wǒmen zìjǐ zìxué, ànshí bǎ zuòyè hé kǎoshì jiāo gei xuéxiào. Gōngchǎng fàng jiàde shíhòu wǒ kěyǐ huí lǎojiā qu kàn fùmǔ, hái kěyǐ qù dà-

After we pass the exam, the school sends us the books and other study materials, and we study on our own, turning in our homework and tests when required. When I have vacation from the factory, I can go back to my home-

xué xiàng lǎoshī qǐngjiào.

town to visit my parents, and I can also go to the college to ask for help from the teachers.

A: Nà bú cuò ma, zhèiyang nián shū yě keyi yǒu dàxué bǐyède shuǐpíng ma?

That's pretty good. By going to school like that can you reach the level of a college graduate?

B: Keyi. Zhōngguó gǔdàishǐ shì hěn yǒu yìside, wǒ yíding yào hǎohāor niàn.

Yes, you can. Ancient Chinese history is very interesting. I'm determined to study hard.

A: Hǎo, zhù nǐ chénggōng!

Good, I wish you success.

B: Xièxie nǐ!

Thank you!



The location of China's loess plateau

Loess is a fine-grained, chalky soil between silt and clay, actually a deposit of wind-blown sand. China's loess deposits are the most extensive in the world; they cover most of Shǎnxī and Shǎnxī provinces, and the better part of Gānsù, and extend into Héběi and Hénán as well. Because it holds moisture well, loess makes good farming ground when irrigated. Loess is buff to gray in color (the Chinese word for loess, huángtǔ, means literally, "yellow soil") and it is loess that gives the Yellow River its distinctive yellowish appearance.

Unit 7, Reference List

1. A: Cóng gōngshè dào chénglǐ hái zhēn yuǎn, shèyuǎnmén jìn chéng mǎi dōngxī yǒu diǎnr bú tài fāngbian ba? It's such a long way from the commune into town, isn't it kind of inconvenient for the commune members to go into town to shop?  
 B: Nín méi kànjian, yánzhe gōnglù bànle hǎojǐge xiǎo shāngdiǎn, mǎi dōngxī hái suàn fāngbian. Didn't you see, a lot of little stores have been set up along the highway. It's fairly convenient to shop there.
2. A: Tiělùshang fāshēng shénme wèntí le ma? Wèishénme zhèibān tèkuài bǐ mànchē hái màn? Has some problem come up on the railroad? Why is this express even slower than a slow train?  
 B: Nín bié jǐnzhāng, wǒ yě méi xiǎngdào yǒu zhèige qíngkuàng, wǒ xiànzài jiù qù wènwenqīngchū. Don't get nervous. I didn't expect this either. I'll go try to find out about it right now.
3. A: Zài máng wǒ yě děi huíqu yītàng, gāng mǎihǎode liǎng-yàng dōngxī, quán wàng zài shāngdiànli le! No matter how busy I am I have to go back there. I left both the things I just bought in the store!  
 B: Háishì máfan dǎoyóu huíqu zhǎo yītàng ba! Nín bié qù le. It would be better to trouble the guide to go back and look for them. Don't you go.
4. A: Shíjiān tài jǐn, yǒude dìfang wǒ jiù bú qù le, bǐfang shuō yòuéryuán ba! Yǐhòu zài qù cānguān ba! I'm too pressed for time, so there are some places I'm not going. The kindergarten, for example--I'll visit there another time.  
 B: Hǎo. Wǒmen xuǎn jǐge yào-jǐnde dìfang cānguān hǎo le. All right. Let's choose a few important places to visit.
5. A: Cóng chǎnliàngshang kàn, Chángjiāng yǐnán de nóngyè shēngchǎn qíngkuàng zhēn bú cuò. From the point of view of yield, the agricultural production situation south of the Yangtze River is really good.  
 B: Chángjiāng yǐnán bú yòng shuō le, jiù shì Chángjiāng yǐběi shēngchǎn qíngkuàng yě gǎnshànglái la! For the area south of the Yangtze that goes without saying, but even north of the Yangtze the level of production is catching up!

6. A: Shǒudū Gāngtiě Gōngsīde gōngren dōu zài zhèige shítáng chī fàn ma?  
Do all the workers in the Capital Iron and Steel Company eat in this dining hall?
- B: Ōu, wǒmen gōngsī yǒu hǎojǐwàn zhígōng, jiāshǔ, yǒu bù shǎo de dà shítáng ne!  
Oh, our company has tens of thousands of staff and workers and their families. There are lots of large dining halls!
7. A: Shàngcì wǒ cānguān qìchē zhì-zāochǎngde shíhou hǎoxiàng zài nǎr jiànguò ta, tā shì nǎrde zhígōng ba?  
It seems to me I saw him someplace the time I visited the automobile plant. Isn't he a staff member or worker there?
- B: Nín gāocuò le, tā shì wǒmen Lǚxíngshède gōngzuò rényuán.  
You're mistaken. He's one of our Travel Service personnel.
8. A: Nǐmen chǎng yíbàn yǐshàngde gōngren sùshè dōu shì xīnde ma!  
At your factory, over half of your workers' living quarters are new!
- B: Nèi jǐnián, sùshè bèi gāode luànqībāzāo, zhǐ hǎo gài xīnde le.  
During those few years, the living quarters were wrecked up, we had no choice but to build new ones.
9. A: Lái! Bǎ zhèi jǐge jiǎozi dòu xiāomiè le!  
Come on. Polish off [literally, "exterminate"] these dumplings!
- B: "Xiāomiè" jiǎozi? Wǒ dào méi tīngguo zhèige shuōfǎ!  
"Polish off" dumplings? I've never heard that expression before!
10. A: Wǒ fāxiàn nǐmende gōngzuò jìnxíngde bú cuò ma! Bù xūyào shíjiān le ba?  
I find that your work is proceeding very well. I don't suppose you need any more time.
- B: Nǐ shuōde dào róngyì! Nǐ zhīdao wǒmen yǒngle duōshǎo yèyú shíjiān!  
That's easy for you to say. You don't know how much of our time after hours we used!
11. A: Chǎng lǐngdǎo hàozhāo quán-chǎng gōngren zhèige yuè duō shēngchǎn sìbǎibù qìchē.  
The leadership of our factory made an appeal to the workers of the whole factory to produce four hundred more cars this month.
- B: Bú cuò a! Nà zhèige yuède chǎnliàng chàbuduō děngyú shàngge yuède yíbèi bàn la!  
That's great! Then this month's output is about equal to one and a half times last month's!

Unit 7, Vocabulary List

àn	according to
-bèi	time, -fold
bèi	(passive marker)
-bù	(counter for automobiles, machines, etc.)
Chángjiāng	Yangtze River
dào	yet, on the contrary, nevertheless
dǎoyóu	(tour) guide
děngyú	to equal, to be equal to
fāshēng	to happen, to occur
fāxiàn	to discover
gāngtiě	iron and steel
gǎnshàng(lái)	to catch up
gǎocuò	to do wrong; to be wrong (mistaken)
gōnglù	highway
háishi	it would be better to
hàozhāo (hàozhào)	to call, to appeal
jiāshǔ	family members, (family) dependents
jǐn	to be tight
jìnxíng	to carry on, to conduct; to be
jǐnzhāng	to be nervous, to be tense
jiùshi...yě...	even (if)...
kuài yào	will soon
qīngchǔ (-chu)	to be clear, to be distinct
rényuán	personnel, staff
shèyuán	commune member
shítáng	mess hall, dining room
sùshě	living quarters; dormitory
tiělù	railroad
xiāomiè	to eliminate, to abolish, to exterminate, to wipe out
xuǎn	to choose
-yàng	kind (bound form)
yánzhe	along(side)

yèyú  
yǐ-

spare time, after hours, amateur  
(used before direction words to  
mark direction with reference to  
a point)

yǐshàng  
yǐxià  
yòuéryuán

above, over (an amount)  
under (an amount)  
kindergarten

zhígōng

staff and workers; worker or  
staff member

zhìzào  
zhìzàochǎng

to manufacture  
manufacturing plant, factory

## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Cǒng gōngshè dào chénglǐ hái  
zhēn yuǎn, shèyuǎnmen jìn  
chéng mǎi dōngxī yǒu diǎnr  
bú tài fāngbian ba? It's such a long way from the commune  
into town, isn't it kind of incon-  
venient for the commune members to  
go into town to shop?
- B: Nín méi kànjian, yánzhe gōnglù  
bànle hǎojǐge xiǎo shāngdiàn,  
mǎi dōngxī hái suàn fāngbian. Didn't you see, a lot of little stores  
have been set up along the highway.  
It's fairly convenient to shop there.

Notes on No. 1

hái zhēn yuǎn: Hái, "still," in this sentence may go untranslated; it expresses surprise at how far it is into town. In this meaning, hái is often used before zhēn, "really."

Nǐ hái zhēn bú pà lěng, zhème  
lěngde tiān chuān zhème shǎo! You really don't mind ("aren't afraid  
of") the cold; you wear so little  
in such cold weather!

Shèyuǎn, "commune member," includes working members and their non-working family members. The ending -yuǎn is used in various compound words to mean "member":

Dǎngyuǎn	Party member
Tuányuǎn	(Communist Youth) League member
huìyuǎn OR chéngyuǎn	member

yǒu diǎnr bú tài fāngbian: "a little inconvenient, kind of inconvenient"  
You are familiar with the phrasing yǒu diǎnr bù fāngbian. Here you see that  
use bú tài instead of just bù.

Yánzhe, "along, alongside," is used for longer distances than pángbiān,  
"side."

Qìchē yánzhe zhèitiao lù kāile  
hěn jiǔ cái kànjian yíge rén. The car drove along this road a  
long time before they saw a person.

Yánzhe fāngzi sìbiānr zhōngle  
hǎoduō huā. A lot of flowers were planted along  
the four sides of the house (i.e.,  
all around the house).

BUT:  
Fāngzi pángbiān zhōngle hǎoduō  
huā. A lot of flowers were planted along-  
side the house (on the side or sides).

gōnglù: "public-road," i.e., "highway" "Expressway" is gāosù gōnglù,  
"high-speed public-road." (As of this writing, mainland China has no express-  
ways; Taiwan has one, which goes from the north to the south of the island.)



hái suàn: "can still be considered to be..." This is an idiom for "fairly." Compare the use of hái for "fairly" which you learned in the Society module, for example, Hái hǎo, "Fairly good."

Tā hái suàn wèntí shǎode xué- He can be considered a student with  
shēng, biéde rén wèntí gèng duō. relatively few problems; the others  
have even more problems.

Nà hái suàn xiǎo shì. That's no big thing ("a small matter").

2. A: Tiělùshang fāshēng shénme wèn- Has some problem come up on the rail-  
tí le ma? Wèishénme zhèibān road? Why is this express even  
tèkuài bǐ mǎnchē hái màn? slower than a slow train?
- B: Nín bié jǐnzhāng, wǒ yě méi Don't get nervous. I didn't expect  
xiāngdào yǒu zhèige qíng- this either. I'll go try to find  
kuàng, wǒ xiànzài jiù qù out about it right now.  
wènwenqīngchǔ.

Notes on No. 2

tiělù: "railroad," literally, "iron-road"

Xīběide tiělù bù duō, érqǐě yǒu There aren't many railroads in the  
bù shǎo shì gāng xiūde. Northwest, and many of them were  
just built.

Wǒ yǒu yíge gēge zài tiělùshang I have an older brother who works on  
gōngzuò. the railroad.

fāshēng: "to happen," "to occur" The event which happens often follows  
fāshēng in the sentence (just as in sentences with yǒu, "there is," the thing  
that exists often follows yǒu):

Bù zhīdào fāshēngle shénme shì- I wonder what has happened that so  
qing, láile zhème duō rén. many people have come here.

Zhèi jǐtiān fāshēngle hǎojǐjiàn The last few days, a lot of strange  
qíguài de shì. things have been happening.

Nèi shíhou fāshēngde shì, wǒ The things that happened then aren't  
dōu bù zěnme qīngchǔ le. very clear in my mind anymore.

Shéi dōu bù jìde zhèijiàn shì shì No one remembers when that event took  
shénme shíhou fāshēngde le. place anymore.

bǐ mǎnchē hái màn: "even slower than a slow train" Here, hái is used  
as "even."

Zuótiān lěng, jīntiān bǐ zuótiān It was cold yesterday, (but) today is  
hái lěng. even colder than yesterday.

jǐnzhāng: "to be nervous," "to be tense"

Zài zhèlǐ kāi chē zhēn jǐnzhāng, It's really nerve-racking to drive  
bù zhīdào shénme shíhòu huì here. You don't know when you might  
zhuàngdao rén. run into someone.

wènwenqīngchǔ: "to inquire until clear," i.e., "to try to find out the true situation." Notice that you can reduplicate a verb (here, wèn) even when the verb is followed by a resultative ending (here, qīngchǔ). Other examples: Qǐng nǐ bǎ shìqíng shuōshuoqīngchǔ, "Please explain this more clearly"; Bǎ zhuōzi cācāgānjìng, "Wipe the table clean."

3. A: Zài máng wǒ yě děi huíqu yí- No matter how busy I am I have to go  
tàng, gāng mǎihǎode liǎng- back there. I left both the things  
yàng dōngxī, quán wàng zài I just bought in the store!  
shāngdiànli le!

B: Háishì máfan dǎoyóu huíqu zhǎo It would be better to trouble the  
yítàng ba! Nín bié qù le. guide to go back and look for them.  
Don't you go.

### Notes on No. 3

zài máng...yě...: "no matter how busy..." The zài in this pattern (meaning literally, "more, additionally") must be given extra-heavy stress: ZÀI máng wǒ yě děi huíqu. Yě here means "still, even so."

Zhōngwén ZÀI nán wǒ yě yào xué. No matter how hard Chinese is, I'm  
still going to study it.

-tàng: This counter for trips need not be translated here. Used with verbs like lái, qù, huílai, huíqu, etc., -tàng simply counts the number of times someone goes someplace. Other examples:

Tā shàngge xīngqī dào Shànghǎi Last week he made a trip to  
qùle yítàng. Shànghǎi.

Wǒ jīntiān yǐjīng wǎng tā nàr I've already made two trips to  
pǎole liǎngtàng le. his place today.

-yàng: "kind, sort" You have learned the word -zhǒng, "kind, sort, type." These words are slightly different in usage; sometimes -yàng should not be translated literally as "kind," but just left out of the translation (see the third, fourth, and fifth examples).

Zhèi jǐyàng dōngxī wǒ dōu méi I've never seen these kinds of  
kànjianguo, hěn qíguài. things. They're very strange.

Nǐ kàndechūlái zhèi liǎngyàng Can you tell what's different about  
dōngxī yǒu shénme bù yíyàng ma? these two kinds of things?

Wǒmen jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu  
jǐyàng cài?

How many dishes are we having tonight  
[for dinner]?

Tā dào shāngdiàn qùle jǐcì yě  
méi mǎihuì yíyàng dǒngxí lái.

He went to the store several times,  
but didn't come back with a single  
thing.

Wǒ zhèr hái yǒu liǎngyàng shuǐ-  
guǒ...yíge píngguǒ yíge júzi.

I still have two fruits here...one  
apple and one tangerine/orange.

háishi: "it would be better to..." This is another meaning for the  
word which you first learned as meaning "still."

Wǒ bù shūfu, háishi shǎo chī  
diǎnr ba.

I'm not feeling well. I'd better  
not eat too much.

Háishi Ōuyáng Lǎoshī yíge rén  
qù, nǐmen dōu liú zài zhèr ba.

It would be better if Teacher Ouyang  
went alone; the rest of you just  
stay here.

Also used in the pattern háishi . . . hǎo:

Háishi nǐ qù hǎo.

It would be better if you went.

4. A: Shíjiān tài jǐn, yǒude dìfang  
wǒ jiù bú qù le, bǐfang shuō  
yòuéryuán ba! Yǐhòu zài qù  
cānguān ba!

I'm too pressed for time, so there are  
some places I'm not going. The kin-  
dergarten, for example--I'll visit  
there another time.

B: Hǎo. Wǒmen xuǎn jǐge yào-  
jǐnde dìfang cānguān hǎo le.

All right. Let's choose a few  
important places to visit.

Notes on No. 4

jǐn: "to be tight," in both literal and figurative senses.

Zhèishuāng xié tài jǐn.

These shoes are too tight.

Bǎ mén guānjǐn.

Shut the door tight.

Wǒde shíjiān ānpaide hěn jǐn.

I have a very tight schedule.

bǐfang shuō...ba: Ba can be used at the end of a bǐfang shuō phrase.  
Compare the use of ba shown in unit 5.

yòuéryuán: "kindergarten," literally, "young-child-garden" In Taiwan,  
the word yòuzhīyuán is used instead.

xuǎn: "to choose," "to select"; "to elect"

Tāmen xuǎn wǒ zuò dàibiǎode<sup>\*</sup> shí- When they elected me as representative,  
hou, wǒ hěn bù hǎo yìsī. I was very embarrassed.

Tā zài shāngdiànli zǒule bàntiān She walked around the store for a  
yě méi xuǎndào tā xǐhuande long time but didn't find anything  
dōngxī. she liked.. (Xuǎn is often used  
for "selecting"--buying--items at  
a store.)

5. A: Cóng chǎnliàngshang kàn, From the point of view of yield, the  
Chángjiāng yǐnánde nóngyè agricultural production situation  
shēngchǎn qíngkuàng zhēn bù south of the Yangtze River is really  
cuō. good.

B: Chángjiāng yǐnán bú yòng shuō For the area south of the Yangtze that  
le, jiù shì Chángjiāng yǐběi goes without saying, but even north  
shēngchǎn qíngkuàng yě gǎn- of the Yangtze the level of produc-  
shànglái la! tion is catching up!

#### Notes on No. 5

cóng chǎnliàngshang kàn: "from the point of view of yield" Other  
examples of this pattern: cóng shùliàngshang kàn, "from the point of view  
of numbers/quantity"; cóng fāzhǎn jīngjìshang kàn, "from the point of view  
of developing the economy."

Chángjiāng: "Long-River," the Yangtze, now called the Changjiang in  
PRC publications. China's longest river (6,300 kilometers), the Changjiang  
is an important artery of water transportation, passing through the cities of  
Chóngqīng, Wúhàn, Nánjīng, and Shànghǎi.

...yǐnán: "to the south of..." Yǐběi is "to the north of."

Júzi zhòng zài Chángjiāng yǐnán Tangerines grown south of the Chang-  
shì tiánde, dào le Chángjiāng jiang are sweet, but north of the  
yǐběi jiù chéng le kǔde le. Changjiang, they become bitter.

jiù shì...yě...: (1) "even..."; (2) "even if . . ."

(1) Jiù shì wǒ yě zhīdao. Even I know that.

Jiù shì xuézhě yě bù dǒng zhèige Even scholars do not understand  
wèntí. this problem.

Zhèige dà píngguǒ shì wǒ tèbié I picked this big apple out especially  
xuǎnchulai gěi nǐde. for you.

---

\*dàibiǎo, "representative, delegate" (TVL, Unit 8)

(2) Tā shuō jiùshì nǐ qù zuò yě zuòbuhǎo. He said that even if you did it, you wouldn't do it right.

Nǐ jiùshì mǎile wǒ yě bù chī. Even if you bought it I wouldn't eat it.

bú yòng shuō X, jiù shì Y yě...: This three-part pattern means "For X, that goes without saying, but even Y is...." Sometimes in English we mention the parts X and Y in the reverse order: "Even Y is . . . , not to mention X."

Nèige dìfang zhēn hǎowánr, bú yòng shuō xiǎoháir, jiù shì dàren yě zài nàr wánrde hěn gāoxìng. That place is really fun. Even grown-ups have a great time there, not to mention children.

For bú yòng shuō, you can often substitute bú yào shuō. For jiù shì, you can substitute lián. For yě, you can substitute dōu.

When the clause after yě has bù or méi, you can translate bú yòng shuō as "much less":

Bú yòng shuō zhōngxuéshēng, jiù shì yánjiūshēng yě kànbudǒng zhèipiān wénzhāng. Even graduate students cannot understand this article, much less high school students.

Wǒ bú yòng shuō xiě, lián tīng yě láibují. I couldn't even keep up listening to it, much less write it down.

Bú yào shuō qù kàn diànyǐng, wǒ lián chī fànde shíjiān dōu méiyǒu. I don't even have time to eat, much less go to the movies.

gǎnshànglái: "to catch up" by hurrying (gǎn means "to hurry")

Tā suǐrán bìngle hǎojítiān, kěshì xuéxí hái shì gǎnshànglái le. Although he has been sick for quite a few days, he has caught up with his schoolwork.

Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì, nǐmen xiān zǒu ba! Dēng yíhuǐ wǒ jiù gǎnshànglái. I have something I have to do. You go on ahead. I'll catch up with you in a minute.

6. A: Shǒudū Gāngtiě gōngsīde gōngren dōu zài zhèige shítáng chī fàn ma? Do all the workers in the Capital Iron and Steel Company eat in this dining hall?

B: Òu, wǒmen gōngsī yǒu hǎojíwàn zhígōng, jiāshǔ, yǒu bù shǎode dà shítáng ne! Oh, our company has tens of thousands of staff and workers and their families. There are lots of large dining halls!

Notes on No. 6

gāngtiě: Literally, "steel-iron," but usually translated as "iron and steel" (The usual order of paired words in Chinese and English is often the same, but sometimes differs. Other examples are bàba māma, "mom and dad"; yéye nǎinai, "grandma and grandpa.")

shítáng: "dining hall," "cafeteria," "mess hall"

zhígōng: "staff and workers"; "staff member or worker"

Zhèige chāngde zhígōng dàbùfen shì nǚde.      The staff and workers of this factory are mostly women.

Zhèige zhígōng xuéxiào yǒu bù shǎo hěn hǎode lǎoshī, tāmen dōu duì zhígōng jiàoyu hěn rèxīn.      This staff and worker school has a lot of good teachers who are very interested and enthusiastic toward staff and worker education.

Zhígōng shítáng chángcháng mài lěng fàn.      Staff and worker dining halls often sell cold food.

jiāshǔ: "family members," "(family) dependents"

Gānbude jiāshǔ chángcháng shòudào tèbiéde zhàogu.      The families of cadres often receive special care.

Dàqīngde gōngren jiāshǔ hěn duō dōu shì nóngmín.      Many families of workers at Dàqīng are peasants.

NOTE: Although in context jiāshǔ may be translated as "family," as in the sentence above, it is different from jiāting. jiāting refers to the family unit, the household. jiāshǔ refers collectively to the family members other than the head of household.

yǒu bù shǎode dàshítáng ne!: On this use of ne, see Unit 3 Reference Notes, Notes on No. 5.

7. A: Shàngcì wǒ cānguān qíchē zhì-zào chǎngde shíhou hǎoxiàng zài nǎr jiānguo ta, tā shì nàrde zhígōng ba?      It seems to me I saw him someplace the time I visited the automobile plant. Isn't he a staff member or worker there?

B: Nín gāocuò le, tā shì wǒmen Lǚxíngshède gōngzuò rényuán.      You're mistaken. He's one of our Travel Service personnel.

Notes on No. 7

zhìzào: "to manufacture," as in Zhōngguó zhìzào, "Made in China."

zhìzào chǎng, "plant," "factory"

zài nǎr jiànguo ta: "have seen him somewhere" Nǎr, like other question words used in statements, becomes an indefinite pronoun here: "somewhere."

Wǒ jìde wǒ zài nǎr chīguo zhèige cǎi. I remember having this dish somewhere before.

gǎocuò: "to get (something) wrong" or "to do (something) wrong"

Bié gǎocuò le, zhèige zì hěn fùzá ne! Don't get it wrong; this character is very complicated!

Ò, wǒ gǎocuò le, tā bú shì wǒ yào zhǎode nèige nǚháizi. Oh, I'm mistaken. She isn't the young woman I'm looking for.

Tā bǎ zhèige wèntí gǎocuò le, méiyǒu nàme fùzá. He has misunderstood this problem. It's not that complicated.

Compare other verbs that have the resultative ending ending -cuò:

Nǐ niàncuò le ba, zhèige zì hǎoxiàng bú niàn lǚè, niàn liè. You've read it wrong, haven't you? I don't think this character is read lǚè; it's read liè.

Xiǎoxīn, bú yào zǒucuò. Careful, don't go the wrong way.

rényuán: "personnel," "staff" Often used in gōngzuò rényuán, "working personnel," "staff member."

Zhèlǐ suǒyǒude gōngzuò rényuán dōu shàngguo dàxué. All the personnel here have attended college.

Wǒmen xiànzài xūyào hěn duō dòng Yīngyǔde kējì rényuán. We now need a lot of scientific and technical personnel who understand English.

8. A: Nǐmen chǎng yǐbànr yǐshàngde gōngren sùshè dōu shì xīnde ma! At your factory, over half of your workers' living quarters are new!

B: Nèi jǐnián, sùshè bèi gǎode luànqībāzǎo, zhǐ hǎo gài xīnde le. During those few years, the living quarters were wrecked up, we had no choice but to build new ones.

### Notes on No. 8

yǐbàn yǐshàng: "over half" Yǐshàng and yǐxià are used after quantities to mean, respectively, "over" and "under" an amount.

Zhèrde yǎnjiùshēng, sānshisuì yǐxiàde bú tài duō. Not many of the graduate students here are under thirty.

Zài Běijīng, wǔcéng lóu yǐshàng-  
de dǎlǒu cái yǒu diàntī.

In Běijīng, only buildings over five  
stories high have elevators.

Bāifēn zhī bāshíwǔ yǐshàngde  
Zhōngguó rénǒu shì nóngmín.

Over eighty-five percent of the popula-  
tion of China is made up of peasants.

sùshè: "living quarters"; "dormitory" This can either refer to the  
kind of quarters we think of as dormitories, with many people living and  
sleeping in each large room, or it can mean housing provided by an institution  
for its workers, with each family living in separate quarters.

Zhèi dìfāng shì gāngtiěchǎngde  
gōngren sùshè.

This place is the workers' quarters  
of the iron and steel plant.

Wàijiāobùde sùshè bǐ biéde bùde  
sùshè dōu piàoliang.

The Foreign Ministry living quarters  
are better-looking than those of  
any other ministry.

nèi jǐnián: "those few years" This is currently a way of referring  
to the period of the Cultural Revolution.

bèi: This is a prepositional verb which indicates the DOER of the action,  
similar to the English "by" in passive sentences (like "John was hit by Bill").  
In sentences with bèi, the subject of the sentence is the receiver of the  
action and the object of bèi is the doer of the action:

Wǒde zìdiǎn bèi rén jièzǒu le.

My dictionary was borrowed by  
someone.

Nèi jǐnián, zhěnggè shèhuì bèi  
jǐge rén gǎode luànqībāzāo,  
zhēn měi bānfǎ shuō.

Those few years, the whole society  
was messed up by a few people;  
it is really sad.

Unlike most prepositional verbs, bèi can be used without an object, as in sen-  
tence 8B. Here is another example:

Wǒde xīn qìchē bèi zhuàng le.

My new car was hit.

9. A: Lái! Bǎ zhèi jǐge jiǎozi dōu  
xiāomiè le!

Come on. Polish off [literally,  
"exterminate"] these dumplings!

B: "Xiāomiè" jiǎozi? Wǒ dào méi  
tīngguo zhèige shuōfǎ!

"Polish off" dumplings? I've never  
heard that expression before!

#### Notes on No. 9

Lái!: Notice that lái does not necessarily mean "come here," but can  
also mean "come on" and do some action.

Lái, zánmen gān yībēi!

Come on, let's empty a glass  
together!



Lái ba, wǒmen shàng kè ba, bù  
shuō biéde le.

Come on, let's get on with class and  
stop talking about other things.

Lái lái lái, wǒ lái gěi nǐmen  
jièshào wǒ gēn nǐmen shuōguode  
Liáng Jiàoshòu.

Now everyone, let me introduce  
Professor Liáng, whom I've told  
you about before.

xiāomiè: "to exterminate/eliminate/wipe out/stamp out" bad things such  
as landlords, the enemy, illness, poverty, illiteracy, rats, flies, etc. In  
sentence 9, it is used humorously.

bǎ...xiāomiè le!: You long ago learned le, the marker of completion.  
Here, le indicates that the action of the verb gets rid of something in one  
fell swoop. Here are other examples for comparison:

Bǎ zhèige zhuōzi mài le ba,  
méi yòng le.

Sell this table. It's of no use  
anymore.

Bǎ diànshì guān le, wǒ bú  
kàn le.

Turn off the T.V. I don't want to  
watch any more.

Bǎ yīfu tuō le ba, zhèr tài rè.

Take off your coat; it's too hot  
here.

This use of le is especially frequent with the adverb dōu, "all":

Dōu mài le ba!

Why not buy all of them!

Dōu hē le ba!

Drink the whole thing!

dào: "yet, nevertheless, on the contrary" This is a very common adverb  
with one basic idea to it--the idea of contrasting one element with another.  
Depending on the context, the translation into English will differ. Here are  
examples of the main contexts in which you will encounter dào:

(1) One particular element in the sentence is contrasted with something  
previously mentioned, about to be mentioned, or understood. (The  
contrasted elements are underlined in the following examples.)

A: Nǐ xiǎng hē diǎn shénme?

What would you like to drink?

B: Wǒ bù xiǎng hē shénme, wǒ  
dào xiǎng chī diǎn shénme.

I don't feel like having anything to  
drink. I would like something to  
eat, though.

Xià yǔde shíhou nǐ bú dài sǎn,  
jīntiān bú xià yǔ nǐ dào dài  
sǎn!

On rainy days you don't take an  
umbrella with you, but today, when  
it isn't raining, you do take one  
with you!

(2) The whole situation expressed by the sentence contrasts with another  
particular set of circumstances previously mentioned, about to be  
mentioned, or understood.

Bānshàng zuì hǎode xuéshēng zhèi-  
cǐ dào kǎode zuì bù hǎo.

The best student in the class did the  
worst on the exam this time.

- A: Jīnnián dōngtiān zhēn lěng! It's really cold this winter!  
 B: Shēng bīngde rén dào shǎo le. Fewer people have been getting sick, though.
- A: Zhè fángzi nàme xiǎo, yòu nàme guǐ. This house/apartment is so small, and so expensive.  
 B: Kěshì nǐ shàng bàn duó fāng-bian! But it's so convenient for you to go to work.  
 A: Nà dào shì. Well, that's true.
- Wǒ dàoshì xiǎng bāng máng, jiù shì méi shíjiān. I did want to help, it's just that I didn't have the time.
- Shìqing dàoshì guòqu le, hěn cháng shíjiān yě wàngbuliǎo. It was over with, but we couldn't forget about it for a long time.
- Nà dào méi guānxi, zhǐ yào tā bù jièyì jiù suàn le. That doesn't matter. As long as he doesn't mind, then let it go at that.
- (3) The whole sentence contrasts with expectations. In these cases, dào sometimes implies satisfaction with the state of affairs, sometimes dissatisfaction, and sometimes is neutral. In addition, it sometimes has an ironic meaning, as in the last three examples below.
- Yǒu zhèiyangde shì! Wǒ dào bù zhīdào! Is that so! Why, I didn't know!
- Āiyà! Wǒ dào bǎ zhèijian shì wàng le! Oh no! I forgot about that!
- Sānshíkuài? Nà dào bú guǐ. Thirty dollars? That's not so expensive. (Dào implies "I would have expected it to be more.")
- Rúguǒ zhēn shì zhèiyang, dào hái yǒu xīwàng. If that's really true, then there's still hope after all.
- Hāng, nǐ dào zhēn jiǎng chí a! Well! Quite the gourmet aren't you! (jiǎng=to be meticulous about)
- Hng! Nǐ dào shuōde hǎotīng! Hmph! You make it sound easy! Let's see you do it!  
 Nǐ zuǒzuo kàn.
- Tā shuō wǒ bù gāi zhème zuò, wǒ dào xiǎng zhīdao tā shì wǒ zěme zuò! He says I shouldn't have done this, but I'd like to know what he would have done if he were me!

10. A: Wǒ fāxiàn nǐmende gōngzuò jìnxíngde bú cuò ma! Bù xūyào shíjiān le ba? I find that your work is proceeding very well. I don't suppose you need any more time.
- B: Nǐ shuōde dào róngyì! Nǐ zhīdao wǒmen yòngle duōshǎo yèyú shíjiān! That's easy for you to say. You don't know how much of our time after hours we used!

Notes on No. 10

fāxiàn: "to discover," "to find out"; "discovery"

Wǒ dào le yǒujú cái fāxiàn wàng dài xìn le.

I didn't discover I had forgotten to bring the letters with me until I was at the post office.

Hěn duō yīxué dà fāxiàn dōu fāshēng zài gōngyè gémǐng yǐhòu.

Many great medical discoveries were made after the industrial revolution.

The phrase Wǒ fāxiàn . . . is often used to preface an observation made about a person, or a fact that has just come to one's attention:

Wǒ fāxiàn nǐ hěn néng chī!

I see you have quite a big appetite!

jìnxíng: "to carry on," "to conduct," "to proceed"

Zhèlǐde tāolùn jìnxíngde bú cuò, wèntí kuài shānglianghǎo le.

The discussion here is proceeding well; the problem has almost been resolved.

yèyú: "spare-time," "after hours," "amateur" NOTE: "Spare time" as a noun must be translated as yèyú shíjiān.

Yèyú shíjiān wǒ xǐhuān kàn xiǎoshuō.

I like to read fiction in my spare time.

Tā shì yèyú yǔyánxuéjiā.

He is an amateur linguist.

11. A: Chǎng lǐngdǎo hàozhào quánchǎng gōngren zhèige yuè duō shēngchǎn sībǎibù qìchē. The leadership of our factory made an appeal to the workers of the whole factory to produce four hundred more cars this month.
- B: Bú cuò a! Nà zhèige yuède chǎnliàng chàbùduō děngyú shàngge yuède yíběi bàn la! That's great! Then this month's output is about equal to one and a half times last month's!

Notes on No. 11

Hàozhào or hàozhào means to issue an official appeal to engage in some activity:

Zhèngfǔ hàozhāo niánqīng rén nǚlǐ xuéxí kēxué zhīshì.	The government calls on young people to work hard to acquire scientific knowledge.
--	--

Yīnggāi hàozhāo dàjiā xiāng tā xuéxí.	We should call on everyone to learn from her.
--	--

Chūntiān lái le, yòu hàozhāo zhòng shù le.	Spring is here; they're issuing calls to plant trees again.
---	--

Lǐngdǎode hàozhāo zǒng shì yǐ kāishǐ hěn duō rén tīng, hòulái jiù méi rén zhùyì le.	Appeals from the leaders are always followed by many people in the beginning, then later people stop paying attention to them.
---	---

-bù: This is an extremely common and useful counter. It is used for cars, buses, machines, movies, and long books.

Zhèi shì yíbù jiāng huàxué zhànzhēngde diànyǐng.	This is a movie about chemical warfare.
---	--

děngyú: "to be equal to"

Èr jiā èr děngyú sì.	Two plus two equals four.
----------------------	---------------------------

Děngyú is more often used in a non-mathematical sense:

Tā zhèiyang zuò, děngyú bǎ nǐ zuòde quán dōu gǎi le.	By doing this, he is in effect changing everything you have done. (Literally, "For him to do this is equal to changing all you have done.")
---	---

-bèi: "times," "-fold," as in

sānbèi	three times/threefold
shíbèi	ten times/tenfold
yībǎibèi	one hundred times/hundredfold

Amounts with -bèi can be used in two different patterns, and the type of pattern used influences the meaning, as follows:

#### EQUIVALENCE PATTERN (A = x times y)

- expresses equivalence between two amounts
- uses the verb shì, yǒu, or děngyú

Examples:	Liù shì èrde sānbèi.	Six is three times two.
	Tāde shū yǒu wǒde sìbèi.	He has four times as many books as I.
	Jīnniánde shōurù děngyú qùniánde liǎngbèi.	This year's income is twice last year's.

COMPARISON PATTERN (A is x times more than y)

- expresses comparison between two amounts
- uses bǐ, "compared to," "than"
- the number before -bèi must be translated into English as one more than the Chinese number

EXAMPLES:	Liù bǐ èr duō liǎngbèi.	Six is three times as much as two.
	Tāde shū bǐ wǒde duō sānbèi.	He has four times as many books as I.
	Jīnniándè shōurù bǐ qùnián duō yíbèi.	This year's income is twice last year's.

As you see, if you use liǎngbèi, "two times," in a comparison sentence, the meaning comes out to "the base amount plus two times the base amount," i.e., three times the base amount. Likewise, if you use yíbèi, "one time," the meaning is "the base amount plus one time the base amount," or in other words, twice the base amount.

Unit 7, Review Dialogue

This conversation takes place on one of the China Travel Service tour buses. The bus is on its way to the Capital Iron and Steel Company in Liáoníng province. Jane Colihan (A), an American economist, talks with Líng Lǐ (B) of the China Travel Service.

B: Kǎlāhàn Nǚshì, nín hái shì gǎnhuī-lai le!

Ms. Colihan, you made it back after all!

A: Shíjiān zài jǐn, wǒ yě děi gǎnhuī-lai cānguān Shǒudū Gāngtiě gōng-sī a!

No matter how pressed I was for time, I had to get back in time to visit the Capital Iron and Steel Company!

B: Wǒ xiǎng, nǐmen zhèicǐ dào Dōng-běi cānguān, yào qù de dìfāng nàme duō, shíjiān yíding hěn jǐnzhāng, dàgài zhèi liǎngtiān hái huíbulái. Méi xiǎngdào, ānpaide hái bú cuō.

I thought there were so many places you wanted to go on this trip to Manchuria that you would be very rushed and wouldn't be able to get back by today or tomorrow. I'm surprised it was so well arranged.

A: Ng, Dōngběi fāngmian gǎode hěn hǎo, wǒmen cānguānde dìfāng jiāo-tōng dōu hěn fāngbiān. Yánzhe tiělù, gōnglù, yízhàn yízhàn cānguānguòqu, zhème duō rén de cānguāntuán, shénme wèntí dōu méiyǒu fāshēng, dàjiā dōu hěn mǎnyì, zhēn shì gǎode bú cuō.

Yeah. The people in Manchuria did quite a good job. Every place we visited, transportation was convenient. Visiting each stop along the railroad and highway, with a tour group of that size, no problems came up, and everyone was very pleased. It was really well handled.

B: Nín tài kèqì le.

It's so nice of you to say that.

A: Bú shì kèqì, zhèi shì zhēnde. Duì le, zhèicǐ lǚxíng, wǒ hái fāxiǎn le yíjiàn hěn yǒu yìside shìr.

I'm not just saying it, it's the truth! Oh yes, I found out something very interesting during the trip.

B: Shénme shìr a?

What?

A: Péi wǒmen cānguānde yíwèi nǚ gōngzuò rényuán, cōngqián zài yíge rén-mín gōngshè zuò shèyuán, hòulái hái zài yíge gōngchǎng zuò gōngren, liǎngnián yíqián kāishǐ zài Lǚxíngshè gōngzuò, tā zhēn shì yíwèi hǎo dǎoyóu.

A woman on the staff that accompanied us on the trip used to be a commune member, then became a worker in a factory, and then started to work in the (China) Travel Service two years ago. She's really a great guide.

B: Tā shì bu shì Hēilóngjiāng rén?

Is she a native of Hēilóngjiāng?

A: Bú shì, tā bú shì Hēilóngjiāng rén, kěshì tā duì nàrde qíngkuàng hái zhēn shúxī. Lìshǐ, wénhuà, gōngyè, nóngyè, shénme tā dōu zhīdao. Tīng tā tánqilai zhēn yǒu yìsi.

No, she's not a native of Hēilóngjiāng, but she really knows the place well. History, culture, industry, agriculture, you name it. She's very interesting to listen to.

B: Wǒ zhīdao tā shì shéi le, tā cóngqián shì qìchē zhìzào chǎngde gōngren, xiānzài shì Lǚxíngshède xiānjīn gōngzuòzhě. Tā jiào Jīn Xiǎoméi.

I know who she is. She used to be a worker in an automobile manufacturing plant, and now she's one of the Travel Service's advanced workers. Her name is Jīn Xiǎoméi.

A: Duì le, duì le. Nǐ zhè yì shuō wǒ dào xiǎngqilai le, yǒu yìtiān wǒmen zuòde nàibù qìchē huàile, dàjiā dōu hěn dānxīn, wǒmen xiǎng wǒmen yíding gǎnbushàng cānguān le. Kěshì nàiwèi xiānjīn gōngzuòzhě hé jǐge rén zài qìchē xiàbianr mánglè yíhuǐr, bú dào shífēn zhōng ba, chē jiù xiūhǎo le!

Right, right. That reminds me, one day our bus broke down, and everyone was very worried. We didn't think we could possibly make it in time for our tour. But that advanced worker worked under the bus for a while with some other people, and in less than ten minutes the bus was fixed!

B: Suǒyì nàitiān nǐmen háishì àn yóulǎn jìhuà, yào qùde dìfāng dōu qù le?

So that day, you still made it to all the places you were supposed to go, according to your tour schedule?

A: Shì a. Wǒ yǒu shíhòu jiù xiǎng, zhèiwèi Jīn Xiǎoméi zhēn shì xiāngdāng cōngmíngde rén, tā zěnméi bú qù shàng dàxué ne? Shì bu shì Wénhuà Dà Gémíngde shíhòu yǒu shénme shìqing gǎocuò le?

Yes. Sometimes I think to myself, this Jīn Xiǎoméi is really quite a smart person, why doesn't she go to college? Did she do something wrong during the Cultural Revolution?

B: Ò, méi shénme shìqing. Xiānzài bù guān zài nǎr gōngzuò dōu yǒu hěn duō jīhuì nián shū.

Oh, no. Now, no matter where you work, you have a lot of opportunities to study.

A: Ó, shì ma?

Oh, really?

B: Shì a, bǐfāng shuō, wǒmen jīntiān yào cānguānde zhèige gāngtiě gōngsī ba, língdǎo hàozhāo zhígōng zài yèyú shíjiān xuéxí jìshù.

Sure. For example, the iron and steel company that we're going to visit today: the leaders appeal to the workers and staff to study technology in their spare time.

A: Yǒu hěn duō rén cānjiā ma?

Are there a lot of people taking part?

B: Yǒu. Jīnnián zài yèdàxué xuǎn kède zhígōng děngyú Wénhuà Dà Gémíng yíqiándè liǎng sānbèi.

Yes. The number of staff and workers taking [lit., "selecting"] classes at evening universities this year

- A: Qíngkuàng hěn hǎo a! Nàme Wén-huà Dǎ Gémíngde shíhou ne? Yǒu méiyǒu yèdàxué a?
- B: Nèi shíhou, zhěnggè guójiā dōu bèi gāode luànqībāzāo le, hái yǒu shénme yèdàxué a!
- A: Xiànzài hǎo le.
- B: Xiànzài hǎoduō le, gōngsī yǒu shítáng, yǒu yòuéryuán, niánqīng gōngren bú yòng shuō le, jiù shì yǒu háizide zhígōng yě yǒu tiáo-jian shàng dàxué la!
- A: Zěme, gōngsīde zhígōng dōu zhù zài gōngsī sùshèlǐ ma?
- B: Shǒudū Gāngtiě Gōngsī bǐ yíge xiǎo chéng hái dà, bǎifēn zhǐ qī-bāshí yǐshàngde zhígōng hé jiāshǔ dōu zhù zài gōngsīde sùshèlǐ, shàng, xià bān fāngbian, shēnghuó fāngbian.
- A: Nà hǎo, nà zhēn keyǐ yǒu shíjiān niàn yìdiǎnr shū le.
- B: Suǒyǐ cōngmíngde, nǚlì xuéxíde niánqīngrén yídìng yǒu bànfǎ niàn shūde.
- A: Duì. Ng, wǒ hái yǒu yíge wèntí.
- B: Shénme wèntí?
- A: Wǒ hǎoxiàng zài bàoshang háishi zài nǎr kànjianguo yípiān wénzhāng, shuō Chángjiāng fújīn, ò, Chángjiāng yǐnán yě yǒu yíge xiàndài-huàde gāngtiě gōngsī, bǐ Shǒudū Gāngtiě Gōngsī hái dà.
- B: Shì a.
- A: Chángjiāng yǐnán shì zhōngyāode
- is equal to two or three times the number before the Cultural Revolution.
- That's good! And what about during the Cultural Revolution? Were there evening universities then?
- Back then, the whole country was messed up. Evening universities? Hardly!
- Now it's better.
- Much better. The company has dining halls and kindergartens. Not only young workers, even staff and workers with children are able to take (evening) university courses.
- What? The staff and workers of the company all live in company housing?
- The Capital Iron and Steel Company is even bigger than a town. More than seventy or eighty percent of the staff and workers and their families live in company housing. It makes it more convenient to go to work and to get home from work, and makes daily life more convenient.
- That's good. Then they really have time to study.
- So the smart young people who work hard are assured of the chance to go to school.
- Right. Uh, I have another question.
- What?
- I remember seeing an article, I think in the newspaper or somewhere, that said that in the Yangtze River area, no, to the south of the Yangtze, there is another modern iron and steel company that's even larger than the Capital Iron and Steel Company.
- Right.
- The area to the south of the Yangtze



nóngyèqū, cóng fāzhǎn jīngjìshàng  
kàn, hǎoxiàng yǒu yídiǎnr bú tài  
héshì.

is an important agricultural area,  
from the point of view of economic  
development it doesn't seem to be  
too appropriate.

B: Duì, gōngyè wūrǎn duì nóngyè fā-  
zhǎn méiyǒu hǎochu, wǒmen zài  
xiǎng bànfǎ. Shǒudū gāngtiě gōng-  
sī yě yǒu wūrǎnde wèntí, nǐ zhīdao,  
zhòng gōngyè duì shǒudū lái shuō  
kě bú tài héshì.

Right. Industrial pollution isn't  
good for agricultural development.  
We're working on it. The Capital Iron  
and Steel Company also has a pollution  
problem. Heavy industry isn't very  
appropriate for a capital city, you  
know.

A: Nàme nǐde yìsi shì, Běijīng bù  
zhǔnbèi zài fāzhǎn zhòng gōngyè  
le.

Then you mean that Běijīng isn't  
planning to develop their heavy indus-  
try any further?

B: Duì, zhèi yídiǎn, zhèngfǔde jué-  
dìng shì hěn qīngchude, wǒmen děi  
bǎ Běijīng jiànshèchéng yíge yǒu  
wénhuà, shēnghuó fāngbian, jīngjì  
fādá, yòu fēicháng gānjīngde  
chéngshì.

Right. On this point, the govern-  
ment's decision is very clear. We  
should build Běijīng into a cultural  
city, convenient to live in, eco-  
nomically developed--and very clean.

A: Hǎo, wǒ xiǎng wǒ xiānzài bǐjiǎo  
qīngchu le.

Okay, I think I understand better  
now.

B: Éi, Kǎlāhàn Nǚshì, wǒ zhèr hái  
yǒu liǎngyàng shuǐguǒ, wǒmen bǎ ta  
xiǎomiè le ba!

Oh, Ms. Colihan, I still have a  
couple of fruits here, let's polish  
them off!

A: "Xiǎomiè" le? Hǎo, hǎo. Wǒ dào  
shì dìyíci tīngjian zhèige shuōfǎ.

"Polish them off?" Ohhh. That's  
the first time I've ever heard that  
expression.

B: Kuài yào dào le, shuǐguǒ bù qīng  
ne, cānguānde shíhou nǎzhe ta duó  
lèi ya, hái shì xiānzài bǎ ta chīle  
hǎo.

We're almost there. The fruit is  
kind of heavy. It would be a bother  
to carry it around while we tour. It  
would be better to eat it now.

A: Hǎo, nà jiù xièxie le.

All right, then thank you.

Unit 7, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American visiting the Běijīng Wristwatch Factory talks with the responsible person of the workers' family living quarters.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

-dòng	(counter for buildings)
yèdàxué	evening university
-mén	(counter for school courses)
yàoburán	otherwise

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is the factory's family housing like?
2. What problem do the staff, workers, and technical personnel who live in the cities have?
3. What activity may workers participate in? How many workers do this?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American tourist visiting a train engine factory in the north of China stops in at the kitchen of the factory's dining hall and talks with the chef.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

dà shīfu	chef
cháng	to taste
lǐngwài	other
dōngbù	the eastern part of a country
Wúxī	(city in Jiāngsū province)
Jiāngnán	the area south of the lower reaches of the Yangtze River
bú shì tiánde jiù shì làde	if it isn't sweet, then it's hot
nóngchǎng	farm
yúchǎng	fishery

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Was the chef expecting a visitor? How can you tell?
2. Where is the chef from? (Give both the city and where it is situated.)
3. What kinds of food do people from that area like?
4. Where does the chef get his vegetables?
5. What happened to the factory's food supply during the Cultural Revolution? What appeal did the factory's leadership make in 1977, and what was the result?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

In this exercise, you will hear a conversation between an American student and a young man in Běijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

zhāi huār	to pick flowers
Huángzhuāng	(name of a commune)
zǒng shōurù	total income
fǎnzhèng	anyway
tuī	to push
wàihuì	foreign exchange
gāozhōng	senior high school
-duǒ	(counter for flowers)

Questions for Exercise 4

1. Where does the young man live?
2. How is his production brigade doing? How does he know about these things?
3. What does his father like to do?
4. What are the young man's plans for the future?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

An American visiting the Běijīng Wristwatch Factory talks with the responsible person of the workers' family living quarters.

- A: Nǐmen chǎngde jiāshǔ sùshè dōu hěn gānjīng, yě dōu hěn xīn ma! Your factory's family housing is all very clean and very new!
- B: Wǒmen chǎngde sùshè hái suàn bú cuò, chǎng lǐngdǎo shuō hái yào zài gài jǐdòng xīn sùshè ne! Our factory's housing is pretty good. The factory's leadership says that a few more buildings are going to be built, too.
- A: Sùshè hái bú gòu ma? Isn't there enough housing yet?
- B: Bú gòu, wǒmen chǎng lí chénglǐ zhēn yuǎn, zhǔ zai chénglǐde zhīgōng shàng xià bān hái zhēn shí yǒu diǎnr bù fāngbiān. No. Our factory is very far from the city. It's really pretty inconvenient for the staff and workers who live in the city to get to and from work.
- A: Xiànzài hái yǒu hěn duō gōngren zhǔ zai chénglǐ ma? Are there still a lot of workers living in town?
- B: Yǒu, hái yǒu bù shǎo jìshù rényuán yě zhǔ zai chénglǐ. Tèbié shì nèixiē bú zài yíge chǎng gōngzuòde shuāngzhīgōng, shàng xià bān jǐ gōnggòng qìchē, bǐ shàng bān hái lèi, shíjiān chángde zěnme xíng ne? Suǒyǐ wǒmen zài máng yě děi kuài yìdiǎnr duō gài jǐdòng zhīgōng sùshè. Yes, and there are also a lot of technical personnel living in town. Especially for those working couples who don't work in the same factory, wrestling with the buses before and after work is even more tiring than work itself. How can you expect them to keep that up very long? So no matter how busy we are, we have to put up a few new buildings for staff and workers.
- A: Ràng tāmen dōu bān dào chéngwài lái zhù? And have them all move from the town out here?
- B: Bù, tāmen kéyǐ zhǔ zai sùshèlǐ, měige Xīngqīliù huī jiā jiù xíng le. Zhèiyangr, Xīngqīyī dào Xīngqīwǔde yèyú shíjiān tāmen jiù kéyǐ zài wǒmen chǎngde yèdàxué xuǎn kè, nà duō hǎo! No, they can stay in the dormitories here, but go home every Saturday. That way, from Monday to Friday, they can take courses after work at our factory's evening university, which would be great.
- A: Xiànzài zài yèdàxué niàn shùde gōngren duō ma? Are there a lot of workers taking classes at the evening university now?
- B: Bù shǎo, chàbùduō yǒu yíban yǐshàngde qīngnián gōngren dōu xuǎn yímen, liǎngmén kè. Tīng lǎoshīmen shuō, xiànzài xuéshēngde shuǐpíng dōu kuài yào gǎnshàng Wénhuà Dà Géming yǐqián de xuéshēng lai! Quite a few. Roughly over half of our young workers take one or two courses. According to the teachers, the students' level has practically caught up with the pre-Cultural Revolution level.

A: Kěxǐ wǒde shíjiān ānpaide tài jǐn, yàoburán wǒ hái zhēn xiǎng zài yèdàxué tīngtīng kè ne.

It's too bad that I have such a tight schedule, otherwise I'd really like to sit in on some evening university classes.

B: Nín méi shíjiān tīng kè, qù hé yè dàxuéde lǎoshī tántan yě hǎo ma.

If you don't have time to sit in on any classes, why not go talk with some of the evening university's teachers?

A: Ng, kéyǐ tīng tāmen jièshào jièshào qíngkuàng.

Mm, I could get some information about the university from them.

B: Zǒu, wǒmen dào bàngōngshì qù, qǐng dǎoyóu tóngzhì xiànzài jiù péi nimen qù yītàng.

Let's go to the office and ask the guide to accompany us right now.

A: Hǎo, zǒu.

Okay, let's go.

### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American tourist (A) visiting a train engine factory in the north of China stops in at the kitchen of the factory dining hall and talks with the chef (B).

A: Dà shīfu, mángzhe na?

You must be very busy, chef.

B: Bù máng, bù máng, jìnlai zuò, wǒ gěi nimen chǎole liǎngge xiǎo cài, qǐng nimen chángchang.

No, no, come in and sit down. I made a couple of little stir-fried dishes for you. Please try them.

A: Wǒmen zài lǐngwài yige shítáng chīguo fàn le, chīde hǎo bǎo.

We've already eaten in another dining hall. We're very full.

B: Zài bǎo yě děi chángchang, zhèi shí tángcùde, wǒ zhīdao nimen xǐhuan chī.

No matter how full you are you must try them. This one is sweet and sour, I know you people like that.

A: Wǒ jìde wǒ zài nǎr chīguo, duì le, shì zài Huáshèngdùnde yige Zhōngguó fànguǎnrli, měicì qù wǒ dōu qǐng tamen zuò zhèige.

I remember having this somewhere. Oh yes, it was in a Chinese restaurant in Washington. Whenever I went there I used to ask them to make this.

B: Xǐhuan chī jiù bǎ ta dōu chīle ba! Nǐ gāngcái shuōde nèige fànguǎnr shì Shànghǎi fànguǎnr ma?

If you like it, then eat it all! Is the restaurant you just mentioned a Shànghǎi-style restaurant?

A: Shì. Hòulái wǒ líkāi dōngbù jiù zài yě méi chīguo nàme hǎochīde cài le.

Yes. Later I left the east and never had such delicious food again.

B: Lái, bǎ ta dōu xiǎomièle, wǎnshang wǒ zài gěi nimen zuò biéde.

Come on, polish it off. Tonight I'll make you some other things.

A: Xièxie nín, dà shīfu. Nín bú shì zhèrde rén ba?

B: Bú shì, wǒ shì Wúxī rén.

A: Zài Cháng Jiāng yǐběi?

B: Òu, nǐ gāocuò le, Chángjiāng yǐnán!

A: Wǒ fāxiàn Jiāngnán rén xǐhuan tiánde hé làde.

B: Zhèi dào shì duìde. Wǒmen Jiāngnán rén zuò cài bú shì tiánde jiù shì làde.

A: Nǐmen shítáng měitiān yòng zhème duō cài, dōu shì cóng fùjìn gōngshè mǎide ma?

B: Nálì?! Wénhuà Dà Gémìng yǐqián wǒmen zhèige zhìzào chǎng hé biéde dà chǎng yíyàng, dōu yǒu zìjǐde nóngchǎng, cài dī shenmede. Dà shítángde cài bú yòng shuō le, jiù shì yòuéryuán háizimen chīde shuǐguǒ shenmede yě dōu shì zìjǐ zhòngde.

A: Hòulái ne?

B: Hòulái, Wénhuà Dà Gémìng le, nóngchǎng, cài dī dōu bèi gǎode luànqībāzāo, chīde dōngxī zhēn jǐnzhāng, yú a, ròude bú yòng shuō le, lián cài dōu bú gòu chī le.

A: Xiānzài hǎo le.

B: Yǐ jiǔ qī qī nián, chǎng lǐngdǎo hàozhǎo quǎnchǎng gōngren gǎohǎo shēnghuó, nóngchǎng a, yúchǎng a, yòu bànqilai le, qǐngxíng jiù hǎo duō le. Nǐ kàn, zènme duō cài,

Thank you. Chef, you're not from this area, are you?

No, I'm from Wúxī.

North of the Yangtze River?

Oh, you've got it wrong, south of the Yangtze!

I notice that people from Jiāngnán [the area south of the lower reaches of the Yangtze] like sweet foods and hot foods.

That's true enough. When we people from Jiāngnán cook, if it isn't sweet then it's hot.

You use so much food here in your dining hall, do you buy it all from the neighboring communes?

Oh, no! Before the Cultural Revolution our factory had its own farm, vegetable plots, and so on, as other large factories did. Of course, we grew the food used in the large dining halls, but we even grew all the fruits and things the children in the kindergartens ate.

And then?

Then it was the Cultural Revolution, and the farm and vegetable plots were ruined. Food was in very short supply. Fish and meats were of course tight, but there weren't even enough vegetables.

Now it's better.

In 1977, the factory leadership appealed to all the factory's workers to improve daily living conditions. We started the farm and the fishery again, and things were much better.

---

\*The reason for the phrasing of this sentence is that the food used in the large dining halls (that is, where the workers eat) is of relatively low quality, while the fruits and foods for the kindergarten children are of a fancier grade. The chef thus means, "We didn't just grow low quality foods, we even grew fancy things."

chābùduō dōu shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde,  
yǒu piányi yǒu xīnxiān, duō hǎo!

See all these vegetables, we produced almost all of them ourselves. They're inexpensive, and fresh, too. What could be better.

A: Shíjiān bù zǎo le, àn jīhuà wǒmen  
hǎi děi qù cānguān yīliǎngge dìfāng  
ne!

It's getting late, and according to our schedule we're supposed to visit another couple of places!

B: Hǎo, huí tóu jiàn.

All right. See you later.

A: Huí tóu jiàn.

See you later.

#### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

An American student in China (A) is walking from Běijīng University into town one weekend. (Not many people would do this, because it is a two-hour walk.) Near the People's University (Rénmín Dàxué) on Hǎidiàn Lù, she stoops down to pick a flower on the side of the road. A boy holding a hoe calls out to her.

B: Wèi! Bié zhāi bié zhāi! Zhè  
huār bù néng suǐbiàn zhāi ya!

Hey! Don't pick those! Don't pick those! Those flowers aren't for picking!

A: Duìbuqǐ. Zhèixiē huār dōu shì  
nǐmen zhòngde ma?

I'm sorry. Did you plant these flowers?

B: Shì, yánzhe zhèitiáo gōnglù yìzhí  
dào dòngwuyuán, lǚbiānrshàngde huār  
dōu shì wǒmen zhòngde.

Yes. We planted all the flowers along the side of the highway all the way to the zoo.

A: Nǐ shì Rénmín Dàxuéde gōngrén?

Are you a worker from the People's University?

B: Bú shì, wǒ shì Huángzhuāng  
Dàduìde shèyuán.

No, I'm a commune member from Huángzhuāng Production Brigade.

A: Nǐ jiālide rén dōu zài Huáng-  
zhuāng ma?

Is your whole family in Huángzhuāng?

B: Zài Huángzhuāng jiù yǒu wǒ fùmǔ  
gēn wǒ.

In Huángzhuāng there are only my parents and myself.

A: Nǐ yǒu xiōngdì jiěmèi ma?

Do you have brothers and sisters?

B: Yǒu, wǒ yǒu yíge gēge zài tiělù-  
shàng gōngzuò, shì huǒchē sījī.  
Yǒu yíge gēge zài Shǒudū Gāngtiě  
Gōngsī gōngzuò, tīngshuō tāmen  
zhìzào de dōngxī yǒu bù shǎo hái  
chū guó ne!

Yes, I have an older brother who works on the railroad. He's an engineer. And I have an older brother who works at the Capital Iron and Steel Company. I understand that a lot of the things they manufacture go abroad.



A: Nimen dàduìde shēngchǎn jìnxíng-de zěnmeyàng a?

How is your brigade's production going?

B: Wǒ tīng wǒ fùqīn shuō, cóng chǎn-liàngshàng kàn, wǒmen dàduìde qíngkuàng bù cuò. Jīnnián wǒmen dàduìde zǒng shōurù dēngyú Wénhuà Dà Gémíng shínián shōurùde yíběi!

My father says that from the point of view of yield, our brigade is doing well. This year the total income of the brigade is equal to one time the income over the ten years of the Cultural Revolution!

A: Hē! Zhèi shì zhēnde?!

Wow! Is that true?!

B: Wǒ mā yě nàme shuō, Wénhuà Dà Gémíng nèi shíhou wǒ hái xiǎo, dàduìlǐ fāshēngde shìr, wǒ dōu bù zěnmē qīngchu. Wǒ jiù jìde nèi shíhou tiāntiān kāi huì, nǐ shuō dàrenmen máng ba, hǎoxiàng yě bù zěnmē máng, fǎnzhèng shì kàn tamen zǒngshì bú tài gāoxìng.

My mother says the same thing. I was still young during the Cultural Revolution, and I don't know very well what went on in our brigade. I just remember that during that time there were meetings every day. But were the grown-ups really busy?—not really. In any case, they never looked very happy.

A: Xiànzài nǐ jiālǐ rén dōu gāoxìng ba?

But now everybody in your family is happy, aren't they?

B: Gāoxìng, tèbié shì wǒ mā, yí dào Xīngqītiān jiù tuīshàng yíbiè xiǎo chē, shàng zìyóu shìchǎng le. Tā cháng gēn wǒ shuō, háishì zhèihuǐ-de zhèngcè hǎo a!

Yes. Especially my mother. Every Sunday she goes to the free market, pushing a little cart. She often says to me that the [government's] policy is much better now.

A: Nǐ zìjǐ zěnmeyàng a? Yǒu shénme dǎsuan meiyou a?

What about yourself? Do you have any plans?

B: Yǒu, wǒ fùqīn zhòng huārde jìshù kě gāo la! Tā zhòngle yíběizi huār. Tā gēn wǒ shuō zánmen zhèr shì fēngjǐngqū, zánmen bǎ huār zhònghǎole, néng gěi guójiā zhuàn wàihuǐ ya!

Yes, my father is a real expert at growing flowers. He's been growing flowers all his life. He told me that this is a scenic area, and if we planted flowers, we could bring in a lot of foreign exchange for the state.

A: Nǐ jīnnián shíjǐ le?

How old are you this year? [presuming him to be a teenager]

B: Shísi le. Wǒ fùqīn hái zhǎolai yíběn shū, shì guānyú zhòng huārde, wǒ jīntiān wǎng zài jiālǐ le, xiàcǐ nǐ jīngguò zhèr wǒ zài gěi nǐ kàn. Wǒ fùqīn shuō nà shì kēxué zhòng huār, ràng wǒ hǎohǎo xué.

Fourteen. My father even got a book on flower growing. I left it at home today, but the next time you pass by here I'll show it to you. My father says that it's scientific flower growing and told me to study it hard.

A: Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng shàng dàxué?

Do you want to go to college?

B: Xiǎng shàng! Hòunián wǒ jiù gāo-  
zhōng bìyè le, wǒ kǎo Nóngyè Dàxué,  
jiù xué zhōng huā.

Yes! The year after next I graduate  
from high school and I'm going to take  
the exam for Agricultural University.  
I'm going to study flower growing.

A: Hǎo! Zàijiàn!

Great! So long!

B: Zàijiàn! Bié jí, wǒ gěi nǐ zhāi  
liǎngduǒ huā.

So long! Hold on, let me pick  
you a couple of flowers.

A: Xièxie nǐ.

Thanks.

Unit 8, Reference List

1. A: Zài Guǎngzhōu Jiāoyìhuìshang  
jiù zuò chūkǒu de mǎimai ma? Do they only do export business at the  
Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?  
B: Bú jiù shì chūkǒu, yě yǒu hěn Not just export business. Many people  
duō rén zài nàr tán jìnkǒu also do import trade there.  
màoyì.
2. A: Zhèi jǐge jīngjì tèqū yuè lái yuè fánróng le. These special economic zones are  
getting more and more prosperous.  
B: Shì a! Jìncūkǒu màoyì, jiāgōng gōngyè yuè gǎo yuè duō Yes! Import-export trade and the  
le. processing industry are on the  
upswing.
3. A: Guǎngjiāohuìshang de dōngxī How are the prices at the Guǎngzhōu  
jiàqian zěnmeyàng? Trade Fair?  
B: Jiàqian dōu hái bú cuò, wàiguó The prices are pretty good. It's very  
shāngren hěn shǎo yǒu kōngshǒu huíqù de. seldom that a foreign businessman  
goes home empty-handed.
4. A: Jīngjì tèqūde Zhōngguó gōngren Since the income of Chinese workers  
shōurù bǐjiào gāo, nà huì bu in the special economic zones is  
huì chūxiàn yíge xīnde higher, is it possible a new  
jiējí ne? class will appear?  
B: Méiyǒu nàme yánzhòng! Gèjí It's not that serious! Every level  
zhèngfǔ huì àn zhèngcè bànde. of the government will go according  
to policy.
5. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ shì bu shì Does the Chinese government restrict  
xiànzhì xiāofèipǐn de jìnkǒu? consumer-good imports?  
B: Dāihuìr wǒ gěi nín ná yífèn I'll bring you some materials in a  
cáiliào, nín yí kàn jiù while. As soon as you read them  
qīngchu le. you'll know the answer.
6. A: Zài yíge gōngchǎnglǐ, gōngzuò In a factory only workers with high  
xiàolǜ gāode gōngren cái efficiency can get a pay raise,  
néng tígāo gōngzī, duì ba? right?  
B: Duì a! Duō láo duō dé ma! Right! More pay for more work, you  
know!

7. A: Lǎo Zhāng, jīntiān kāi shénme huānsòng huì? Lǎo Zhāng, what's the farewell meeting for today?
- B: Huānsòng Ōuzhōude lǚshī dàibiǎotuán. We're sending off the European delegation of lawyers.
8. A: Yǒule Zhōng-Měi hǎiyùn tiáoyuē yǐhòu, yánhǎi yí dài jiù gèng rènao le. Since the Sino-American sea transportation treaty, the coastal region has become even busier.
- B: Shì a, kànqilai yǐhòude shínián, zhèi jǐge dà hǎigǎng huì yǒu dà guīmóde fāzhǎn. Yes. It looks as if these large ports will experience tremendous growth in the next decade.
9. A: Nǐ tīngdao xiāoxi le meiyou? Jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu hěn zhòngyàode rén lái. Have you heard the news? Some very important people are coming tonight.
- B: Jīntiānde wǎnhuì yíding hěn yǒu yìsi, qiānwàn bié wǎn le. Tonight's party is sure to be interesting. You mustn't be late!
10. A: Wǒ yào cānguān jiàoxué shèbèi. I want to see the educational equipment.
- B: Jiàoxué shèbèi dōu jízhōng zài zhèige dà tīnglǐ le, huānyíng cānguān. The educational equipment is all together in this large hall. You're welcome to see it.
11. A: Zhōng-Měi liǎngguó wèile zài gèfāngmiàn jīnxíng hézuò dìnghǎole bù shǎo jìhuà. China and America have made a lot of plans to cooperate in various fields.
- B: Ng. Gāng yùn dao Fújiānde zhèixiē shèbèi jiù shì nèixiē jìhuàde yíbùfen. Mm. The equipment which was just shipped to Fújiàn is a part of those plans.

Unit 8, Vocabulary List

chūkǒu	to export
chūxiàn	to appear
dàibǐǎotuán	delegation, mission
dāi huǐr	in a while, later
dàitīng	(large) hall
dīng	to draw up (a plan); to agree on; to conclude (a treaty)
duō lǎo duō dé	more pay for more work
fánróng	to be flourishing, to be prosperous, to be booming
Fújiàn	(a province in south China)
gōngzī	wages
Guǎngjiāohuì	Guǎngzhōu (Canton) Trade Fair
guīmó	scale, scope, dimensions
hǎigǎng	harbor, seaport
hézuò	to cooperate; cooperation
huānsòng	to see off, to send off
huānsòngghuì	farewell/send-off meeting or party
-jí	level, rank, grade, stage, degree
jiāgōng	to process, to finish (a product)
jiāoyìhuì	trade fair
jiàqián	price
jiējí	(social) class
jìnchūkǒu	import-export
jīngjī tèqū	special economic zone (SEZ)
jìnkǒu	to import
jízōng	to concentrate, to centralize
kōngshǒu	empty-handed
lǚshī	lawyer, attorney
màoyì	trade
qiānwàn	without fail, be sure to
shāngren	businessman/businesswoman; merchant
shèbèi	equipment, facilities, installation
tiáoyuē	treaty
wǎnhuì	evening party; evening of entertainment

xiānzhì

to restrict, to limit; restric-  
tion, limitation

xiāofèipǐn

consumer goods

xiàolǜ

efficiency

xiāoxi

news

yánzhòng

to be serious, to be grave

yī...jiù...

as soon as

yùn

to transport, to ship

## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Zài Guǎngzhōu Jiāoyìhuìshang  
jiù zuò chūkǒu de mǎimai ma? Do they only do export business at the  
Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?
- B: Bú jiù shì chūkǒu, yě yǒu hěn  
duō rén zài nàr tán jìnkǒu  
màoyì. Not just export business. Many people  
also do import trade there.

Notes on No. 1

jiāoyìhuì: "trade fair" Jiāoyì means "business, trade, transaction," and huì is the same word you know from kāi huì, "to have a meeting." The full name of the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair is Zhōngguó Chūkǒu Shāngpǐn Jiāoyìhuì, the Chinese Export Commodities Fair (CECF). Since the first CECF in 1957, every spring and autumn Guǎngzhōu is inundated with businessmen and people of all walks of life connected with trade--more than 25,000 at each Fair. Chinese agricultural and industrial products are displayed in the Fairground buildings and open areas, located on Hǎizhǔ Guǎngchǎng (Haizhu Square) between the railroad station and the Dōngfāng Bīnguǎn (Dongfang Hotel). The Fair is held from April 15 to May 15 and from October 15 to November 15.

As the name implies, the CECF's main purpose is to assist China's state trading corporations in exporting goods, but some large import contracts are signed there each year as well.

Chūkǒu, "to export" and jìnkǒu, "to import":

Rìběn měinián chūkǒu hěn duō  
qìchē. Japan exports a lot of cars every  
year.

Wǒ zhēn bù dǒng wèishénme Zhōng-  
guó chūkǒu de dōngxì zǒng shì  
bǐ guónèi mǎide hǎo. I really don't understand why the  
things China exports are always  
better than those it sells domes-  
tically.

màoyì: "trade," as in guónèi màoyì, "domestic trade"; màoyì zhōngxīn,  
"trade center"; màoyì fēng, "trade wind."

Zhèilǎngge guójiā zuìjìn jǐnián  
cái kāishǐ jìnxíng màoyì. It is only in the past few years  
that these two countries have  
started to have trade (with each  
other).

Tán is used in the sense of "negotiate" in such phrases as tán màoyì, "do  
trade (negotiating)," tán shēngyì, "do business," etc.

2. A: Zhèi jǐge jīngjì tèqū yuè lái yuè fánróng le. These special economic regions are getting more and more prosperous.
- B: Shì a! Jìnxūkǒu màoyì, jiāgōng gōngyè yuè gǎo yuè duō le. Yes! Import-export trade and the processing industry are on the upswing.

Notes on No. 2

jīngjì tèqū: Literally, "economic special-district," translated as "special economic zones," and abbreviated as SEZ. SEZs are designated areas similar to the export processing zones (EPZs) which have been extremely successful in places such as Taiwan. China established SEZs to bring in the foreign capital needed to create jobs and modernize the national economy. In these zones, foreign investors' assets, profits, and other rights and interests are legally protected, and their operations enjoy tax and duty exemptions. Proposed investment projects are examined and approved by the Provincial Administration of the SEZ, which also draws up its own development plans and organizes their implementation. The SEZs compete with each other for foreign investment. As of 1981, Guǎngdōng province had three SEZs--Shēnzhèn, Zhūhǎi (near Macao), and Shāntóu--and other SEZs had been established in Fújiàn province and Hǎinán Island. A wide variety of enterprises have already been set up.

fánróng: "to be flourishing/prosperous/booming"

- Rìběnde shāngyè hěn fánróng. Japan's commerce is flourishing.
- Shínián yǐhòu, zhèige dìfang huì biànde gèng fánróng le. Ten years from now, this place will become even more prosperous.
- Cóng zhèige zhǎnlǎnhuìshàngde dōngxī, nǐ kěyǐ kàndào fánróngde Měiguó wénhuà. From the things in this exhibition, you can see the flourishing American culture.

Fánróng can also mean "to make something prosper":

- Bàn jiāoyìhuìde mùdì jiù shì yào fánróng jīngjì. The purpose of holding trade fairs is to promote economic prosperity.

jiāgōng: (1) "to finish" a product, i.e., to work on a half-finished or finished article to make it more perfect or finer; (2) "to process" a raw material into a finished product.



3. A: Guǎngjiāohuì shàng de dōngxī jiàqián zěnmeyàng? How are the prices at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?
- B: Jiàqián dōu hái bú cuò, wàiguó shāngren hěn shǎo yǒu kōngshǒu huíqude. The prices are pretty good.. It's very seldom that a foreign businessman goes home empty-handed.

Notes on No. 3

Guǎngjiāohuì: This is an abbreviation of Guǎngzhōu Jiāoyìhuì.

jiàqián: "price"

Zhèige píngguǒ shénme jiàqián? How much are these apples?

Tāmende dōngxī hěn hǎo, jiàqián yě bú cuò. Their things are very good, and the prices are pretty good, too.

Jiǎng jiàqián means "to bargain, to haggle":

Zài Zhōngguó de shāngdiàn lǐ, bù kěyǐ jiǎng jiàqián, dàn shì zài zìyóu shìchǎng shàng kěyǐ. You cannot bargain in stores in China, but you can in the free markets.

kōngshǒu: "empty-handed" Kōng means "to be empty," as in

Zhèige xiāngzi shì kōngde. This case is empty.

Kōngshǒu is used adverbially:

Wǒ bù hǎo yìsi kōngshǒu dào tā jiā qu. I would be embarrassed to go to his house empty-handed.

4. A: Jīngjì tèqū de Zhōngguó gōngren shōurù bǐjiào gāo, nà huì bu huì chūxiàn yíge xīn de jiējí ne? Since the income of Chinese workers in the special economic regions is higher, is it possible a new class will appear?
- B: Méiyǒu nàme yánzhòng! Gèjí zhèngfǔ huì àn zhèngcè bānde. It's not that serious! Every level of the government will go according to policy.

Notes on No. 4

chūxiàn: "to appear" As with fāshēng, "to happen," which you learned in the previous unit, chūxiàn is often followed in the sentence by the thing that appears, whereas in English the thing usually precedes "appear" ("Will a new class appear?").

Zhèige wèntí zài gāng chūxiānde  
shíhou, méiyǒu rén fāxiàn,  
xiānzài zhīdao yǐjīng tài  
wǎn le.

When this problem first appeared,  
no one discovered it. Now that  
we've found out about it, it's too  
late.

Tàiyang chūxiàn zài dōngfāngde  
shíhou, jiù shì xīnde yítian  
kāishǐ le.

When the sun appears in the east,  
it means that a new day is  
beginning. [tàiyang, "sun"]

Zhèige shíhou, qiánmian chūxiàn  
yítiao dà hé, shì wǒ méi  
xiǎngdào de.

At this moment, a large river  
appeared up ahead, something I  
had not expected.

jiēji: "(social) class" In the PRC, this word enters into many special  
phrases such as jiēji jiàoyù, "class education" (which consists of recounting  
the difficult past to schoolchildren and younger workers).

Shìjièshang méiyǒu yíge méiyǒu  
jiējide shèhuì.

There is no society in the world  
which is without classes.

yánzhòng: "to be serious, to be grave"

Zhèige qíngkuàng xiāngdāng  
yánzhòng.

This situation is quite serious.

Zhōngguó yǒu yánzhòngde rénǒu  
wèntí.

China has a serious population  
problem.

Zhèige wèntí bú shì yánzhòng dào  
yíding yào qǐng lǐngdǎo lái  
juédìng.

This problem is not so serious that  
we have to ask our leader to  
decide it.

Nǐ hái méi kànchū zhèige wèntíde  
yánzhòngxìng.

You still haven't discerned the  
seriousness of this problem.

-jí: "level, rank, stage, grade, degree"

Zhèi yíjí lǐngdǎo hái bù néng  
juédìng zěnmē bàn, nǐ děi  
zhǎo shàngjí lǐngdǎo.

This level leader cannot decide  
what to do. You must go to an  
upper-level leader.

Gànbu yígòng yǒu èrshíliù jí,  
shíjí yǐshàngde kěyǐ kàn  
yìzhǒng pǔtōng rén kànbudào de  
bào zhǐ.

Altogether, there are twenty-six  
grades of cadres. Those above  
grade ten may read a newspaper  
that ordinary people cannot read.  
(The Cānkǎo Zīliào, "Reference  
Materials")

Nǐ zhè xié zhēn gāojí!

These shoes of yours are really  
classy!

5. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ shì bu shì  
xiànzhì xiāofèipǐnde jìnkǒu? Does the Chinese government restrict consumer-good imports?
- B: Dǎihuǐr wǒ gěi nín nà yí fèn  
cǎiliào, nín yí kàn jiù  
qīngchū le. I'll bring you some materials in a while. As soon as you read them you'll know the answer.

Notes on No. 5

xiànzhì: "to restrict, to limit" or "restriction, limitation"

Wǒ àiren xiànzhì wǒ měige yuè  
chōu qīkuài qiānde yān. My spouse limits me to smoking seven dollars' worth of cigarettes a month.

Wèile xiànzhì rénmín de zìyóu,  
zhèngfǔ dìngle bù shǎo guīju. The government has set up a lot of rules to restrict the people's freedom.

Zài gāosù gōnglùshang, bǎ qìchē-  
de sùdù xiànzhì zài wǔshíwǔ-  
yīnglǐ yíxià shì bǐjiǎo héshíde. It is rather appropriate to limit the speed of cars on the expressway to fifty-five miles an hour.

Yǒu bù shǎo xiànzhì zhēn ràng  
rén gǎobudǒng wèishénme yào  
zhème zuò. There are many restrictions that leave one at a loss as to why one has to do it that way.

Yīnwèi shíjiānde xiànzhì, wǒ  
méi néng zuòdao wǒ kéyǐ zuòde  
nàme hǎo. Because of time restrictions, I was not able to do as well as I could have.

Xiànzhì is often used in the phrase shòu xiànzhì, "to be restricted" (literally, "to receive restriction"):

Zài nàige guójiā, wàiguó rén  
lǚxíng shòudao hěn dà xiànzhì. In that country, foreigners are very restricted when they travel.

xiāofèi: "to consume"

Zhèige gōngchǎng yìtiān xiāofèi  
duōshǎo méitàn? How much coal does this factory consume a day?

Yǐqián Běijīng jiù shì yíge  
xiāofèi chéngshì, shénme yě  
bù shēngchǎn. Běijīng used to be just a consumer city; it didn't produce a thing.

Xiāofèizhě is a "consumer."

dǎihuǐr: A Běijīng expression equivalent to děng yíhuǐr in the sense of "in (after) a while":

Dǎihuǐr wǒ sòng nǐ huíqu. In a little while, I'll take you back.

Wǒ xiānzài xiān qù yǒu diǎnr  
shǐ, dǎihuǐr jiù lái.

Let me first go and take care of  
something I have to do; I'll be  
back in a minute.

yǐ...jiù...: "as soon as..." You already know that jiù means "then"  
in the sense of immediately thereafter, e.g.,

Tā shuōwán jiù zǒu le.

He left right after he finished  
speaking.

When using the adverb yǐ, "as soon as," jiù is often used in the following  
clause.

Tā yí dào, wǒmen jiù kěyǐ zǒu le.

We can leave as soon as he gets  
here.

Tiān yí liàng, tā jiù qǐlái kāi-  
shǐ gōngzuò.

As soon as it gets light out, he  
gets up and starts to work.

Wǒ yí kàn jiù míngbai le.

I understood as soon as I looked  
at it (OR read it).

Tā yí tīng zhèijù huà jiù jí le.

He got anxious (upset) as soon as  
he heard this sentence.

Wǒ yí fāxiàn hùzhào diū le, mǎ-  
shàng jiù dào língshǐguǎn qù  
le.

As soon as I discovered that I had  
lost my passport, I immediately  
went to the consulate.

Tā zěnmē yí qù jiù shì bàntiān?

What's taking him so long?

Sometimes yǐ...jiù... is used in the sense of "every time," or "whenever"  
(i.e., once certain conditions come about, something is sure to happen):

Wǒ duì zhèrde lù hái bù shú, yǐ  
bú zhùyì jiù huì zǒucuò.

I'm still not very familiar with the  
roads here. I go the wrong way  
whenever I'm not paying attention.

Píngcháng tā hěn máng, kěshí yǐ  
dào Xīngqītiān, tā jiù yào kāi  
chē chūqu wánr.

Usually he is very busy, but when  
Sunday comes he always goes out in  
his car to have fun.

Wǒ yí hē jiǔ jiù tóu yūn.

I get dizzy whenever I drink.

Tā měicì yǐ yǒu wèntí jiù xiǎng-  
dào wǒ, méi wèntíde shíhòu  
cónglái bù jìzhe wǒ.

He thinks of me whenever he has a  
problem, but never remembers me  
when he doesn't have any problems.

Yǐ is sometimes used without jiù in a following clause, as in

Wǒ gāng yí tīng hǎoxiàng bù duì,  
hòulái yǐ xiǎng, duì le.

When I first heard it, it didn't sound  
right, but then after I thought about  
it, [I realized] it was right.

6. A: Zài yíge gōngchǎnglǐ, gōngzuò  
xiàolǚ gāode gōngren cái  
néng tígāo gōngzī, duì ba? In a factory only workers with high  
efficiency can get a pay raise,  
right?
- B: Duì a! Duō lǎo duō dé ma! Right! More pay for more work, you  
know!.

Notes on No. 6

xiàolǚ: "efficiency"

Tāde xuéxí xiàolǚ hěn gāo, yì- He is very efficient in his studies.  
tiān néng kàn bù shǎo shū, hái He can read a lot in one day and  
néng jìzhu bù shǎo. can remember a great deal too.

Wèile tígāo shíjiān xiàolǚ, wǒmen We must pool our forces in order to  
bìxū jízhōng lìliàng. increase our efficiency. (Shíjiān  
xiàolǚ just means efficiency within  
a certain period of time.)

cái: You have seen cái meaning "only when, not until" (Ta míngtiān cái  
dào, "He isn't coming until tomorrow") and meaning "only in that case, not  
unless" (Zhèiyang Zhōngguó wénhuà cái néng bǎochíxiàqù, "Only in this way can  
Chinese culture be preserved"). In sentence 6A, the necessary condition is  
gōngzuò xiàolǚ gāo. Since cái is an adverb, it must always precede the verb  
(here, néng), whereas in English, "only" precedes whatever it refers to (here,  
the noun phrase "workers with high efficiency").

7. A: Lǎo Zhāng, jīntiān kāi shénme Lǎo Zhāng, what's the farewell meeting  
huānsònghuì? for today?
- B: Huānsòng Ōuzhōude lǚshī We're sending off the European  
dàibíǎotuán. delegation of lawyers.

Notes on No. 7

huānsòng: Literally, "joyously send off," this is a formal word for "to  
give someone a send-off." The ordinary word is just sòng.

dàibíǎo: "to represent, to stand for" or a "representative, delegate"

Wǒmen bù néng dōu qù. Nǐ We can't all go. Why don't you  
dàibíǎo, hǎo bu hǎo? stand in, okay?

Nǐ dàibíǎo shéi? Whom do you represent?

Tā dàibíǎo tā gōngsī qù cānjiā He went to the trade fair representing  
nèige jiāoyìhuì. his company.

As a prepositional verb, dàibíǎo can be translated as "on behalf of" or "in  
the name of":

Wǒ dàibǎo Lǚxíngshède tóngzhǐ  
xièxiè nǐ.

I thank you on behalf of the comrades  
at the China Travel Service.

8. A: Yǒule Zhōng-Měi hǎiyùn tiáoyuē  
yǐhòu, yánhǎi yí dài jiù gēng  
rènao le.

Since the Sino-American sea transport-  
ation treaty, the coastal region  
has become even busier.

B: Shì a, kànqilai yǐhòude shí-  
nián, zhèi jǐge dà hǎigǎng  
huì yǒu dà guīmóde fāzhǎn.

Yes. It looks as if these large ports  
will experience tremendous growth  
in the next decade.

### Notes on No. 8

hǎiyùn tiáoyuē: "sea transportation treaty" The word tiáoyuē, "treaty," "pact," is used loosely here, for it was technically an "agreement" (xiédìng) which was signed between the U.S. and China on September 17, 1980. The maritime transport agreement stipulates that the U.S. open all its ports to China and China open specified ports to the U.S. (some Chinese ports do not have sufficient facilities). One third of the commercial shipping is to be handled by Chinese or American vessels.

guīmó: "scope, scale"

Zhèige gōngchǎngde guīmó bù xiǎo,  
jiù shì jǐshù lìliang tài ruò  
le.

The scope of this factory is quite  
large, it's just that its technical  
capability is too weak.

Zhōngguó dà guīmóde gāi gōngyù  
dàlǒu, zhèijǐnián háishì dìyí cì.

It is only in the past few years that  
China has started to build high-rise  
apartment buildings on a large scale.

9. A: Nǐ tīngdao xiāoxi le meiyǒu?  
Jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu hěn  
zhòngyàode rén lái.

Have you heard the news? Some very  
important people are coming tonight.

B: Jīntiānde wǎnhuì yíding hěn  
yǒu yìsi, qiǎnwàn bié wǎn le.

Tonight's party is sure to be inter-  
esting. You mustn't be late!

### Notes on No. 9

xiāoxi: "news" This has a few meanings: (1) "news" between people-- "tidings"; (2) "news" reported in a newspaper, news periodical, or newscast (this meaning is shared in common with xīnwén); (3) "information" in the sense of "intelligence," "news" about someone or something (e.g., "Is this information reliable?").

Yǒu shénme xiāoxi?

What information is there?

Wǒ gàosu nǐ ge hǎo xiāoxi!

Let me give you some good news!

Hěn cháng shíjiān méiyǒu tāde  
xiāoxi le.

We haven't heard from him  
(OR about him) for a long time.

qiānwàn: "under any circumstances; by no means; be sure"

Qiānwàn yào xiǎoxīn, tiān hēi le,  
lù bu hǎo zǒu.

Be sure to be careful. It's dark out,  
so it's difficult to travel.

Nǐ dào le yǐhòu qiānwàn lái ge  
diànhuà.

When you arrive, be sure to call.

Qiānwàn bú yào wàngjǐ bǎ nèiběn  
shū dàilái, wǒ míngtiān yào  
yòng.

Make sure you don't forget to bring  
that book; I need it for tomorrow.

Zhèijiàn shì, qiānwàn bù néng  
ràng ta zhīdao.

He must absolutely not find out  
about this.

10. A: Wǒ yào cānguān jiàoxué shèbèi. I want to see the educational equipment.

B: Jiàoxué shèbèi dōu jízōng  
zài zhèige dàtīnglǐ le,  
huānyíng cānguān.

The educational equipment is all to-  
gether in this large hall. You're  
welcome to see it.

#### Notes on No. 10

shèbèi: "equipment; facilities; installation"

Yǒude chǎng suīrán shèbèi hěn  
hǎo, dànshì shēngchǎn hái shì  
gǎobu hǎo.

In some factories, although the  
equipment is very good, production  
is still poor.

Cóng Déguó jìnkǒude zhèixiē shè-  
bèi dànbùfēn shì yīxué fāng-  
miànde.

Most of this equipment imported from  
Germany is for use in medicine.

Zhèige gōngyùde shèbèi bǐ zhè  
fùjīnde biéde gōngyù dōu hǎo.

The facilities in this apartment  
building are better than those of  
any other in the area.

jízōng: "to concentrate; to centralize; to put together"

Bǎ lìliang jízōng zài xué Zhōng-  
wénshàng shì bù xíngde, yīnwèi  
hái yǒu xǔduō biéde shì yào zuò.

It won't do to concentrate all your  
effort on studying Chinese, because  
you have many other things to do.

Zhèipiān wénzhāng jízōngle jǐge  
rén de kànfǎ, suǒyǐ kànqilai  
hěn yǒu yìsi.

This article assembles the opinions  
of several people, so it is very  
interesting to read.

Zài rénkǒu jízhōngde dà chéngshì  
zhǔ hěn yǒu yìsi.

It is very interesting to live in  
a big city with a concentrated  
population.

Wǎnhuīshang xūyào de dōngxī dōu  
yào jízhōng fānghǎo de.

The things that will be needed at  
the evening party should all be  
put together in one place.

Zhèixiē dōngxī fāng zài zhèlǐ  
jízhōng xié bù hǎo ma?

Wouldn't it be better to put those  
things here, all together in one  
place?

11. A: Zhōng-Měi liǎngguó wèile zài  
gèfāngmiàn jīnxíng hézuò  
dìnghǎo le bù shǎo jìhuà.

China and America have made a lot of  
plans to cooperate in various fields.

B: Ng. Gāng yùn dào Fújiān de  
zhèixiē shèbèi jiù shì  
nèixiē jìhuà de yībùfēn.

Mm. The equipment which was just  
shipped to Fújiān is a part of  
those plans.

#### Notes on No. 11

Zhōng-Měi liǎngguó: "China and America, the two countries" This is a  
formal way of saying Zhōngguó hé Měiguó.

hézuò: "together-do," i.e., "to cooperate"

Wǒmen děi hézuò zhèijiàn shì cái  
néng bàn de hǎo.

We must work together on this if we  
are to do it well.

Tā bú yào gēn wǒ hézuò.

He doesn't want to cooperate with me.

Xiànzài Zhōngguó hé wàiguó shāng-  
rende hézuò yuè lái yuè duō le.

China is having more and more coopera-  
tion with foreign merchants.

Hé- can also be used before other one-syllable verbs, for example,

Zhèiběn shū shì wǒmen héxiě de.

We wrote this book together.

dìng: "to agree on; to draw up (a plan); to conclude (a treaty)"

Zánmen dìng ge xuéxí jìhuà ba!  
Zhèiyang xiàqu, shénme yě xué-  
budào.

Let's put together a study plan!  
We won't learn a thing if we keep  
on like this.

Yībǎiduōnián qián, Qīngcháo  
zhèngfǔ hé wàiguó dìngle bù  
shǎo duì Zhōngguó hěn bù hǎo de  
tiáoyuē.

More than a century ago, the Qīng  
Dynasty government concluded many  
treaties with foreign countries that  
were very bad for China.



yùn: "to carry, to transport"

Tā qù Zhōngguóde shíhou bǎ tāde  
qìchē yě yùnnú le.

When he went to China, he shipped his  
car over too.

Zhèxiē dōngxi fēicháng zhòng,  
yùnlái bù fāngbian.

These things are extremely heavy, and  
are difficult to transport.

Zhème duō dōngxi, hǎiyùn bǐ  
kōngyùn piányide duō.

With so many things, it would be  
much cheaper to ship them by sea  
than by air.

Unit 8, Review Dialogue

Near the Guǎngzhōu Export Commodities Trade Fair, Miss Sarah Pearson (A), an American lawyer, spots Chén Guóqiáng (B), of the China Travel Service. Chén is carrying a shopping bag.

A: Éi, Xiǎo Chén, mǎi dōngxī qu  
la?

Hey, Xiǎo Chén, have you been out shopping?

B: Shì a, lái Guǎngzhōu, bù néng  
kōngshǒu huíqu, wǒ gěi wǒ àiren  
mǎile yíjiàn chènshān.

Yes. When one comes to Guǎngzhōu, one can't go back empty-handed. I bought a shirt for my wife.

A: Hē! Hǎo gāojíde chènshān! Jiā-  
qian yě bú cuò. Dài huǐ wǒ yě qù  
mǎi liǎngjiàn. Zhèizhǒng chènshān  
shì Guǎngzhōu shēngchǎnde ma?

Well! What a classy shirt! The price is also pretty good. Later, I'll go buy a couple, too. Is this kind of shirt produced in Guǎngzhōu?

B: Bú shì, shì Sūzhōu shēngchǎnde.

No, it's produced in Sūzhōu.

A: Wǒmen zài Sūzhōude shíhou méi  
jiànguó! Kànqilai Zhōngguóde hǎo  
dōngxī dōu jízhōng dào Guǎngzhōu  
lái le!

We didn't see any when we were in Sūzhōu! Apparently, all of China's good things come together in Guǎngzhōu!

B: Guǎngjiāohuìshangde jīqī ya,  
xiǎofèipǐn la, dōu shì cóng quán-  
guó yùnláide, zhǎnlǎn yǐhòu jiù  
zài Guǎngzhōu mài, suǒyǐ zhèr  
shāngdiǎnlǐ mǎide dōngxī yǒu duō  
yǒu hǎo.

The machines and consumer items at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair are shipped here from all over the country, and after being exhibited, are sold right here in Guǎngzhōu, so the stores here sell a lot of different items, and of good quality.

A: Xiǎo Chén, wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dǎ-  
ting yíxiār ne, Guǎngzhōu fǔjīnde  
jiāgōng gōngyè xiānzài fāzhǎnde  
zěnmeyàng le?

Xiǎo Chén, I wanted to find out from you how the processing industry in the vicinity of Guǎngzhōu is developing?

B: Jìn nián lái, fāzhǎnde bú màn.  
Zhūyào shì zhèixiē gōngchǎng yǒu  
wàiguó gōngsī cānjiā, suǒyǐ tāmen-  
de shēngchǎn hěn yǒu tèdiǎn.

In recent years, it has been developing rather quickly. The main thing is that there are some foreign companies participating in these factories, so their production is very distinctive.

A: Wǒ jīntiān zài bàozhǐshàng kàn-  
dao yíge xiǎoxi, shuō zài jǐge  
dìfāng chénglǐle "jīngjī tèqū."

I saw a story in the paper today that said that "special economic zones" have been established in several places.

B: Shì. Zài Guǎngdōng, Fújiàn,  
Shànghǎi, dōu yǐjīng yǒu zhèiyang-  
de tèqū. Yǐhòu dàgài hái huì  
gèng duō.

Yes. There are already special zones like this in Guǎngdōng, Fújiàn, and Shànghǎi. In the future, there will probably be even more of them.

A: Yǒu méiyǒu tèbiéde fǎlǚ guǎn  
zhèixiē dìqūde jīngjī qíngkuàng?

Are there special laws governing  
the situations in these special  
economic zones?

B: Yǒu. Wǒmen yǒu Zhōngwénde, yě  
yǒu Yīngwénde, nǐ xūyào ma?

Yes. We have the Chinese and the  
English (versions). Do you need it?

A: Xūyào a!

Yes!

B: Ō, duì le, nǐ shì lǚshī a!  
Dāngrán xūyào le. Wǒ mǎshàng jiù  
qù zhǎo. Nǐ yào Zhōngwénde háishì  
Yīngwénde?

Oh, right: you're a lawyer! Of  
course you need it. I'll go get it  
right away. Do you want the Chinese  
or the English?

A: Wǒ dōu yào.

Both.

B: Hǎo, Lǚxíngshè, fàndiànli dōu  
yǒu, děng yíxià huíqu wǒ gěi nǐ  
ná. Ō! Duì le, kěnéng jiāoyìhuì-  
lǐ yě yǒu, wǒ qù gěi nǐ wènwen.

Okay. The Travel Service and the  
hotel both have it. Later, when we  
go back, I'll get it for you. Oh,  
right--maybe they also have it at the  
trade fair. I'll go ask them for you.

A: Hǎo ba! Wǒmen yìqǐ qù, yìbiān  
zǒu yìbiān liáoliáo.

All right! Let's go together, and  
chat on the way.

B: Hǎo!...Nǐ dàgài tīngshuō le,  
xiànzài jìnchūkǒude xiànzhi bǐ-  
jiǎo shǎo le, wǒmen yòu hé xǔduō  
guójiā dīngle màoyì tiáoyuē, kāi-  
shǐ gāo jīngjī hézuò. Suóyì zuì-  
jīn zhèixiē niánde jiāoyìhuì tè-  
bié rènao.

Okay!...You've probably heard that  
now there are fewer restrictions on  
imports and exports, and we have also  
concluded trade treaties with many  
countries, and are starting to engage  
in economic cooperation. So the trade  
fair has been particularly lively the  
past few years.

A: Zhèi yìdiǎn wǒ yě zhùyìdào le,  
xiànzài yì zǒujìn jiāoyìhuì dà-  
tīng, yǎnjīng jiù bú gòu yòng le,  
zhēn shí yuè bàn yuè hǎo le, wǒ  
hái tīngshuō xiànzài biéde dìfāng  
yě yǒu xiǎo guīmóde jiāoyìhuì le,  
hěn duō wàiguo dàibǐǎotuán qù  
cānjiā, shì ma?

I've noticed that myself. Now, as  
soon as you walk into the hall of the  
trade fair, your eyes can't take every-  
thing in. It's really getting better  
and better. And I hear that now there  
are small-scale trade fairs in other  
places, which a lot of foreign dele-  
gations attend. Is that so?

B: Shì. Tèbié shì yǒule ZhōngMěi  
hǎiyùn tiáoyuē yǐhòu, jǐge dà hǎi-  
gǎng gèng fánróng le. Zài zhèixiē  
hǎigǎng, hái yǒu Běijīng, xiànzài  
dōu yǒu xiǎo guīmóde jiāoyìhuì,  
yǒu xǔduō wàiguo shāngren zài nàr  
zuò mǎimài.

Yes. Especially since the Sino-  
American sea transportation treaty,  
the larger ports have become even more  
prosperous. In these ports and in  
Beijing, there are now small-scale  
trade fairs where many foreign mer-  
chants do business.

A: Duì, duì, duì. Wǒ tīngshuō le.  
Suóyì wǒ xiǎng yǐhòu yánhǎi yí dài  
huì yǒu hěn dàde fāzhǎn.

Oh, yes. I've heard that. So I  
think the coastal region will develop  
greatly in the future.

- B: Wǒ yě zènme xiǎng. I think so, too.
- A: Wǒ hái yǒu yíge wèntí, zài jīng-jì tèqūlǐ gōngzuòde gōngren, gōng-zǐ shì bu shì gāo yídiǎnr ne? I have another question: Do the workers in special economic zones have higher wages?
- B: Wǒ xiǎng gāo yídiǎnr. I believe so.
- A: Nà bú shì huì chūxiàn yíge xīnde jiēji ma? Then might not a new class arise?
- B: Méi nàme yánzhòng! It's not that serious!
- A: Wèishénme? Why?
- B: Yìbānde lái shuō, yǒu wàiguó gōngsī cānjiāde gōngchǎng, suīrán gōngzǐ gāo yídiǎnr, kěshì gōngzuò xiàolǜ yě bǐjiào gāo a. "Duō lǎo duō dé" shì shèhuìzhǔyìde jīngjì zhèngcè ma! Generally speaking, in factories that have the participation of foreign companies, although the wages are higher, the efficiency is also higher. "More pay for more work" is the economic policy of socialism, you see!
- A: "Duō lǎo duō dé"! Zhèige zhèng-cè bú cuò. "More pay for more work"! That's a good policy.
- B: Ò, duì le, nǐ bié wàngle, jīn-tiān wǎnshang wǒmen zài fàndiǎnli yǒu yíge wǎnhuì. Oh, right--don't forget that we have a party in the restaurant tonight.
- A: Wǎnhuì? Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bú jìde le. Party? Excuse me, but I don't remember.
- B: Zuótiān gěi nǐ sòngqude qǐng-tiē. Nǐ wàng le? The invitation was sent over to you yesterday. Have you forgotten?
- A: Ò, duì le, shì huānsònghuì! Oh, yes: it's a farewell party!
- B: Shì, shì Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè bànde. Shì huānsòng, yě shì huān-yíng. Yes. It's being given by the China Travel Service. It's to send you off, but also to welcome you.
- A: Huānyíng? Welcome?
- B: Huānyíng nǐmen zài lái ya! To welcome you to come again!
- A: Dāngrán, wǒmen yíding huì zài lái. Of course. We'll be sure to come again.
- B: Nǐ qiānwàn bié wàngle. Wǎnshang qīdiǎn bàn! You mustn't forget. Seven-thirty in the evening!
- A: Hǎo, wǒ yíding lái! Okay, I'll be sure to come!

Unit 8, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American reporter talks with the director of the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair at a press conference.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

-jiè	session
wàishāng	foreign businessman
yāoqiú	request, demand
jiànyì	suggestion, proposal
píngzi	bottle
rēng	to throw away
bāozhuāng	packaging

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is the American reporter's suggestion? What two reasons does he give?
2. Have the Chinese been able to follow this suggestion? Why?
3. How does the reporter suggest the Chinese might raise their bottling efficiency?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

### Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American reporter talks to a leading cadre from an industrial commercial organization.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

zìcǒng	ever since
cuòwù	to be mistaken, to be wrong
zhījiān	between
wàishāng	foreign businessman
fāngxiàng	direction
chángqī	long term

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What interesting things does the American say have come about in special economic zones like Fúzhōu? How does he think the situation might develop?
2. What does the Chinese say was one mistake of the Cultural Revolution?
3. What does he say is the relationship between socialism and the policy of "more pay for more work"?
4. What does he ask the American to tell his friends about China's direction?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

This exercise is a conversation between two employees at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

bǎi zhuōzi	to set a table
wàishāng	foreign businessman
zīběn	capital
bǎozhèng	to assure, to guarantee
kěn	to be willing

Questions for Exercise 4

1. Who is being given a send-off?
2. Why does the woman say China needs lawyers?
3. Why is the farewell meeting not going to be an ordinary one?
4. What kind of work do these two workers do at the Trade Fair?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

At a press conference in the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair, an American reporter (A) talks with the director of the Trade Fair (B).

- B: Gèwèi hái yǒu shénme wèntí ma? Do you have any more questions?
- A: Yǒu yíge hěn xiǎode wèntí, wǒ xiǎng zuìjìn jǐjiè jiāoyìhuì kàn-qilai dōu gǎode hěn bú cuò, wàiguó shāngren hěn shǎo yǒu kōngshǒu huí-qude, búguò yǒu xiē qíngxíng nǐmen néng bu néng gǎide kuài yidiǎnr ne? One small question. The last few trade fairs have all looked very successful. Foreign businessmen have rarely gone home empty-handed. But couldn't you change certain things a little faster?
- B: Dāngrán, wàishāngmen tíchūlaide yāoqiú wǒmen zǒngshì yào kǎolǔde. Bān Guǎngjiāohuìde mùdì jiù shì yào fánróng jīnchūkǒu ma! Of course, we always consider suggestions from foreign businessmen. The purpose of holding the Guǎngzhōu zhōu Trade Fair is to make foreign trade prosper!
- B: Wǒ zhǐ yǒu yíge jiànyì. Nǐmende píjiǔ píngzi kě bu kéyǐ gǎi xiǎo yidiǎnr ne? Wǒmen hěn xǐhuan Zhōngguó chūkǒude píjiǔ, kěshì hěn bù xǐhuan nàixiē xiàng jiāngyóu-píng yíyàngde dà píngzi. Yùnqilai bù fāngbian. Ērqiě Xīngqīliù, Xīngqītīan wǒmen xǐhuan chūqu lǚ-xíng, xiǎo píng píjiǔ hēwán jiù rēng, duōme fāngbian. I just have one suggestion. Could you make your beer bottles smaller? We like the beer that China exports, but we don't like those big bottles that look like soy sauce bottles. They're difficult to ship. Besides, on weekends we like to go out on trips. It's so convenient to have small bottles which you can throw out when you're finished.
- B: Xièxie nǐ. Zhèige jiànyì tíde hěn hǎo. Shàngcì Xiānggǎng màoyì dàibiǎotuán lái zhèlǐde shíhou yǐjīng tíchulai le. Dāi huǐr wǒmen jiù kéyǐ qǐng gèwèi kàn yíxià wǒmende xiǎo píng píjiǔ, bú guò zhèizhǒng píjiǔ mùqián hái bù néng dà guīmó shēngchǎn, wǒmende shèbèi hái yǒu hěn duō xiànzhí. Thank you. That's a very good suggestion. It was already made by a trade delegation from Hong Kong when they came here. Later, we can show you our smaller-bottle beer, but at present this kind of beer cannot yet be produced on a large scale. Our equipment still has many limitations.
- A: Yěxǔ zài zhèifāngmian wǒmen Měiguó gōngsī kéyǐ hé Zhōngguó fāngmian hézuò, tígāo bāozhuāngde xiǎolǚ. Perhaps some of our American companies might be able to cooperate with China in this area and raise your bottling efficiency.
- B: Zhèige wèntí bǐjiǎo fùzá, wǒmen děi yánjiū yánjiū, wǒ xīwàng bù jiǔ, wǒmen jiù kéyǐ gěi nǐ yíge mǎnyìde huídá. This is a rather complicated question which we will have to look into. I hope that we will be able to give you a satisfactory answer before long.
- A: Xièxie nǐ. Thank you.



- B: Hái yǒu shénme biéde wèntí ma? Any more questions?
- A: Xiànzài méiyǒu le. No.
- B: Hǎo, nàme wǒmen de zhāodàihuì jiù kǎi dào zhèlǐ, wǒ yào xièxie gèwèi xīnwénjiě péngyǒu de bāngzhù hé jiānyì, xièxie dàjiā. All right, then we'll end the press conference here. I'd like to thank all of you friends from the press for your help and suggestions, and thank all of you.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American reporter (A) and a leading cadre (B) from an industrial commercial organization talk.

- A: Liú Xiānsheng, nín hǎo, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Hello, Mr. Liú, I haven't seen you in a long time.
- B: Hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Hěn máng ba? Yes, it's been a long time. Have you been busy?
- A: Méiyǒu nàme máng, jiù shì lèi yidiǎnr. Not so busy, I'm just tired.
- B: Zuìjìn yòu dào nǎr qù le? Where have you been to again lately?
- A: Fújiàn. Fúzhōu fùjìn yǒu yíge hěn dàde jīngjì tèqū, wǒ zài nǎr zhùle jǐtiān, juéde hěn yǒu yìsì. Fújiàn. Near Fúzhōu there's a very large special economic zone where I stayed a few days. I found it very interesting.
- B: Shì a. Zìcóng hé nǐmen dīngle hǎiyùn tiáoyuē yǐhòu, jǐge dà hǎigǎng dōu shì yuè gāo yuè fánróng le. Yes. Ever since we concluded the sea transport treaty with you, our big ports have been getting more and more prosperous.
- A: Bú jiù shì zhèixiē, Fúzhōu hái chūxiànle yìxiē hěn yǒu yìside shì. Not only that, but some very interesting things have come about in Fúzhōu.
- B: Nǐ shuōshuo kàn ne? What's that?
- A: Zài jīngjì tèqū gōngzuòde Zhōngguó gōngren, tāmen de shōurù bǐjiǎo duō, tāmen bǐjiǎo róngyì mǎidào zhǐliàng bǐjiǎo hǎode xiāofèipǐn. Nín xiǎng zěnmeyàng? Zài jīngjì tèqū huì bu huì chūxiàn xīnde jiējí, zài zhèngzhìshàng huì bu huì chūxiàn xīnde qíngkuàng? Chinese workers who live in special economic zones have larger incomes, and it's easier for them to get higher quality consumer goods. What do you think: Will a new class appear in the special economic zones? Will a new political situation develop?

B: Nǐ qiānwàn bú yào nàme xiǎng.  
Qiánxiē nián, wǒmen zhǐ gāo zhèng-  
zhí bù gāo jīngjī shì cuòwude.  
Érqiě zhǐ gāo zhèngzhì, zhèngzhì  
yě méiyǒu gāohǎo ma!

You mustn't think like that. Dur-  
ing those few years, we were mistaken  
to engage only in politics and not  
in economics. Moreover, we didn't  
even handle the politics well.

A: Nàme, nǐ xiǎng zhèige qíngkuàng  
hé shèhuìzhǔyìde gōngzī zhèngcè  
zhījiān bú huì yǒu shénme dà wèntí  
le?

So you don't think that there will  
be any big problems between this  
situation and the socialist wage  
policy?

B: Nǐ fāng xīn hǎo le, "duō lǎo duō  
dé" shì wǒmen de zhèngcè. Zhèige  
zhèngcè shì bú huì gǎide. Gāo yì-  
tiān shèhuìzhǔyì jiù děi shíxíng  
yìtiān "duō lǎo duō dé" de zhèngcè.  
Zài jīngjī tèqūde gōngsī, gōng-  
chǎng, duōbān yǒu wàishāng cān-  
jiā, shèbèi tiáojiàn hǎo yidiǎn,  
gōngzuò xiǎolǚ gāo yidiǎn, gōng-  
ren gōngzī duō yidiǎn shì yīng-  
gǎide. Qíngkuàng bú huì yánzhòng-  
dào chūxiàn yíge xīnde jiējī.

You can rest assured about that.  
"More pay for more work" is our pol-  
icy, and it won't change. Socialism  
and the policy of "more pay for more  
work" must go hand in hand. Most of  
the companies and factories in special  
economic zones have foreign mer-  
chants participating. They have bet-  
ter facilities and higher efficiency.  
It's right that their workers have  
higher pay. The situation could  
never become so serious that a new  
class would appear.

A: Hǎojíe, xièxie nín.

Wonderful. Thank you.

B: Bú kèqǐ, qǐng nǐ gào su nǐde  
péngyoumen, dà gāo Sìge Xiàndàihuà  
shì wǒmen de fāngxiàng, fǎnróng  
jīngjī shì zhèige dà fāngxiàngde  
yībùfen, shì wǒmen chángqīde  
zhèngcè, bú huì suíbiàn gǎide,  
qǐng gēfāngmiànde péngyou fāngxīn.

Not at all. And please tell your  
friends that going all out with the  
Four Modernizations is our direction.  
Making our economy prosper is one part  
of that big direction, and it's our  
long-term policy. We won't change it  
arbitrarily. Ask our friends in all  
spheres to rest assured.

A: Hǎo, wǒ yíding zhuāngào tamen.

All right, I'll be sure to pass the  
message on to them.

#### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

This is a conversation between two employees at the Guǎngzhōu Trade  
Fair.

A: Dàtǐnglǐde zhuōzi dōu bǎihǎo le  
meiyǒu?

Have all the tables in the large  
hall been set?

B: Bǎihǎo le. Jīntiān yòu shì  
huānsòng shéi ya?

Yes. Who is it that is being given  
a send-off today?

A: Huānsòng yíge Xiānggǎng láiide  
lǚshī dàibǐǎotuán.

A delegation of lawyers from Hong  
Kong.

B: Lǚshǐ? Fǎlǚ gōngzuòzhě gēn  
Guǎngjiāohuì yǒu shénme guānxi?

Lawyers? What connection do legal workers have with the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?

A: Xiànzài Zhōngguó hé wàishāngde  
hézuò yuè lái yuè duō le. Zhōng-  
guó yào jìnkǒu shèbèi, yào gǎo  
jiāgōng gōngyè, huòshì yào gǎo bié-  
de jīngjì hézuò, dōu xūyào fǎlǚ a!

China is cooperating more and more with foreign merchants. If China wants to import equipment, to do processing or finishing of products, or have any other economic cooperation, they need lawyers!

B: Wǒ hái shì juéde yǒu yìdiǎnr qí-  
guài, bù zěnmē qīngchū, wǒ cónglái  
méi xiǎngdào fǎlǚ hé jīngjì hái  
yǒu guānxi.

I still think that's kind of strange. I don't really understand. I never thought that law had anything to do with economics.

A: Wàiguó shāngren ma, jiàqian na,  
zìběn na, shenmede, dōu yào yòng  
fǎlǚ xiěqīngchūde, yàoburán, tāmen  
zěnmē zhīdao bǎozhèng keyì zhuàn  
qián ne? Bù keyì zhuàn qián, tā-  
men wèishenme yào hé wǒmen zuò  
mǎimai ne?

Foreign merchants, you know. They have to write out clearly their prices and capital in legal terms, otherwise how can they know for sure that they are guaranteed to make money? And if they can't make any money, why would they want to do business with us?

B: À! Nín zhèi yì shuō wǒ jiù qīng-  
chū le. Yǒule fǎlǚ bǎozhèng, wài-  
shāng cái kěn zuò mǎimai.

Oh! When you put it that way, I understand. Foreign merchants are only willing to do business if they have legal guarantees.

A: Hǎo le, zài qù kànkàn, wǎnhuì-  
shang xūyàode dōngxì dōu yào jí-  
zhōng fàngǎode.

Okay, go back and take a look. The things we'll need during the banquet should all be put together in one place.

B: Hǎo, jìde le.

All right, I won't forget.

A: Hái yǒu, nǐ tīngdao xiāoxi le  
meiyou?

And another thing: Have you heard the news?

B: Méiyou a, shénme xiāoxi?

No, what news?

A: Jīntiān wǎnshangde huānsòng huì  
bú tài píngcháng.

Tonight's farewell meeting isn't going to be an ordinary one.

B: Zěnmē bù píngcháng ne?

How's that?

A: Guǎngdōng shěng, Guǎngzhōu shì  
gèjī rénmin zhèngfǔ dōu yào pài  
hěn zhòngyàode rén lái. Yǒu hěn  
duō hěn zhòngyàode shì yào zài  
zhèr tán, wǒmen děi bǎ shénme dōu

All levels of the people's government of Guǎngdōng province and the city of Guǎngzhōu are sending very important people. They'll be talking about a lot of important things here.

yùbeihǎo, ràng lǐngdǎo fàng xīn.

We should prepare everything well and put the leadership at ease.

B: Méi wèntí, wǒ zài qù jiǎnchá yíci. Nín dāi huǐ kě děi zài lái kàn yíxià a!

That won't be any problem. I'll go back and check once more. But later you have to go look things over once yourself!

A: Hǎo, dāi huǐ wǒ jiù lái.

Okay, I'll be right there.

APPENDIX:

**WORD USAGE EXERCISES**

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose between *cānguān*, *fǎngwèn* and *kàn* in translating these sentences.

1. What places did you visit when you went to China?
2. I don't even have time to visit my friends.
3. This is not a formal (*zhèngshì*) visit. Don't be nervous (*jīnzhāng*).

II. *shǎoshù*, *hěn shǎo*

1. There are very few people who will not help others.
2. Only a small number of students make (*chū*) that kind of mistake.

III. Choose between direction names with *-fāng*, *-bù*, and *-biān* (for example, *běifāng*, *běibù*, and *běibiān*).

1. Northerners like to eat foods made from wheat (*miànshí*), and Southerners like to eat rice (*mǐfàn*).
2. There are several famous universities in the eastern United States.
3. Hángzhōu is southwest of Shànghǎi.
4. New York is in the northeast.
5. Inner Mongolia is west of Manchuria.
6. People from northern Taiwan have a different accent from southerners.

IV. *dǒng*, *liǎojiě*, *zhīdào*, *tīngshuō*, *tīngdǒng*

1. If you understood that I wasn't going to come, why did you still stand there waiting for two hours?
2. I could understand everything he said, although he spoke with a very heavy (*zhòng*) accent (*kǒuyīn*).
3. Such a weird (*guài*) guy is really impossible to understand.
4. I understand you're going to school this summer. Is that true?
5. I can understand the Shànghǎi dialect, but I can't speak it very well.

V. *gǎo*, *nòng*, *zuò*

1. Doing these sentences drives me crazy ("gives one a headache").

2. It was very difficult to do scientific experimentation  
(kěxué shíyàn) under such circumstances.
3. What are you doing there, you naughty child!

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose *-zhǒng*, *-lèi*, or *-yàng* to translate these sentences:

1. How could you think that he was that kind of person?
2. She'll eat any kind of food.
3. What breed of dog (*gǒu*) is this?
4. We should research these questions by category.

II. *mùqián*, *xiànzài*, *zhèihuīr*

1. Where is he now?
2. At present the international situation (*guóji xíngshì*) is complicated.
3. I'm leaving right now.
4. It is now 9:26 Běijīng time.

III. *nǚlì*, *yònggōng*, *shì* ("to try")

1. Try doing it this way. If it doesn't work, we'll see what we can do about it later.
2. All the students here are hardworking.
3. China is hard at work on modernization, and we want to help.
4. I tried his office three times today, but no one answered the phone.

IV. *pǔbiàn*, *pǔtōng*, *píngcháng*, *liúxíng*

1. That's a popular saying.
2. In Shanghai, for men and women to hold hands (*shǒu lā shǒu*) is a very common thing.
3. How much does an ordinary worker here make a month?
4. Frisbees (*fēipán*) are now very common in Běijīng.

V. *wánquán*, *quán*, *zhěnggè*

1. The room was filled with smoke (*yān*).
2. His idea (*xiǎngfǎ*) was completely wrong.
3. I'm afraid he completely misunderstood what I meant.
4. The whole article was about how bad their planning had been.
5. His whole family came.



VI. *qūbié, chābié, bù yíyàng*

1. There aren't many differences between the big cities of the northeastern United States and those of Western Europe (*Xī'ōu*).
2. I could hardly tell the difference between the twins (*zhèduì shuāngbǎotāi*).
3. Would you explain the difference between these two terms (*míngcí*)?

VII. *rènwéi, yīwéi, xiǎng, juéde*

1. He thought that it was an hour earlier than it really (*shíjìshàng*) was.
2. I think the best way to study a foreign language (*wàiyǔ*) is to live in the country where it is spoken.
3. What do you think of Běijīng?
4. Why do you consider him such a dangerous person?
5. A: Has he already gone back?  
B: I think so, but I'm not sure.

VIII. *shǒuxiān, xiān, dìyī*

1. First I stayed in a small town (*xiǎozhèn*) for a month and then came here.
2. In his office, he is always the first to arrive.
3. You have to first get the pronunciation right in order to get the spelling (*pīnxiě*) right.

IX. *tiáojiàn, qíngkuàng*

1. Why don't you apply yourself to your studies? You have such excellent conditions.
2. He can't stand (*shòubuliǎo*) the situation any longer.
3. Under the circumstances, he had no choice but to agree.
4. How are business conditions in China these days?
5. Conditions have changed greatly in rural China in the past thirty years.
6. Working conditions there are better now than the last time I visited.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

- I. Choose *miànji*, *dìqū*, *-dài*, *-qū*, *-bù*, or *bùfen* in translating these sentences.

1. This area is very dirty.
2. This area of the city isn't safe.
3. The area of this room is nine square meters (*jiǔ píngfāng mǐ*).
4. In the northeastern area of China, there is a lot of industry.
5. This kind of rice is produced in the Jiāngnán area.
6. The southwestern part of the United States has a very distinctive natural environment.
7. I don't get the chance to come to this part of town very often.
8. This kind of architecture is very popular in these parts.

- II. *dàozi*, *mǐ*, *fàn*

1. His father grows rice.
2. This is fried rice, not plain ("white") rice.
3. This rice is grown (*chūchǎn*) only in Guǎngdōng.

- III. *fāzhǎn*, *zhǎng*

1. Your rice is growing pretty well!
2. China's economy has grown slowly during the past two decades.
3. The kids are growing so fast.
4. Our company has grown quickly.
5. Over the past one hundred years, Shàntóu has grown into an important industrial city.

- IV. *jiā*, *jiāting*, *jiā(lǐ)rén*, *-hù*

1. There are no boys in their family.
2. Xiǎo Píng's whole family went to the seashore on Sunday.
3. Such a family is rare (*bù cháng jiàn*) in America.
4. Thirty years ago there were only twenty-odd families in this town (*xiǎozhèn*).
5. Next Saturday I'm going up to Běijīng to see my family.
6. Almost every family has a television in our country.  
Some families have more than one.

V. jīqì, jīxiè

1. Our country's machine industry is still young.
2. The application (yìngyòng) of large machines started three hundred years ago.
3. Agricultural machinery is badly needed in China.
4. Shall I take you to see our new machinery now?

VI. -kǒu, -ge, -wèi

1. Will the seven of us fit (in the car)?
2. Those three professors all graduated from Harvard (Hǎifó).
3. How many people are there in your family?
4. (When entering a restaurant for dinner)  
Headwaiter: How many?  
You: Four.

VII. píngjūn, yìbān

1. The average height (gāodù) of the students in this class is about 1.6 meters (yīmǐ liù).
2. The average person can eat fifteen to twenty-five jiǎozi.
3. On an average day, I can write five pages (yè).

VIII. rén, rénmin, rénmen, rénjia

1. The people would surely not like to keep (bǎoliú) such a thing in the constitution (xiànfǎ).
2. There isn't much difference between the two brothers (in personality).
3. Friendship involves at least two people.
4. I've heard people say that they're going to build (gài) a hotel at that intersection.
5. People naturally prefer to live in a quiet place rather than in the busy downtown area (nàoshì, "busy downtown area").
6. People are people; she's no different from anyone else.

IX. túpiàn, zhàopiàn, huà(r)

1. I think that picture is of her mother, but it must have been taken many years ago.
2. Where did you get so many pictures of China?
3. The picture that old man (lǎotóuzi) is drawing is really ugly!

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose *gài*, *xiǔ*, *jiànzhù*, or *jiànshè* in translating these sentences:

1. This highway was three years in construction. (It took three years to finish building this highway.)
2. Are those workers building new dormitories?
3. Is this how you intend to build a powerful country?!
4. Many city walls (*chéngqiáng*) built in ancient times were destroyed (*huīle*) during wars.
5. No one may build in this district.
6. How long did it take to build this bridge (*zhèizhuò qiáo*)?

II. *kě*, *zhēn*, *yídìng*, *dāngrán*, *shì* ("to be," emphatic)

1. He is going to go, but he hasn't decided when yet.
2. When you tell him, he's sure to be happy.
3. That sure was an interesting movie.
4. He sure has a lot of friends!
5. Drugs (*dúpǐn*)--that's certainly not something to mess with.
6. A: Can you tell me why your government didn't send anyone to take part?  
B: Sure I can tell you. It's like this: . . .
7. A: Would he know the answer (*dá'àn*) to this question?  
B: I'm sure he would.
8. They want to concentrate on only a portion of the work; that just won't do!

III. In each sentence, "how old" requires a different translation.

1. How old is this building?
2. How old are you? (*tó* a young person)
3. How old is your boy?
4. How old is your grandfather?
5. How old is China?
6. How old is this movie?
7. How old are these shoes of yours?
8. How old are these magazines?
9. How old is this chicken soup? (*How long since it was made?*)
10. How old is this bean curd? (*How long since it was bought?*)

IV. *gǔ, gǔdài*

1. That's an ancient building.
2. Man already knew how to cook in ancient times.
3. He likes to study (*dú*) the ancient books.
4. Xī'ān is an ancient city.

V. *chuānguò, jīngguò, guò, guòqu*

1. Ten years have passed, and she's still just as young and pretty (as before).
2. Cross the street and wait for me in front of that building.
3. I pass there every day on my way to work (*shàng bānde shíhou*).
4. Time passes so quickly!
5. The train passed several stations without stopping.
6. When I'm in a hurry, I cut through the park.
7. After a month had passed, he felt much better.
8. Through the efforts of many people, we have been able to set up (*kāibàn*) an elementary school here.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. *bāng, bāngzhù, bāngmáng*

1. Would you help me?
2. I don't need this kind of help.
3. He came to help.
4. Would you hold this for me for a second?
5. I'll help you write the report (*bàogào*).
6. We can help each other.

II. *gè-, měi-, yī-* ("one")

1. Each person has his own ideas. How can he make you do it this way?
2. Each year we have many excellent students.
3. Each state has some laws of its own.
4. These apples are a dime each.
5. Each book he writes is better than the last.

III. *guān, guānxīn, jièyì*

1. Although she says little, she actually (*shíjìshàng*) cares deeply.
2. If you don't mind, I'd like to ask you a few questions.
3. People didn't care a bit about those pitiful (*kěliánde*) children.
4. Who cares what you do?!
5. Don't mind him!

IV. *qítā, biéde, lìng(wài), yī-, nèi-*

1. These sentences are pretty good; the others are too colloquial (*tǔ*).
2. Well, you can say he's right about this point, but how about the other questions?
3. One is too weak, the other is too fat (*pàng*).
4. When you're taking the test, don't think about other things.
5. This vase is not bad, but the other one is even prettier.
6. Do you want to know the other reasons?
7. Put your other hand here.

V. -wèi, dīwèi

1. I don't like to talk with those who are in high positions.
2. India's rice (dàmǐ) output is the highest ("first") in the world.
3. He's too young to be in such a high position.

VI. bú fàngxīn, dānxīn

1. I'm very worried about him. He doesn't look well.
2. Without you here I've been sort of anxious.
3. What is there to worry about?
4. I would really worry if you went alone.
5. Don't worry. She's already grown up; she can take care of herself.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. *gōngchǎng, chǎng*

1. The air is really bad because there are so many factories in this area.
2. She'd never been so happy since she came to ("entered") this factory.
3. He works in a camera factory.

II. *měi, hǎokàn, piàoliàng*

1. She's really a beautiful girl.
2. What a beautiful place this is!
3. This dress doesn't look good at all. Why do you want to buy it?
4. You speak beautiful standard Chinese!
5. What a handsome son you have, Department Chief Xú.
6. The weather is beautiful today.

III. *chà, bù hǎo, huài*

1. His pronunciation is too bad.
2. He doesn't speak French well.
3. His Japanese isn't bad.
4. On the whole, it's a pretty nice place; it's just that the weather is always bad.
5. Bad boy ("child")!
6. Conditions here used to be very bad; now they're much better.
7. That commune's level of mechanization is rather poor.

IV. *liǎojiě, zhīdào, rènshi, shóu (shú)*

1. I didn't know him when we were at Oxford (*Niújīn*).
2. Do you know what happened between them (*tāmen zhījiān*)?
3. I know nothing about that.
4. You still don't know me too well, do you?
5. I knew him, but not very well. We had only met a couple of times.
6. I know of him, but I've never met him.
7. I still don't know Běijīng very well; perhaps we should go together.
8. (*To taxi driver*) I want to go to the Dàhuá Restaurant. Do you know it?
9. Of the three of us, you know him best. Do you think he would mind if we did this?



TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose *háishí*... or *zuì hǎo* in translating these sentences.

1. We'd better not go after all. See, it's raining.
2. You'd better walk there. It's very hard to drive on that road.
3. It's best to be mentally prepared ("in the heart have preparation").
4. I'd better not drink too much. I have to drive.
5. It would be best if I could talk with him in person. Would that be possible?
6. Chinese food is still the tastiest, don't you think?

II. *jiāshǔ, jiā, jiā(li)rén*

1. This housing is for workers and their families.
2. How many people are there in the average worker's family?
3. Is your whole family in Huángzhuāng?
4. They go home every Saturday to be with their families.

III. *kuài (yào), yào, huì, gāng yào, zhèng yào, jiù yào, hěn kuài jiù*

1. Be patient. We'll be there soon.
2. He's going to get his Ph.D. (*bóshì xuéwèi*) this summer.
3. You've come at the perfect time. I'm just about to pack the suitcases.
4. She'll be happy if you do that.
5. Look, it's about to rain.
6. It's going to rain today.
7. That's what I was just about to say, (but) you didn't give me the chance to say it.
8. She forgot about the matter very soon.
9. Three new consulates (*lǐngshìguǎn*) are going to open very soon.
10. I'm about to die of hunger!
11. Don't worry. I'll tell him.
12. It's almost over (finished).
13. If you don't stay in touch ("maintain contact") with them, they forget you very soon.
14. He came when I was just about to leave.

IV. *yánzhe, pángbiān*

1. They've planted a lot of trees alongside the river.
2. Alongside the street, I saw many new stores.
3. They built a railroad alongside the border.
4. Just walk along this street, and you'll see a lot of clothing stores.
5. There is a park alongside the factory.

V. *yǐshàng, shàngmian, -duō* OR *yǐxià, xiàmian, bú dào*

1. There are probably over ten people there.
2. He has under twenty students.
3. Children ten and over may participate:
4. It will cost over fifty dollars.
5. We had been going for less than an hour when the car broke down.
6. Only buildings with over four stories have elevators.
7. Under this brigade there are ten production teams.
8. It's been over a month since I saw him last.
9. His office is right above mine.

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

- I. Choose *dāihuǐr*, *děng yíxià*, *děng (yì)huǐr*, *yǐhòu*, or *hòulái* in translating these sentences:

1. I'll be leaving in a minute.
2. Later, when you have time, let's talk, okay?
3. Wait a second. I think I hear him coming.
4. Later, I found out that she had been a Red Guard.
5. Things were very chaotic at that time, but later on they got better.
6. His later short stories are mostly about the Uygurs.
7. He'll be here in a while.

- II. *fánróng*, *fādá*

1. The Táng dynasty was a period (*shíqī*) when China's culture flourished.
2. I didn't expect that this place would have become so prosperous in the ten years since I left.
3. Livestock farming is well developed in Xinjiang and Inner Mongolia.
4. Japan's industry and commerce are flourishing and the economy is thriving.

- III. *qiānwàn*, *yídìng*

1. Be sure to bring that book.
2. Be sure not to forget to ask him whether he is coming.
3. I'll be sure to tell him.

- IV. *xiāoxi*, *xīnwén*

1. Where did you hear this news?
2. There isn't any interesting news in today's paper.
3. Is there any news about China?
4. She often brought us unpleasant (*bù yúkuàide*) news.
5. Has there been any news about when the meeting will be held?
6. What good news is there today?
7. News reporters (*jìzhě*) are the best at getting information.

# VOCABULARY

## Module & Unit

ài	to love	7.6
àiqíng gùshi	love story	8.1*
àishang	to fall in love with	7.6
Ālābó	Arab, Arabic	8.6*
àn	shore, bank, coast	8.3*
àn	according to	8.7
āndìng	to be peaceful and stable, to be quiet and settled	7.7
ānpái	to arrange	8.1
ànshí	on time	8.6*
ba	(marker of pause, hypothesis)	8.5
bāba	father, dad, papa	7.4
Bādàlǐng (Bádàlǐng)	(area northwest of Běijīng)	8.4
bǎifēn zhī X	X percent	8.3
báitiān	daytime	7.3
bǎi zhuōzi	to set a table	8.8*
-bān	(counter for class of students)	7.3*
bāng	to help; as a help to, for (someone)	8.5
bàng	to be great, to be fantastic, to be terrific	7.4*, 7.7*, 8.4*
bāng máng	to help; help	7.4
bāngzhu	to help; help; as a help to, for	7.2
bāo	to wrap	7.8*
bǎochí	to keep, to preserve, to maintain	7.5
bǎohù	to protect	7.6
bǎozhèng	to guarantee, to assure	8.8*
bāozhuāng	to package; packaging	8.8*
-bèi	time, -fold	8.7
bèi	(passive marker)	8.7
Běidà	Běijīng University	8.2
běifāng	the north	8.1
bèihòu	behind someone's back	7.2*
-bèizi	lifetime	7.2
běndī	this locality, local	8.3*
běnlái	originally, in the beginning, at first; to begin with, in the first place	7.7
běnrén	herself, himself, oneself, myself, etc.	7.6*
bǐ	to compare	7.1*
biàn	to change, to become different	7.3
biànchéng	to change into	7.2*, 7.3

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
biānhuà	change(s)	8.5
biānjiāng	border region, frontier region	8.6
biānjīng	(national) border	8.5
bǐcǐ	each other, one another, both; the same to you	7.5 <sup>*</sup>
bǐjiào (bǐjiǎo)	comparatively, relatively, more; fairly, rather; to compare	8.1
bīng rén	sick person, patient	7.3 <sup>*</sup>
bómǔ	aunt (wife of father's elder brother); term for the mother of one's friend	7.8
bóshì	Ph.D.	7.2 <sup>*</sup>
-bù	(counter for films; counter for auto-mobiles, machines, etc.)	8.1 <sup>*</sup> , 8.7
bú fāngxīn	to worry	7.3 <sup>*</sup>
-bùfen	part, section	8.2
bù guǎn	no matter (what, whether, etc.)	7.5 <sup>*</sup> , 7.6
bù huāng bù máng	calm, not the least bit flustered	7.8 <sup>*</sup>
bú jiàn bú sǎn	don't leave until we've met up	7.7 <sup>*</sup>
bù jiǎndān	not ordinary, not commonplace; remarkable	7.7 <sup>*</sup>
bù néng bu	to have to, must	7.7
bù shǎo	to be quite a lot, to be much, to be many	7.4
bú shí...jiù shí...	if it isn't...then it's...; either... or...	7.7
bú shí tián de jiù shí lǎ de	if it isn't sweet, then it's hot	8.7 <sup>*</sup>
bú xiǎng huà	to be ridiculous, to be outrageous, to be absurd (talk, acts, etc.)	7.6
cái	only (before an amount)	7.3
cái	only in that case, only under this condition	7.5
cáichǎn	property	7.4
càidǐ	vegetable plot	8.3
cáiliào	material(s); data	8.2
cānguān	to visit and observe	8.1
cānjiā	to participate in, to take part in; to join; to attend	7.6
cānkǎoshū	reference book	8.2 <sup>*</sup>
chā	to differ; to be inferior, to be poor, to be not up to standard; to lack	8.6
chābié	difference, disparity	8.2
cháng	to be long	7.1
cháng	to taste	8.7 <sup>*</sup>
chǎng	factory, plant	8.5 <sup>*</sup> , 8.6
chàng gē	to sing (songs)	7.6 <sup>*</sup>

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
Cháng Jiāng	Yangtze River	8.3°, 8.7
chángqī	long term	8.8°
chǎnliàng	output, yield	8.3
-cháo	dynasty (bound form)	8.4
chǎo	to be noisy; to disturb by making noise	7.8
chǎodài	dynasty	8.4
chǎoxǐng	to wake (someone) up by being noisy	7.8
-chéng	(verb ending) into	7.3
chénggōng	to succeed	8.6°
chēnghu	to call, to address	8.1
chénglǐ	to establish, to found, to set up	8.5
chéngshì	city; urban	7.6
chéngyuánguó	member country	7.6°
chēxiāng	car (of a train)	8.6°
chībuxiǎqù	to be unable to eat	7.3
chī kǔ	to suffer, to undergo hardship	7.4
chóngxīn	again, anew, afresh	8.4
chōu yān	to smoke (tobacco)	7.6°
chū	to produce	8.3°
...chū	at the beginning of...	8.5
chuáng	bed	7.2°, 7.5°
chuāngkǒu	window (e.g., ticket window)	8.1°
chuānguò	to cross through	8.4
chuántǒng	tradition, traditional	7.1
chū chāi	to go or be away on (official) business	8.6
chū guó	to go abroad	8.2
chū jìng	to leave a country	8.1
chūkǒu	to export	8.8
chūnji	the spring season	8.3°
chūxiàn	to appear, to arise, to emerge	8.8
cíhuì	vocabulary	8.2°
cónglái	ever (up till now), always (up till now)	7.3
cónglái bù/méi	never (up till now)	7.3
cóng...(Verb)-qǐ	to begin (Verb)-ing from...	7.7
cúnguǎn	savings	8.3°
cūnr	village	7.6°
cuòwù	to be wrong (incorrect); mistake	8.8°
dàbùfen	the greater part; for the most part, mostly	8.1
dǎduì	(production) brigade	8.3
dàduōshù(r)	the great majority	7.5
-dài	generation; era, (historical) period	7.5
-dài	zone, area, belt	8.1
dàibǎo	to represent; representative, delegate; on behalf of, in the name of	8.4°, 8.7°, 8.8

		Module & Unit
dàibǐǎotuán	delegation, mission	8.3*, 8.8
dāi huǐr	in a while, later (Běijīng)	8.8
dàishang	to take along (Běijīng)	7.8
dàjiě	"older sister" (a respectful term of address for a woman about one's own age or older)	7.4*
Dàlǐ	(a city in Yúnnán province)	8.1*
dàlù	mainland, continent	7.1
dāng	to act as, to be	8.6*
dǎng	(political) party	7.6
dānrèn	to take up, to assume (a job or post)	8.2
dānxīn	to be worried, to be uneasy	7.4
dānzi	list; form	7.8
dào	to pour; to dump	7.1
-dào	(resultative ending used for perception by one of the senses: <u>jiàndào</u> , <u>kàndào</u> , <u>tīngdào</u> , etc.)	7.3
-dào	(resultative ending used to indicate reaching: <u>xiǎngdào</u> , <u>tándào</u> , etc., often translated as "about" or "of")	7.3
dào	yet, on the contrary, nevertheless	8.7
dàochù	everywhere	7.7*
dàodé	morality, morals, ethics	7.2*
dàolǐ	principle, truth, hows and whys; reason, argument, sense	7.2
dǎoyóu	(tour) guide	8.7
dàozi	rice (in the paddy, or after harvesting but before hulling); paddy	8.3
Dàqīng	(a city in Heilongjiang Province)	8.1
dǎrǎo	to disturb	8.4*
dà shǐfu	chef	8.7*
dàtīng	(large) hall	8.8
Dàtóng	(a city in Shānxī province)	8.6*
dàxué bìyèshēng	college graduate	8.2*
dàxuésēng	college student	7.1*
dǎ zhàng	to fight a war, to go to war	7.8
dǎ zhēn	to get an injection	7.8*
dǎ zì	to type (on a typewriter)	7.6
dàzìrán	nature (the physical world)	8.2*
dé	to get	7.5
dédao	to receive, to get	7.5
-de huà	if; in case; supposing that	7.6
děi kàn	to depend on	7.8
děng	when; by the time; till	7.8*
děng dào	wait until; when, by the time	7.3
děng yíxià	wait a minute; in a little while	7.8
děngyú	to equal, to be equal to; to be the same as (in effect), to amount to	8.7
dì	earth, soil; land; ground; fields	8.3
-diǎn	point	7.1
diào yǎnlèi	to cry	7.3*

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
dīng	to agree on; to draw up (a plan); to conclude (a treaty)	8.8
dìqū	area, district, region	8.1
dīwei	position, status	7.2
dìxíng	topography, terrain	8.4
-dòng	(counter for buildings)	8.7*
Dōngběi	Manchuria	8.1
dōngbù	the eastern part of a country	8.7*
dǒngde	to understand, to grasp, to know	7.1
duǎnpiān	short (stories, articles)	7.6
dúlǐ	to be independent; independence	7.2
duó (duō)	how (to what extent)	7.4
-duǒ	(counter for flowers)	8.7*
duó hǎo!	how great that is!	7.2*
duō lǎo duō dé	more pay for more work	8.8
duōshù(r)	the majority (of), most (of)	7.5
éi	say! (interjection telling that the speaker just thought of something)	7.3*
értóng	child (formal word)	7.6
érxífu(r) (-fer)	daughter-in-law	7.4
fādá	to be (highly) developed, to be flourishing, to be prosperous	7.2*, 7.5
fǎlǚ	law	7.7
fān	to translate	7.7*
fàn	to violate, to offend, to commit; to have an attack (of an old disease)	7.7
fǎnduì	to oppose, to be against	7.1*
fángbèi	to take precautions against	8.4
fàng jià	to have vacation; to let out for vacation	8.6
-fāngmiàn (-mian)	aspect, side, area, respect	7.1
fǎngwèn	to visit and meet with	7.6*, 8.1
fāngxiàng	direction	8.8*
fàng xīn	to be unworried, to be at ease	8.5
fāngyán	dialect	8.1
fǎngzhī gōngyè	textile industry	8.5*
fánróng	to be flourishing/prosperous/booming; to make (something) prosper	8.8
fǎnzhèng	anyway, in any case	7.3*, 8.7*
fàn zuì	to commit a crime	7.7
fāshēng	to happen, to occur	8.7
fāxiàn	to discover, to find out; discovery	8.7
fāzhǎn	to develop, to expand, to grow	7.5
fēn	points	7.5*



Module & Unit

fēn	to divide, to separate, to split; to be divided into (parts, categories)	7.6, 8.2
-fēn	(counter for portions of food)	8.1*
fēngsú	custom(s)	7.5
fēnkāi	to separate, to split up	7.6
fù	to spend, to expend	8.5*
Fújiàn	(a province in south China)	8.8
fùnǚ	woman; women, womankind	7.2
fúqí	blessings, good fortune	7.4
fùzá (fǔzá)	to be complicated, to be complex	8.6
gāi	will probably	7.4*
gāi	should, ought to	7.4*, 7.8
gāi	to build (buildings); to cover	7.4*, 8.4
gǎibiàn	to change; change(s)	7.1*, 7.5
gǎishàn	to improve	8.6*
gǎitiān	another day	8.1*
gànbu	cadre	7.6
gāngtiě	iron and steel	8.7
gǎnjué	feeling, sensation; to feel, to perceive	7.1
gànmá	to do what; (colloquial) why on earth, what for	7.8
gǎnshàng(lái)	to catch up	8.7
gàn shenme	to do what; (colloquial) why on earth, what for	7.8
gǎnxiè	to be thankful, to be grateful (for)	7.3*, 8.5
gǎo	to do/carry on/engage in/work in (a field or endeavor)	8.1
gǎocuò	to do wrong; to be mistaken	8.7
gāogàn	senior cadres	7.6*
gǎohǎo	to do a good job of, to handle well	8.1*
gǎoshàngqù	to cause to go up, to cause to move forward	8.2
gāozhōng	senior high school	7.2, 7.1*, 7.5*, 8.7*
gè-	each, every, various, different	8.5
gèguó	various countries	7.1*
Gēlúnbǐyà Dàxué	Columbia University	8.4*
gémǐng	revolution; revolutionary; to revolt	7.8*, 8.2
gēn	to follow	7.8*
gēnzhe	along with, in the wake of	8.5*
gōng	male (for animals)	7.2*
Gōngchǎndǎng	Communist Party	7.6
gōngchǎng	factory, mill, plant, works	7.6*, 8.6
gōngchéngshī	engineer	8.5
gōngdiàn	palace	8.4
gōnggong	grandfather, grandpa (paternal)	7.4*
gōngkè	homework	7.7*

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
gōnglù	highway	8.7
Gòngqīngtuán	Communist Youth League	7.6
gōngren	worker	8.3, 8.6
gōngshāngyè	industry and commerce	7.5
gōngshè	commune	8.3
gōngyè	industry	7.5
gōngyìpǐn	handicrafts	7.8
gōngyuán	the common era; A.D.	8.6
gōngyuán qián	B.C.	8.6
gōngzī	wages, pay	8.8
gōngzuòzhě	worker (in a particular field)	8.4
gǔ-	ancient (used in compound words)	8.4
guǎn	to take care of; to mind, to bother about	7.2
guǎngchǎng	(public) square	8.4
Guǎngdōng	(province in south China)	8.5
guǎnggào	advertisement	7.7
Guǎngjiāohuì	Guǎngzhōu (Canton) Trade Fair	8.8
Guǎngxī	(a province in so. China)	8.1
guǎn (X) jiào (Y)	to call (X) (Y)	8.3
guānniàn	concept, idea, notion	7.2
guānxīn	to be concerned/care about	7.1, 8.5
guānyú	as to, with regard to, concerning, about	7.1
gǔdài	ancient times, antiquity; ancient	8.4
gǔdàishǐ	ancient history	8.6
Gùgōng (Bówùyǔàn)	Former Imperial Palace (Museum)	8.4
gǔhuī	bone ashes, ashes (of a person)	7.5
guīju	rules of proper behavior, social etiquette, manners; special custom, established practice, rule (of a community or organization)	7.4
Guǐlín	(a city in Guǎngxī Province)	8.1
guīmó	scale, scope, dimensions	8.8
Guìzhōu	(a province of China)	8.1
guójiā	country, state, nation; national	7.1
guómín jīngjì	national economy	8.5
guòqù	the past	7.4
guòqu	to pass; to pass away, to die	7.8
guò rìzi	to live; to get along	7.4
guóyǔ	the national language (Taiwan)	8.1
gùshi	story	7.6
gùshipiān(r)	feature film	8.1
gǔshū	ancient book	7.1
hái	fairly, passably	7.4
hǎigǎng	harbor, seaport	8.8
hǎiluòyīn	heroin	7.7
hǎishì	it would be better to	8.4, 8.7

		Module & Unit
hǎiwān	bay; gulf	8.5
hǎiyùn	sea transportation	8.8
hánshòubān	correspondence courses	8.6*
Hànyǔ	the Chinese language	8.6
hǎochù	benefit, advantage	7.5
hǎohǎo (hǎohǎo)	properly, carefully, thoroughly	7.1*, 7.8
...hǎo le	(used when agreeing, suggesting, or permitting); (used when giving in to something)	8.1
hǎo shi hǎo, kěshí...	well, okay, but...	7.3*
hǎoxiàng	to seem as if, to seem like	7.8
hàozhāo (hàozhāo)	to appeal to/to call on (people to engage in an activity)	8.7
Hēilóngjiāng	(a province in northeast China)	8.5
hēiyè	(darkness of) night, nighttime	7.3
hèn	to hate, to detest; to feel bitter toward	7.6
héping	peace; peacefully	8.6
héxiě	to write together, to coauthor	8.8*
hézuò	to cooperate; cooperation	8.8
Hóngwèibīng	(a) Red Guard; the Red Guards	7.6
hòulái	later, afterwards	7.2*, 7.5
-hù	household, family	8.3
huā	to spend, to expend	8.5*
-huà	-ize, -ify	8.3
Huáběi	north of China	8.1
huàcè	book of photographs	8.4*
Huánán	south of China	8.1
huángdì	emperor	8.6*
Huáng Hé	the Yellow River	8.3*
Huángshān	(a mountain in Anhui Province)	8.1
huángtǔ gāoyuán	loess plateau	8.6*
Huángzhuāng	(name of a commune)	8.7*
huānsòng	to see off, to send off	8.8
huānsòng huì	farewell/send-off meeting or party	8.8
<u>Huáshèngdùn Yóubào</u>	<u>Washington Post</u>	7.7
huàxiān	synthetic fiber	8.5*
-huì	(counter for shì, "matter")	7.8
huì	might; to be likely to; will	7.1
huìhuà	conversation	8.2*
huìtòu(r) jiàn	see you later (in a little while)	8.1
huó	to live; to become alive; to survive; to be live/alive/living; mobile, moving	7.5
huódòng	activity	8.2*
huǒtuǐ sǎnmíngzhǐ	ham sandwich	8.1*
húshuō	to talk nonsense; nonsense, drivel	7.2*
hùxiāng	mutually	7.4

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
-jí	level, rank, grade, stage, degree	8.8
jǐ	to be crowded	8.4
jì	to remember; to commit to memory	7.5*
-jiā	(counter for families)	7.4
-jiā	(suffix indicating a professional or specialist in some activity)	8.3
jiāgōng	to process; to finish (a product)	8.8
jiākuài	to speed up	8.2
jiǎnchēng	abbreviation	8.2*
jiǎndān	to be simple	7.7
jiǎng	to stress, to pay attention to, to be particular about	7.3
jiǎng	prize	7.5*
jiǎng jià(qian)	to bargain, to haggle	8.8*
jiǎngjiu	to be particular about; to be elegant, to be tasteful	7.3*
Jiāngnán	the area south of the the lower reaches of the Yangtze River	8.3*, 8.7*
Jiāngsū	(a coastal province of China)	8.5*
jiànli	to establish, to found	8.5*
jiànshè	to build up, to construct; construction, reconstruction	8.3
jiànyì	to suggest; suggestion, proposal	8.8*
jiànzhù (-zhú, -zhu)	to build, to construct; structure; architecture	8.4
jiāo	to hand over, to give	8.6
-jiào	religion, church (bound form)	8.6
jiàokēshū	textbook	8.2*
jiāoliú	to exchange; exchange, interchange	8.6
jiāoqū	suburbs, outskirts	8.3
jiàoshī	teacher, instructor	8.2
jiàotáng	church, cathedral	7.7*, 8.4
jiāotōng	traffic; transportation	8.6
jiāoyìhuì	trade fair	8.8
jiàoyu	to educate; education	7.7
jiàqian	price	8.8
jiārù	to join	7.6
jiāshǔ	family members, (family) dependents	8.7
jiāting	family	7.3
jīběn	basic, fundamental, elementary	8.2
jībēnshang	basically, on the whole, by and large	8.2
jīdòng	to be agitated, to be worked up	7.1*
jiè	to borrow; to lend	7.1
-jiè	session	8.8*
jièdao	to successfully borrow	7.1
jiěfàng	to liberate, to emancipate; liberation	7.6
Jiěfàngjūn	(People's) Liberation Army, PLA	8.6
jiéhūn (jiēhūn)	to get married	7.2
jiēji	(social) class	8.8

		Module & Unit
jiěshòu	to accept	8.4*
jièyì	to mind, to take offense	7.6
jíjí mángmáng	in a hurry, extremely rushed	7.6
jímáng	to be hasty, to be hurried	7.6
jǐn	to be tight	8.7
jìn...	the past..., the last...	8.5
jìnbù	to progress; progress	7.7
jìnychūkǒu	import-export	8.8
jìndàishǐ	modern history	7.1*
jīngguò	to go through, to pass through; as a result of, after, through; course (of events), what has happened	8.2
jīngjī tèqū	special economic zone (SEZ)	8.8
jīngshén	energy, spirits	7.3*
Jīngxīdào	(a kind of rice plant)	8.3
Jíníng	(a city in Inner Mongolia)	8.6*
jìnkǒu	to import	8.8
jīnr	today (Běijīng)	7.8*
jīnsbǔ	metal	8.5
jìnxíng	to carry on, to conduct, to proceed	8.7
jǐnzhāng	to be nervous, to be tense	7.3*, 8.7
jīqì (jīqī)	machine, machinery, apparatus	8.3
jìshù	technique, skill; technology; technical	8.2
jiù ná Sìchuān lái shuō	take Sichuan for example	8.5*
jiùshi...yě...	even (if)...	8.7
jīxiè (jījiè)	machine; machinery; mechanical	8.5
jīxièhuà	to mechanize; mechanization	8.3
jìzhě	reporter, journalist	8.1*
jìzhōng	to concentrate; to centralize; to put together	8.8
jìzhū	to remember	7.1*
-jù	sentence; (counter for sentences or utterances, often followed by huà, "speech")	7.1
juéding	to decide; decision	8.4
jǔ ge lìzi	give an example	8.3*
jūnduì	army	7.8*
júzi shuǐ(r)	orange juice (Běijīng)	7.1*
(V V) kàn	try and (V), (V) and see how it is	7.7
kàn	to depend on	7.8
kànbuqǐ	to look down on, to scorn, to despise	7.4
kāndào	to see	7.3
kànzhe	(followed by a verb) as one sees fit, as one deems reasonable	7.8
kǎo	to take/give an exam, test, or quiz	7.8
kào	to depend on, to rely on; to lean against; to be next to/against/by	7.2

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
kǎolǔ	to consider, to think about; consideration	7,1
kǎoshàng	to be admitted (to a school or organization by passing an entrance exam)	8.6*
kǎoshì	to take/give an exam, test, or quiz; exam, test	7.8
-kē	(counter for trees)	8.4*
kě	indeed, certainly, really	8.4
kě'ài	to be loveable/adorable/cute	7.8*
kējī	science and technology	8.2*
kěkǎiyīn	cocaine	7.7*
Kěkǒukělè	Coca Cola	7.1*, 7.3*
kělián	to be pitiful	7.3*
kěnn	to be willing to	7.7*, 8.8*
kěnnéng	to be possible	8.1*
kēxué	science; to be scientific	8.2
kōng	empty	8.8
kōngchulai	to become vacant	8.1*
kōngshǒu	empty-handed	8.8
-kǒu	(counter for people considered as making up a family)	8.3
kǒuyīn	accent	8.1*
kū	to cry	7.3
kuài yào	will soon	8.7
kuàngqū	mining region	8.5
kùnnan	difficulty	8.2*
Lādīng zímǔ	Latin (Roman) alphabet	8.6*
...lái	for the past...(amount of time)	7.6
lái	(used before a verb to express that something will be done)	7.7
lái	to do (something), to perform (something), to have (an event), to help oneself (to food, etc.), to join in (a game, etc.)	7.8
...lái shuō	...speaking	8.5
lājī	garbage	7.3*
làngfèi	to waste	8.2*
lǎnwěiyán	appendicitis	7.5*
lǎo	all the time, always	7.8*
lǎodòng	to labor	7.5
lǎodònglǐ	labor force, labor; able-bodied person	7.5
lǎolao	grandmother, grandma (maternal)	7.4*
lǎolǐ	labor force; labor	7.5
lǎo shifu	old master	7.5*
lǎoshǔ (lǎoshu)	mouse or rat	7.2*
lǎoxiānsheng	old gentlemen	7.5*
lǎoyé	grandfather, grandpa (maternal)	7.4*

Module & Unit

lǎozǒng	(used with surname as an affectionate term for a high-ranking PLA commander)	7.8*
-lèi	category	8.2
-lǐ	lǐ, a unit of length (1/2 km.)	8.4
liǎ	(Běijīng colloquial word meaning liǎngge, "two")	7.8*
lián...dōu/yě...	even...	7.7
liàng	to be bright, to be light; to be shiny	8.6
liángshi	grain, cereals	8.3
liánxì	to contact, to get in touch with; connection, ties	8.1
Liáodài	the Liáo Period	8.4*
liǎojiě	to understand/grasp/comprehend; to find out/acquaint oneself with	8.1
liáo tiān(r)	to chat	7.3
lí jǐng	to leave a country or place	8.1
lǐliàng (lǐliang)	power; force; strength	8.5
lǐmào	manners, politeness	7.4
lǐngdǎo	to lead, to direct, to exercise leadership (over); leadership; leader, leading cadre	7.6
língwài	other	8.7*
liùshí niǎndài	the decade of the sixties	7.1*
liúxiá	to leave	7.1*
liúxíng	to be common, to be popular, to be prevalent	7.2
liúxuéshēng	study-abroad students	8.2
lǐwù	gift	8.4*
luàn	to be in disorder, to be in a mess, to be chaotic; arbitrarily, recklessly, any old way	7.7
luànqībāzāo	in a mess, in confusion, in disorder; miscellaneous, motley, all thrown in together	7.7
Lǚ Xùn	(a famous Chinese author of the 1920s and 1930s)	8.2*
lǚshī	lawyer, attorney	8.8
lǚxíngtuán	tour group	8.1
ma	(marker for obviousness of reasoning)	7.3
ma	(marker for insistent sentences)	7.7
mǎnmǎn (mǎnmǎnr)	slowly; gradually, by and by; taking one's time (doing something); (tell) all about, in all details	7.1
mǎnyǐ	to be pleased, to be satisfied	8.1
màoyì	trade	8.8
me (ma)	(pause marker)	8.6
měi	to be beautiful	8.6

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
méitàn	coal	8.5
méi yìsi	to be uninteresting/boring; to be pointless/meaningless; to be a drag; to be without value, not worthy of respect, cheap	7.2
-mén	(counter for courses)	8.7*
miànji	(surface) area	8.3
Míng	(name of a dynasty, 1368-1644)	8.4
míngbai	to understand, to be clear on, to comprehend; to be clear, to be intelligible	7.5
<u>Míng Bào</u>	<u>Ming Pao</u> (a Hong Kong newspaper)	7.7
míngcí	word, term, expression	8.3*
mínzú	nationality, a people, nation (ethnic group)	8.1
mínzú zhījiān	between nationalities	8.6*
mǔ	female (for animals)	7.2*
-mǔ	<u>mu</u> (a unit of area)	8.3
mǔchǎn	per- <u>mu</u> yield	8.3
Mùníhēi	Munich	8.4*
mùqián	the present; at present	8.2
mùtou	wood	8.4*
nà hái yòng shuō	that goes without saying	7.2*
nǎinai	grandmother (paternal)	7.4
nákāi	to take away, to move (something) out of the way	8.6*
nánfāng	the bridegroom's side	7.5*
nánfāng	the south	8.1
Nán Měi	South America	7.7*
nánnǚ	men and women, male-female	7.2
nánshòu	to be uncomfortable; to feel bad, to feel unhappy	7.3
nántīng	to be unpleasant to hear; to sound bad, to offend the ears; to be scandalous	7.8
ne	(used in questions asking the where- abouts of someone/something)	7.4*
ne	(indicating lack of completion/absence of change)	7.4
...ne	as for...	8.5
nèidì	interior region (of a country)	8.5*, 8.6
Nèiměng(gǔ)	Inner Mongolia, Nei Mongol (an auto- nomous region of China)	8.1
nénglì	ability	7.6*
niándài	decade of a century; period, era	8.5
niánjì (-jì)	age	7.4
niánlíng (-líng)	age	8.2*
niánqīng	to be young	7.1



TVL Vocabulary

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
nǐ hái shì lǎoyàngzi	you look as if you haven't changed a bit	8.4*
nílong	nylon	8.5*
nòng	to do; to fool with; to get	7.3
nóngchǎng	farm	8.3*, 8.7*
nóngcūn	country, rural area; rural	7.5*, 7.6
nònglai	to get and bring	7.3
nóngmín	peasant	7.5*, 8.3*, 8.6
nóngyè	agriculture	7.5
nóngyèqū	farming region	8.3*
nǚlì	to make great efforts, to try hard, to exert oneself	7.7*, 8.2
nǚshēng	coed, woman student	7.3*
Ōuzhōu	Europe	8.4
pà	to be afraid	7.4*
pǎolai pǎoqù	to run back and forth	7.6*, 8.4*
pèngdao	to hit; to run into, to come across	7.8*
-piān	(counter for sheets, articles or pieces of writing)	7.2
piàn	to fool, to deceive	7.2*
piānzi	film, movie	8.1*
pǐchá bǐng	pizza	7.1*
píng	to be flat, to be level	8.3*
píngděng	equality; to be equal (of people)	7.2
píngfāng gōnglǐ	square kilometer	8.3*
píngjūn	(on the) average	8.3
píngjūnshù	an average number, a mean	8.3*
píngyuán	plain, flatlands	8.3
píngzi	bottle	8.8*
pínmíng	with all one's might, for all one is worth, desperately, like mad; to risk one's life, to defy death	7.2
pǐnzhǒng	variety	8.3*
pǐzhǔn	to give permission, to approve; approval, permission, sanction	7.5*
pópo	grandmother, grandma	7.4*
pǔbiàn	to be universal, to be general, to be widespread, to be common	8.2
pǔtōng	to be common/regular/ordinary	8.2
pǔtōnghuà	the common (standard) speech, Standard Chinese	8.1

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
qiāng	gun	7.7°
qiáng	to be strong	7.6°
qiángguó	powerful nation, a (world) power	8.5
Qiānjīndào	Thousand-Catty Rice	8.3°
Qiánmén	(a gate in Běijīng)	8.4
qiānwàn	under any circumstances; by no means; without fail, be sure to	8.8
qiánxiē nián	a few years back, in recent years	7.8°
qiāo mén	to knock at the door	7.4°
qíguài	to be strange, to be odd, to be surprising	7.3
qǐlai	to get up (in several senses)	7.4
-qilai	(resultative ending which indicates starting)	7.3
qímǎ	at least; minimum, lowest, rudimentary, elementary	8.5
Qín	(name of a dynasty, 221-207 B.C.)	8.4
qīng	to be light	8.5
qīngchǔ (-chu)	to be clear, to be distinct	8.7
qīng gōngyè	light industry	8.5
Qīnghǎi	(a province in western China)	7.3°, 8.6°
qīngjiāo	green pepper	8.3°
qíngkuàng	situation, circumstances, condition, state of affairs	7.1
qíngxíng	situation, circumstances, condition, state of affairs	7.1
qīngzhēnsì	mosque	8.6°
qīnlüè	to invade; invasion, aggression	8.4
qióng	to be poor	8.5
qítā	other, else; the rest	8.5
qiūjì	the fall season	8.3°
(-)qū	area, region, district	8.5
quán	entirely, completely; whole, entire; to be complete	8.1
quàn	to advise, to urge, to try to persuade	7.8
quánbù	entire, whole, all	8.1
quánguó	the whole country	8.3
quánjiā rén	the whole family	7.4°
qūbié	difference, distinction	8.2
ràng	to make (someone a certain way)	7.1
ràng nǐ jiǔ děng le	I've kept you waiting	8.5°
rén	person; self; body	7.4
rēng	to throw, to throw away	8.8°
rénjia	people; other people; someone else; they; he, she; I	7.4
rénmín	the people	8.3
rénmín gōngshè	people's commune	8.3

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
rènwéi	to think/believe/consider (that)	8.2
rényuán	personnel, staff	8.7
rèxīn	to be enthusiastic and interested; to be warmhearted	7.3
rèxīnqilai	to become enthusiastic and interested	7.3
rīzi	day; date; time	7.3*
rù	to enter; to join (an organization)	7.6
ruò	to be weak	8.5
rǔ Tuán	to join the Communist Youth League ( <u>Gòngqīngtuán</u> or <u>Gòngchǎnzhǔyì</u> <u>Qīngniántuán</u> )	7.6
sàn bù	to go for a stroll	8.6*
shā	to kill (means unspecified); to kill (specifically, with a knife or knife- like instrument); to try to kill	7.7
shǎ	to be stupid, to be dumb, to be silly, to be naive	7.8
shāfā	sofa	7.8*
shāmò	desert	8.6
shāndì	mountainous region, hilly area (geo- graphical term)	8.3
-shang	(a verb ending indicating starting and continuing)	7.6
shāngren	businessman, businesswoman	8.8
shàng xué	to go to school; to attend school	7.6
shāngyè	commerce, business	7.5
shānqū	hilly country, mountainous region	8.3
Shānxī	(province in north central China)	8.5
shǎoshù	minority; a minority of, a small number of, few	8.1
shǎoshù mínzú	minority nationality, national minority	8.1
Shàoxiānduì	Young Pioneers	7.6*
shēbèi	equipment; facilities; installation	8.8
shèhuì	society; social	7.1
shèhuì kēxué	social sciences	8.2
-shěng	province	8.4
shēngchǎn	to produce; production	7.5
shēngchǎn dàduì	production brigade	8.3
shēngchǎnduì	production team	8.3
shēnghuó	to live; life; daily life; livelihood	7.2
shēngyì (shēngyì)	business, trade	7.8
shēnqǐng	to apply (for)	7.2*
shēntǐ	body; health	7.4
Shēnzhèn	(a border stop in Guǎngdōng, formerly spelled Shumchun)	8.1
shèyuán	commune member	8.7

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
shǐ	to cause (followed by a verb), to make, to enable	7.7
shì	city, municipality	8.5
shìchǎng	market	7.5*
Shí Dà Jiànzhù	the Ten Great Structures (in Běijīng)	8.4
shìjiè	world	7.6
shìjièshang	in the world, in the whole world	7.6
shìjièxíng	worldwide	7.7
Shísānlíng	the Ming Tombs	8.4
shítáng	mess hall, dining room	8.7
shíxiàn	to realize/achieve/bring about/ accomplish/come true	8.2
shíxíng	to practice, to carry out, to put into effect, to implement (a method, policy, plan, reform, etc.)	7.6
shíyóu	petroleum, oil	8.1
shízài	really; to be real	7.2
shìzhèngfǔ	city hall	8.4*
shōu	to harvest	8.3
shòu	to receive	7.7
shòu	to be thin	7.7*
shǒuchāode	handwritten	7.4*
shǒudū	capital	8.4
shòu jiàoyù	to receive an education	7.7
shōurù	income, earnings	7.5
shōushi	to straighten up; to get one's things ready	7.4
shǒuxiān	first; first of all, in the first place	8.2
shòu xiànzhì	to be restricted	8.8*
shù	tree	8.4*
shūcài	vegetable	8.3
shuǐpíng	level, standard	8.2
shǔjià	summer vacation	7.1
shùliàng	quantity, amount, number	8.2
...(lái) shuō	...speaking	8.5
shuōbuqīngchū	can't explain clearly	7.1
shuōdào	to speak of; as for	7.3
shuōfǎ	way of saying a thing; statement, version, argument	7.5
shuòshì	Master's degree	7.2*, 7.5*
sǐ	to die	7.3*, 7.5
Sìchuān	(province in central China)	8.5
Sìge Xiàndàihuà	the Four Modernizations (of agriculture, industry, national defense, and science and technology)	8.2
sìjì	four seasons	8.3*
sìjì cháng lǚ	green all year round	8.3*
Sī Jī Qīng	(a commune in Běijīng suburbs)	8.3
Sī Shū	the Four Books ( <u>Dàxué</u> , <u>Zhōngyōng</u> , <u>Lúnyǔ</u> , <u>Mèngzǐ</u> )	7.4
sīxiǎng	thought, way of thinking, ideas	7.5*, 8.6*

## TVL Vocabulary

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
sònghuìqu	to take/escort back	7.5*
sòngxíng	to see (someone off), to wish (someone) a good trip; to give a going-away party	7.8
suàn	to be considered, to count as, can be regarded as	8.2*, 8.5
suàn le	forget it, let's drop the matter, let it go at that; come off it, come on	7.2
sùdu	speed, pace	8.2
Sū-Háng	Sūzhōu and Hángzhōu (abbreviation)	8.6*
Sūlián	Soviet Union	8.5*
sūnnǚ	granddaughter (through one's son)	7.4
sūnzi	grandson (through one's son)	7.4
suǒyǒude...dōu	all	7.3
sùshè	living quarters; dormitory	8.7
-tái	(counter for machines)	8.3
tàiyang	sun	8.8*
tán	to talk about (used with the object <u>shēngyì</u> , <u>màoyì</u> , etc., in the sense of "to negotiate")	8.8
tán liàn'ài	to be in love, to be going together (courtship)	7.8*
tǎolùn	to discuss; discussion	8.6
tǎoyàn	to dislike, to be disgusted with	7.6*
tèdiǎn	distinctive trait, characteristic	8.3
téng	to be very fond of, to be attached to, to dote on	7.8
tí	to carry (from the hand at the side of the body); to lift/raise; to mention/bring up; to put forward/ propose; to ask (questions)	7.8*, 8.2
Tiān'ānmén	the Gate of Heavenly Peace	8.4
Tiānjīn (Tiānjīng)	(a municipality and port in northeast China)	8.5
tiān liàng	daybreak, dawn; to become light out	8.6
Tiān Tán	the Temple of Heaven	8.4
tiào	to jump, to leap	7.3*
tiáojiàn	condition(s), circumstances	8.2
tiáoyuē	treaty	8.8
tiáozi	a brief, informal note	8.1*
tíchū	to raise/put forward/propose	8.2
tíchulai	to bring up	8.2
tiělù	railroad	8.7
tígāo	to raise, to improve	8.2
tímù (-mù)	topic, subject; title; exam question, test problem	7.5
tīng	to heed (advice), to obey (orders)	7.5

		Module & Unit
tīngdechū	to be able to distinguish by listening	8.1*
tóngjū	to cohabit; cohabitation	7.2
tóngyì	to consent, to agree	7.5
tóngyì	to become united; to unite, to unify; unification	8.6
tóur	head, chief, boss	7.7*
-tuán	group of people, society (bound form)	7.6, 8.1
Tuán	the (Communist Youth) League	7.6
tǔdì	land	7.4
Tǔěrqí	Turkey	8.6*
tuī	to push	8.7*
tuōlājī	tractor	8.3
túpiàn	picture, photograph	8.3
Tz!	Tsk (clicking sound with several different uses: disappointment, admiration, hesitation, etc.)	8.6
wàigōng	grandfather, grandpa (maternal)	7.4*
wàihuì	foreign exchange	8.7*
wàipó	grandmother, grandma (maternal)	7.4*
wàishāng	foreign businessman	8.8*
wàiwén	foreign language	7.5*
wǎnhuì	evening party; evening of entertainment	7.6*, 8.8
wǎnliàn wǎnhūn	late involvement and late marriage	7.2*
Wǎnlǐ Chángchéng	the Great Wall of Ten Thousand <u>Li</u>	8.4
-wèi	place, position	8.5
wěidà	to be great (e.g., a leader)	8.4*
wèile	in order to; for the purpose of; for the sake of	7.5
Wéiwúěr	the Uygur (Uighur) nationality	8.6
WénGé	the Cultural Revolution	8.2*
wénhuà	culture; schooling, education, literacy	7.1
Wénhuà (Dà) Géming	the Cultural Revolution	8.2*
wénxuéjiā	writer, literary man	7.6*
wénzhāng	article, essay; prose style	7.2
wénzì	writing, script, written language	8.6
wōde tiān na!	my God!	7.1*
<u>Wūdǔ Jīnhuā</u>	<u>Five Golden Flowers</u> (a film)	8.1*
wǔjiǎo	noontime nap	7.8
Wúxī	(a city in Jiāngsū province)	8.7*
xì	department (of a school)	8.2*
-xià	under	7.6
xiāndài	modern, contemporary; modern times	7.1*, 8.2
xiāndàihuà	to become modernized; modernization; modern(ized), sophisticated	8.2
xiǎng	to sound, to make a sound	7.4*

Module & Unit

xiàng	to be like, to resemble; like; such as	7.2
xiǎngbuchū	can't think up, can't come up with	7.2*
xiāngdāng	quite, pretty, considerably	7.2
xiǎngdao	to think of	7.3
xiāngxìn	to believe (in); to trust, to be certain, to be convinced (that)	7.7*, 8.6
xiǎngzhe	to be thinking of, to have on one's mind	8.4
xiānjīn	to be advanced	8.3
xiànjīn	cash	8.3*
xiànzhī	to restrict, to limit; restriction, limitation	8.8
xiǎo	young	7.1*
xiǎo diǎn(r) shēng(r)	a little more quietly	7.8*
xiāofèi	to consume	8.8
xiāofèipǐn	consumer goods	8.8
xiāofèizhě	consumer	8.8
xiàolǜ	efficiency	8.8
xiāomiè	to exterminate/eliminate/wipe out/ stamp out	8.7
xiǎo péngyou	little friend; kids	7.4
xiàoshun	to be filial; filial obedience	7.3
xiǎoshuō(r)	fiction, novel	7.1
xiāoxi	news	8.8
xià qí	to play chess	7.6
-xiaqu	(resultative ending which indicates continuing an action)	7.2
-xiaqu	down (directional ending used for eating or drinking down)	7.3
Xīběi	the Northwest	8.1
xī dǔ	to take drugs; drug taking	7.7
Xīfāng	the West	8.6*
xíguàn	habit, custom, usual practice; to be accustomed to, to be used to	7.5
xīn	heart; mind	7.3
-xìng	nature, -ness, -ity	7.7
xìngkǔf	fortunately, luckily	7.4*
xìngqu	interest	7.2
Xīnjiāng	(an autonomous region of China)	8.1
xìn jiào	to believe in a religion	8.6*
xīnkǔ	to be arduous/tiring/hard work; to work hard/go through hardships	8.3
xīnlǐ	in one's heart, in one's mind	7.1*
xīnshǎng	to appreciate/enjoy/admire	8.4
xīnshǐ	something weighing on one's mind, worry	7.1*
xīnwén	news	7.2
"Xīnwén Jiǎnbào"	"News Summary"	8.1*
xīnwénpiān	newsreel	8.1*
Xīnwén Zhōukān	<u>Newsweek</u>	7.2

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
xiū	to repair; to build (roads, reservoirs); to trim, to prune	8.4
xuǎn	to choose, to select; to elect	8.7
xǔduō	many, much	8.5
xué hǎo	to learn from good examples, to learn to be a good person	7.7*
xuéhuì	to learn, to master	7.6*
xuéqī	semester, term (of school)	7.1
xuéshēnghuì	student association	7.1*
xué yī	to study medicine	7.2
xuéyuàn	(academic) institute	8.2*, 8.6*
xuézhě	scholar	8.1
xùmuyè	livestock farming, animal husbandry	8.6
xùnlìànbān	training class	7.6*
xūyàoliàng	level of need/demand (for an item)	8.4*
yǎn diànyǐng	to show a movie	8.1*
-yàng	kind, sort (bound form)	8.7
yán'gé	to be strict, to be rigorous	8.2*
yánhǎi	along the coast, coastal	8.5
yǎnjīng	eye	8.8
yánjiū (-jiu, -jiù)	to study (in detail), to do research on; research	7.1
yánjiūshēng	graduate student	8.2
yánzhe	along(side)	8.7
yánzhòng	to be serious, to be grave	8.8
yàoburán	otherwise	8.2*, 8.7*
yào kàn	to depend on	7.8
yāoqiú	to require/request/demand	8.6*, 8.8*
Yàzhōu (Yǎ-)	Asia	7.1
yèdà	evening university	7.6*
yèdàxué	evening university	8.7*
yě gāi	really should	7.4*
...yě hǎo, ...yě hǎo	whether...or...; both...and...	7.5
yě jiù	accordingly, correspondingly, so	7.5
yéye	grandfather (paternal)	7.1*, 7.4
yèyú	spare-time, after-hours, amateur	8.7
yī	medical science, medicine (used in phrases like <u>xué yī</u> )	7.2
yī	as soon as	7.1*, 7.4*, 8.8
yī-	(used before direction words to mark direction with reference a point)	8.7
-yī	hundred million	7.3
yībān lái shuō	generally speaking, ordinarily	8.5*
yībiān(r)...	doing...while doing...	7.1
yībiān(r)...		



		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
yīfāngmiàn..., yīfāngmiàn...	on the one hand..., on the other hand...; for one thing..., for another thing...	7.2
Yíhéyuán (Yì-)	the Summer Palace (in Běijīng)	8.4
yìjiāzi	one family; the whole family; the same family	7.8*
yī...jiù...	as soon as	8.8
yímiàn(r)... yímiàn(r)...	doing...while doing...	7.1
yīnián bǐ yīnián duō	more and more every year	8.3*
yīnián sìjì	in all four seasons of the year, all year round	8.3*
yǐshàng	above, over (an amount)	8.7
yǐshí	for the moment	8.4*
yìshu	art	8.4
Yíslán jiào	Islam	8.6
yìtiān dào wǎn	all day long	7.3
yǐwéi	to think (mistakenly), to assume	8.1
yǐxià	under (an amount)	8.7
yīxué	medical science, medicine	7.2
yīyuàn	hospital	7.3*
yìzhí	all along, continuously, all the time (up until a certain point)	7.2
yònggōng	to be hardworking (in one's studies)	7.3
yōu	excellent	7.5*
yǒu	to come up to (a certain level)	7.2*
yōu	also	7.4
yǒu	anyway; after all	7.8
yǒu bànfǎ, (duì...)	to be able to deal with (something)	7.7
yǒu bāngzhu	to be helpful	7.2
yǒu dàolǐ	to make sense	7.2
yōu'eryuán	kindergarten	7.5*, 8.7
yǒu guīju	to have manners, to be proper	7.4
yǒuhǎo	to be friendly, to be amicable	8.4*
yǒulǎn	to sightsee, to tour	8.4
yǒu lǐmào	to be well mannered, to be polite	7.4
yǒu míng	to be famous	8.1*
yǒu qián	to be rich	7.4
yǒu xiào	to be effective; to be valid	7.7
yǒu xìngqù	to be interested	7.2
yǒu yánjiū	to have done research on; to know a lot about	7.2
yǒu yòng	to be useful	7.3
yǔ	and (written style)	8.6*
yuánlǎi	original, former; originally, formerly; it turns out that..., so...! (expresses finding out the true situation	7.8
yuànyì	to wish, would like, to want to; to be willing to	7.8
yuányīn	reason, cause	7.6

		Module & Unit
yúchǎng	fishery	8.7°
yuè lái yuè...	more and more..., increasingly	7:2
yuè...yuè...	the more...the more...	7.2
yǔfǎ	grammar	8.2°
yùn	to transport, to ship, to carry	8.8
Yúnnán	(a province of China)	8.1
yùnlǚ	luck	7.8
yǔyán	language	8.1
yǔyánxué	linguistics	8.1
yǔyánxuéjiā	linguist	8.1°
zài shuō	furthermore, besides, moreover	7.5°, 7.8°
...zài shuō	...and then we'll see about it	8.1
zǎo	a long time ago	7.3°
zǎohūn	early marriage; child marriage; to marry as a child, to marry early	7.5
zěnmē gǎode	what's wrong; what's the matter; how come	8.1°
zěnmē (yǐ)huí shì	what's it all about	7.8
zěnmē (yǐ)huí shì	like this	7.8
zéren (-rèn)	responsibility	7.7
zhāi huā(r)	to pick flowers	8.7°
zhàn	to occupy (space), to take up (time); to make up, to constitute (an amount)	8.1
zhǎng	to grow	7.3
zhǎngdà	to grow up	7.3
zhāngfu	husband	7.5
zhànzhēng	war	7.4°, 8.2°, 8.6
zhǎobudǎo	can't find, to be unable to find	7.2°, 9.2
zhàogu	to take care of; care	7.5
zhàopiàn	photograph	8.4°
zhèi yíxiàzi	after this, as a result of this	7.8
Zhèjiāng (Zhejiāng)	(a province in eastern China)	8.6
zhènmē (yǐ)huí shì	like this	7.8
zhèng	just, precisely, right	7.5
zhèngcè	policy	7.6, 7.5°
zhèngfǔ	government	7.6, 7.4°
zhěnggè(r)	whole, entire; completely, in entirety	8.2
zhènghǎo(r)	it just so happens that, to happen to, as it happens; just in time, just right, just enough	7.8
zhěngqí	to be neat, to be tidy	8.4°
zhèngzhì	politics; political	7.1
zhígōng	staff and workers; worker or staff member	8.7
zhǐ hǎo	can only, to have to, to be forced to	7.4
...zhījiān	between...	8.8°
zhīliàng (zhí-,zhǐ-)	quality	8.2
zhīshi	knowledge	7.2

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
zhǐ yào	provided that, as long as	7.7, 7.6*
zhìzào	to manufacture	8.7
zhìzàochǎng	manufacturing plant, factory	8.7
-zhōng	in	7.7
zhōng	to plant; to grow	8.3
zhòng	to be heavy	8.5
zhòngdiǎn	focal point, emphasis; key	8.2
Zhōngdōng	the Middle East	8.6
Zhōngguó Guójì	China International Travel Service	8.1*
Lǚxíngshè	(CITS)	
Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè	China Travel Service (CTS)	8.1
<u>Zhōngguó Qīngnián</u>	<u>China Youth</u> (a periodical)	7.2*
Zhōnghuá Rénmín	People's Republic of China	8.5*
Gònghéguó		
zhòng nán qīng nǚ	to regard males as superior to females	7.3
Zhōngshān Gōngyuán	Sun Yatsen Park	8.4*
zhōngxīn	center, heart, core, hub; central	8.5
<u>Zhōngxuéshēng</u>	<u>High School Student</u> (a periodical)	7.2*
zhōngzú	race; racial	8.6
zhōukān	weekly publication, weekly magazine	7.2
zhuānjiā	specialist, expert	8.3
zhuàn qián	to earn money, to make money	7.3
zhuānyè	special line/field/discipline	8.3
zhuānyèhuà	to specialize; specialization	8.3*
zhǔrén	host; master	7.3*
zhùxiáilái	to move and stay (in a place), to settle down	7.4
zhǔyào	major, main, essential; mainly, essentially	7.5*, 8.1
-zhǔyì	-ism, doctrine (bound form)	8.6
zīběn	capital	8.8*
zìcóng	ever since	8.8*
zìrán	nature; to be natural; naturally; in the normal course of events	8.2
zìrán kēxué	natural sciences	8.2
zìxué	to study by oneself	8.6*
zìyóu	freedom; to be free	7.2
zìyóu shìchǎng	free market	7.5*
zìyuán	(natural) resources	8.5
zìzhìqū	autonomous region	8.6
zǒng	always; inevitably, without exception; after all, in any case	7.1
zǒngde lái shuō	generally speaking, on the whole	8.5
zǒnggōngchéngshī	chief engineer	8.5*
zǒngjiào	(organized) religion	7.7
zǒng miànjī	total area	8.3*
zǒng shōurù	total income	8.7*
zǒngtǒng	president	7.6*
-zú	nationality	8.6

		<u>Module &amp; Unit</u>
zuǐ	mouth	7.7*
zuì	crime; guilt	7.7
zuǐjīn	lately, recently; the near future, soon	7.3
zuò	to be, to act as	7.3
-zuò	(counter for massive objects)	8.4*
zuòbuliǎo	to be unable to do	7.4*
zuò lǐbài	to worship, to attend a religious service	7.7*, 8.6*
zuòxia	to sit down	7.1
zuòyè	homework	8.6*
zǔzhi	to organize; organization	8.3